



owner.ford.com



ford.ca

2022 MAVERICK Owner's Manual



July 2021  
First Printing  
Litho in U.S.A.



NZ6J19A321 AA



The information contained in this publication was correct at the time of going to print. In the interest of continuous development, we reserve the right to change specifications, design or equipment at any time without notice or obligation. No part of this publication may be reproduced, transmitted, stored in a retrieval system or translated into any language in any form by any means without our written permission. Errors and omissions excepted.

© Ford Motor Company 2021

All rights reserved.

Part Number: 202106 20210611183105

## California Proposition 65



**WARNING:** Operating, servicing and maintaining a passenger vehicle or off-highway motor vehicle can expose you to chemicals including engine exhaust, carbon monoxide, phthalates, and lead, which are known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. To minimize exposure, avoid breathing exhaust, do not idle the engine except as necessary, service your vehicle in a well-ventilated area and wear gloves or wash your hands frequently when servicing your vehicle. For more information go to [www.P65Warnings.ca.gov/passenger-vehicle](http://www.P65Warnings.ca.gov/passenger-vehicle).



**WARNING:** Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds, chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and reproductive harm.  
**Wash your hands after handling.**



# Table of Contents

---

## Contacting Us

Contacting Us .....	15
---------------------	----

## Introduction

About This Manual .....	17
Special Notices .....	17

## Symbols Glossary

Symbols Used on Your Vehicle .....	19
------------------------------------	----

## Data Privacy

Data Privacy .....	22
Service Data .....	23
Event Data .....	23
Settings Data .....	24
Connected Vehicle Data .....	24
Mobile Device Data .....	25
Emergency Call System Data .....	25

## Visual Search

Steering Wheel .....	26
Instrument Panel .....	27
Vehicle Interior .....	28
Front Exterior .....	29
Rear Exterior .....	30

## Child Safety

Child Safety Precautions .....	31
Child Restraint Anchor Points .....	32
Child Restraints .....	33
Installing Child Restraints .....	34
Booster Seats .....	39
Child Safety Locks .....	41

## Seatbelts

Seatbelt Precautions .....	42
Fastening and Unfastening the Seatbelts .....	43
Sensitive Locking Mode .....	44

Automatic Locking Mode .....	44
Adjusting the Seatbelts During Pregnancy .....	45
Adjusting the Seatbelt Height .....	45
Seatbelt Reminder .....	46
Checking the Seatbelts .....	48
Seatbelt Extensions .....	48

## Personal Safety System™

What Is the Personal Safety System .....	49
How Does the Personal Safety System Work .....	49
Personal Safety System Components .....	49

## Airbags

How Do the Front Airbags Work .....	50
How Do the Side Airbags Work .....	50
How Do the Knee Airbags Work .....	51
How Does the Safety Canopy™ Work .....	51
Airbag Precautions .....	52
Properly Adjusting the Driver and Front Passenger Seats .....	53
Children and Airbags .....	53
Front Passenger Sensing System .....	54
Crash Sensors and Airbag Indicator .....	57
Disposing of Airbags .....	58

## 911 Assist

What Is 911 Assist .....	59
Emergency Call Requirements .....	59
Emergency Call Limitations .....	59

## Keys and Remote Controls

Remote Control Limitations .....	60
Using the Remote Control .....	60
Opening and Closing the Flip Key .....	60
Removing the Key Blade .....	61
Sounding the Panic Alarm .....	61

# Table of Contents

---

Locating Your Vehicle .....	61
Changing the Remote Control Battery - Vehicles Without: Push Button Start .....	62
Changing the Remote Control Battery - Vehicles With: Push Button Start .....	63
Replacing a Lost Key or Remote Control .....	64
Programming the Remote Control .....	65
Keys and Remote Controls – Troubleshooting .....	65

## **MyKey™**

What Is MyKey .....	66
MyKey Settings .....	66
Creating a MyKey - Vehicles Without: Push Button Start .....	67
Creating a MyKey - Vehicles With: Push Button Start .....	68
Programming a MyKey .....	68
Clearing All MyKeys .....	69
Checking MyKey System Status .....	69
Using MyKey With Remote Start Systems .....	70
MyKey – Troubleshooting .....	70

## **Doors and Locks**

Operating the Doors From Outside Your Vehicle .....	73
Operating the Doors From Inside Your Vehicle .....	73
Autounlock .....	74
Autolock .....	74
Mislock .....	74
Doors and Locks Audible Warnings .....	75
Doors and Locks – Troubleshooting .....	75

## **Keyless Entry**

Keyless Entry Limitations .....	77
Keyless Entry Settings .....	77
Using Keyless Entry .....	77

Keyless Entry – Troubleshooting .....	78
---------------------------------------	----

## **Keyless Entry Keypad**

What Is the Keyless Entry Keypad .....	79
Keyless Entry Keypad Limitations .....	79
Locating the Keyless Entry Keypad .....	79
Keyless Entry Keypad Master Access Code .....	79
Keyless Entry Keypad Personal Access Codes .....	79
Using the Keyless Entry Keypad .....	80
Keyless Entry Keypad – Troubleshooting .....	81

## **Tailgate**

Tailgate Precautions .....	82
Opening the Tailgate .....	82
Locking and Unlocking the Tailgate .....	83
Removing and Installing the Tailgate .....	83

## **Security**

Passive Anti-Theft System .....	85
Anti-Theft Alarm System .....	85
Anti-Theft Alarm System Settings .....	86
Security – Troubleshooting .....	87

## **Steering Wheel**

Adjusting the Steering Wheel .....	89
Horn .....	89
Switching the Heated Steering Wheel On and Off .....	89

## **Wipers and Washers**

Wipers .....	90
Checking the Wiper Blades .....	90
Replacing the Front Wiper Blades .....	90
Washers .....	91
Wipers and Washers – Troubleshooting .....	92

# Table of Contents

---

## Exterior Lighting

Exterior Lighting Control .....	93
Headlamps .....	93
Headlamps – Troubleshooting .....	94
Autolamps .....	94
Exterior Lamps .....	95
Automatic High Beam Control .....	96
Automatic High Beam Control – Troubleshooting .....	98

## Interior Lighting

Switching All of the Interior Lamps On and Off .....	99
Switching the Front Interior Lamps On and Off .....	99
Switching the Rear Interior Lamps On and Off .....	99
Interior Lamp Function .....	99
Adjusting the Instrument Panel Lighting Brightness .....	99
Ambient Lighting .....	99
Interior Lighting – Troubleshooting .....	100

## Windows

Opening and Closing the Windows .....	101
Window Bounce-Back .....	101
Locking the Rear Window Controls .....	102
Opening and Closing the Sliding Windows .....	102

## Interior Mirror

Interior Mirror Precautions .....	103
Manually Dimming the Interior Mirror .....	103

## Exterior Mirrors

Adjusting the Exterior Mirrors .....	104
Folding the Exterior Mirrors .....	105

## Moonroof

Opening and Closing the Sun Shade .....	106
Opening and Closing the Moonroof .....	106
Venting the Moonroof .....	106
Moonroof Bounce-Back .....	107

## Instrument Cluster

Instrument Cluster Overview - Gasoline, Vehicles With: 4.2 Inch Screen .....	108
Instrument Cluster Overview - Gasoline, Vehicles With: 6.5 Inch Screen .....	109
Instrument Cluster Overview - Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV), Vehicles With: 4.2 Inch Screen .....	110
Instrument Cluster Overview - Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV), Vehicles With: 6.5 Inch Screen .....	111
What Is the Tachometer - Gasoline .....	111
What Is the Power Gauge - Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV) .....	112
What Is the Speedometer .....	112
Fuel Gauge .....	112
What Is the Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge .....	112
What Is the Information Bar .....	112
What Are the Instrument Cluster Warning Lamps .....	113
Instrument Cluster Warning Lamps .....	113
What Are the Instrument Cluster Indicators .....	114
Instrument Cluster Indicators .....	114

## Instrument Cluster Display

Using the Instrument Cluster Display Controls .....	116
Instrument Cluster Display Main Menu - Vehicles With: 4.2 Inch Screen .....	116
Instrument Cluster Display Main Menu - Vehicles With: 6.5 Inch Screen .....	117
Customizing the Instrument Cluster Display - Vehicles With: 4.2 Inch Screen .....	117

# Table of Contents

---

Customizing the Instrument Cluster Display - Vehicles With: 6.5 Inch Screen .....	117
Personalized Settings .....	118
Fuel Economy Display - Gasoline .....	119
Fuel Economy Display - Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV) .....	119
EV Coach - Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV) .....	119
What Is Brake Coach - Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV) .....	120
What Is the Trip Summary - Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV) .....	120

## **Trip Computer**

Accessing the Trip Computer - Vehicles With: 4.2 Inch Screen .....	121
Accessing the Trip Computer - Vehicles With: 6.5 Inch Screen .....	121
Resetting the Trip Computer .....	121
Resetting the Individual Trip Values - Vehicles With: 4.2 Inch Screen .....	121
Configuring the Trip Computer - Vehicles With: 4.2 Inch Screen .....	121
Trip Data .....	121

## **Remote Start**

What Is Remote Start .....	123
Remote Start Precautions .....	123
Remote Start Limitations .....	123
Enabling Remote Start .....	123
Remotely Starting and Stopping the Vehicle .....	123
Extending the Remote Start Duration .....	123
Remote Start Remote Control Indicators .....	124
Remote Start Settings - Vehicles With: SYNC 3 .....	124

## **Climate Control - Vehicles With: Dual Automatic Temperature Control (DATC)**

Identifying the Climate Control Unit .....	126
Switching Climate Control On and Off .....	126
Switching Recirculated Air On and Off .....	126
Switching Air Conditioning On and Off .....	126
Switching Maximum Defrost On and Off .....	126
Switching Maximum Cooling On and Off .....	126
Switching the Heated Wiper Park On and Off .....	126
Switching the Heated Mirrors On and Off .....	126
Setting the Blower Motor Speed .....	127
Setting the Temperature .....	127
Directing the Flow of Air .....	127
Auto Mode .....	127
Climate Control – Troubleshooting .....	129

## **Climate Control - Vehicles With: Electronic Automatic Temperature Control (EATC)**

Identifying the Climate Control Unit .....	130
Switching Climate Control On and Off .....	130
Switching Recirculated Air On and Off .....	130
Switching Air Conditioning On and Off .....	130
Switching Maximum Defrost On and Off .....	130
Switching Maximum Cooling On and Off .....	130
Switching the Heated Wiper Park On and Off .....	130

# Table of Contents

---

Switching the Heated Mirrors On and Off .....	130
Setting the Blower Motor Speed .....	131
Setting the Temperature .....	131
Directing the Flow of Air .....	131
Auto Mode .....	131
Climate Control – Troubleshooting .....	132
<b>Interior Air Quality</b>	
What Is the Cabin Air Filter .....	134
Replacing the Cabin Air Filter .....	134
<b>Front Seats</b>	
Front Seat Precautions .....	135
Sitting in the Correct Position .....	135
Manual Seats .....	136
Power Seats .....	138
Heated Seats .....	140
<b>Rear Seats</b>	
Manual Seats .....	142
<b>Rear Occupant Alert System - Vehicles With: SYNC 3</b>	
What is the Rear Occupant Alert System .....	145
How Does the Rear Occupant Alert System Work .....	145
Rear Occupant Alert System Precautions .....	145
Rear Occupant Alert System Limitations .....	145
Switching Rear Occupant Alert System On and Off .....	145
Rear Occupant Alert System Indicators .....	146
Rear Occupant Alert System Audible Warnings .....	146
<b>USB Ports</b>	
Locating the USB Ports .....	147
Playing Media Using the USB Port .....	147
Charging a Device .....	148
<b>Power Outlet - Vehicles With: 110V Power Outlet</b>	
What Is the Power Outlet .....	149
Power Outlet Precautions .....	149
Power Outlet Limitations .....	149
Locating the Power Outlet .....	149
Power Outlet Indicators .....	149
<b>Power Outlet - Vehicles With: 12V Power Outlet</b>	
What Is the Power Outlet .....	151
Power Outlet Precautions .....	151
Locating the Power Outlet .....	151
<b>Wireless Accessory Charger</b>	
What Is the Wireless Accessory Charger .....	152
Wireless Accessory Charger Precautions .....	152
Locating the Wireless Accessory Charger .....	152
Charging a Wireless Device .....	152
Wireless Accessory Charger – Troubleshooting .....	153
<b>Storage</b>	
Cup Holders .....	154
Under Seat Storage .....	154
Glasses Holder .....	154
Pickup Bed Storage .....	154
<b>Starting and Stopping the Engine</b>	
Starting and Stopping the Engine – Precautions .....	156
Ignition Switch .....	156
Push Button Ignition Switch .....	157
Starting the Engine .....	157



# Table of Contents

Engine Block Heater .....	159
Stopping the Engine .....	160
Automatic Engine Stop .....	161
Starting and Stopping the Engine – Troubleshooting .....	162

## Hybrid Electric Vehicle Information - Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV)

What is a Hybrid Electric Vehicle .....	166
How Does a Hybrid Electric Vehicle Work .....	166
Hybrid Electric Vehicle Driving Characteristics .....	166
Hybrid Electric Vehicle Indicators .....	166
Hybrid Electric Vehicle Information – Troubleshooting .....	167

## Auto-Start-Stop - Gasoline

What Is Auto-Start-Stop .....	168
Auto-Start-Stop Precautions .....	168
Switching Auto-Start-Stop On and Off .....	168
Stopping the Engine .....	168
Restarting the Engine .....	168
Auto-Start-Stop Indicators .....	168
Auto-Start-Stop – Troubleshooting .....	169

## Fuel and Refueling

Fuel and Refueling Precautions .....	171
Fuel Quality .....	172
Locating the Fuel Filler Funnel .....	172
Running Out of Fuel .....	173
Refueling .....	174
Fuel Tank Capacity .....	178
Fuel and Refueling – Troubleshooting .....	179

## Catalytic Converter

What Is the Catalytic Converter .....	181
---------------------------------------	-----

Catalytic Converter Precautions .....	181
Catalytic Converter – Troubleshooting .....	181

## High Voltage Battery

What Is the High Voltage Battery .....	182
High Voltage Battery Precautions .....	182

## Automatic Transmission

Automatic Transmission Precautions .....	183
Automatic Transmission Positions .....	183
Shifting Your Vehicle Into Gear .....	184
Automatic Transmission Position Indicators .....	184
Temporary Neutral Mode .....	185
Automatic Return to Park (P) .....	185
Grade Assist - Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV) .....	186
Manual Park Release - Gasoline .....	186
Automatic Transmission Audible Warnings .....	188
Automatic Transmission – Troubleshooting .....	188

## All-Wheel Drive

How Does All-Wheel Drive Work - Excluding: FX4 Off Road .....	189
How Does All-Wheel Drive Work - FX4 Off Road .....	189
All-Wheel Drive Precautions .....	189
All-Wheel Drive Limitations .....	189
All-Wheel Drive – Troubleshooting .....	190

## Brakes

Brake Precautions .....	191
Anti-Lock Braking System .....	191
Brake Over Accelerator .....	191
Locating the Brake Fluid Reservoir .....	192
Checking the Brake Fluid .....	192
Brake Fluid Specification .....	192

# Table of Contents

---

Brakes – Troubleshooting .....	193	Stability Control Indicator .....	202
<b>Electric Parking Brake</b>		Stability Control – Troubleshooting .....	202
What Is the Electric Parking Brake .....	194	<b>Hill Descent Control</b>	
Applying the Electric Parking Brake .....	194	What Is Hill Descent Control .....	203
Applying the Electric Parking Brake in an Emergency .....	194	How Does Hill Descent Control Work .....	203
Manually Releasing the Electric Parking Brake .....	194	Hill Descent Control Precautions .....	203
Automatically Releasing the Electric Parking Brake .....	195	Switching Hill Descent Control On and Off .....	203
Electric Parking Brake Audible Warning .....	195	Setting the Hill Descent Speed .....	203
Releasing the Electric Parking Brake if the Vehicle Battery Has Run Out of Charge .....	195	Hill Descent Control Indicator .....	203
Electric Parking Brake – Troubleshooting .....	195	Hill Descent Control – Troubleshooting .....	204
<b>Hill Start Assist</b>		<b>Steering</b>	
What Is Hill Start Assist .....	197	Electric Power Steering .....	205
How Does Hill Start Assist Work .....	197	Steering – Troubleshooting .....	206
Hill Start Assist Precautions .....	197	<b>Parking Aids</b>	
Hill Start Assist – Troubleshooting .....	197	Parking Aid Precautions .....	207
<b>Auto Hold</b>		Rear Parking Aid .....	207
How Does Auto Hold Work .....	198	Parking Aids – Troubleshooting .....	208
Switching Auto Hold On and Off .....	198	<b>Rear View Camera</b>	
Using Auto Hold .....	198	What Is the Rear View Camera .....	210
Auto Hold Indicators .....	198	Rear View Camera Precautions .....	210
<b>Traction Control</b>		Locating the Rear View Camera .....	210
How Does Traction Control Work .....	199	Rear View Camera Guide Lines .....	210
Switching Traction Control On and Off .....	199	Rear View Camera Object Distance Indicators .....	211
Traction Control Indicator .....	199	Rear View Camera Settings .....	211
Traction Control – Troubleshooting .....	199	<b>Cruise Control</b>	
<b>Stability Control</b>		What Is Cruise Control .....	213
How Does Stability Control Work .....	201	Switching Cruise Control On and Off .....	213
Switching Stability Control On and Off .....	202	Setting the Cruise Control Speed .....	213
		Canceling the Set Speed .....	214
		Resuming the Set Speed .....	214

# Table of Contents

---

Cruise Control Indicators .....	214	Switching the Lane Keeping System On and Off .....	231
<b>Adaptive Cruise Control</b>		Switching the Lane Keeping System Mode .....	231
How Does Adaptive Cruise Control With Stop and Go Work .....	215	Alert Mode .....	231
Adaptive Cruise Control Precautions .....	215	Aid Mode .....	232
Adaptive Cruise Control Limitations .....	216	Alert and Aid Mode .....	232
Switching Adaptive Cruise Control On and Off .....	218	Lane Keeping System Indicators .....	233
Adaptive Cruise Control Automatic Cancellation .....	218	Lane Keeping System – Troubleshooting .....	234
Setting the Adaptive Cruise Control Speed .....	218	<b>Blind Spot Information System</b>	
Setting the Adaptive Cruise Control Gap .....	219	What Is Blind Spot Information System .....	237
Canceling the Set Speed .....	220	How Does Blind Spot Information System Work .....	237
Resuming the Set Speed .....	220	Blind Spot Information System Precautions .....	237
Overriding the Set Speed .....	221	Blind Spot Information System Limitations .....	237
Adaptive Cruise Control Indicators .....	221	Blind Spot Information System Requirements .....	237
Switching From Adaptive Cruise Control to Cruise Control .....	221	Switching Blind Spot Information System On and Off .....	237
Lane Centering .....	221	Locating the Blind Spot Information System Sensors .....	238
Adaptive Cruise Control – Troubleshooting .....	223	Blind Spot Information System Indicators .....	238
<b>Drive Mode Control</b>		Blind Spot Information System – Troubleshooting .....	239
What Is Drive Mode Control .....	226	<b>Cross Traffic Alert</b>	
How Does Drive Mode Control Work .....	226	What Is Cross Traffic Alert .....	240
Selecting a Drive Mode .....	226	How Does Cross Traffic Alert Work .....	240
Drive Modes .....	226	Cross Traffic Alert Precautions .....	240
Drive Mode Control – Troubleshooting .....	227	Cross Traffic Alert Limitations .....	240
<b>Lane Keeping System</b>		Switching Cross Traffic Alert On and Off .....	240
What Is the Lane Keeping System .....	230	Locating the Cross Traffic Alert Sensors .....	241
How Does the Lane Keeping System Work .....	230	Cross Traffic Alert Indicators .....	241
Lane Keeping System Precautions .....	230		
Lane Keeping System Limitations .....	230		

# Table of Contents

Cross Traffic Alert – Troubleshooting .....	242	Calculating the Load Limit .....	255
<b>Pre-Collision Assist</b>		<b>Pickup Bed</b>	
What Is Pre-Collision Assist .....	243	Pickup Bed Precautions .....	258
How Does Pre-Collision Assist Work .....	243	Pickup Bed Anchor Points .....	258
Pre-Collision Assist Precautions .....	243	Tailgate Anchor Points .....	260
Pre-Collision Assist Limitations .....	244	Pickup Bed Slots .....	260
Switching Pre-Collision Assist On and Off .....	244	<b>Connecting a Trailer</b>	
Locating the Pre-Collision Assist Sensors .....	245	Connecting a Trailer Precautions .....	261
Distance Indication .....	245	Connecting a Trailer .....	261
Distance Alert .....	247	<b>Towing a Trailer</b>	
Automatic Emergency Braking .....	247	Towing a Trailer Precautions .....	263
Evasive Steering Assist .....	247	Trailer Brake Precautions .....	263
Pre-Collision Assist – Troubleshooting .....	248	Towing a Trailer Limitations .....	264
		Loading Your Trailer .....	264
		Trailer Towing Hints .....	264
		Launching or Retrieving a Boat or Personal Watercraft .....	265
		Towing Weights and Dimensions .....	266
<b>Driver Alert</b>		<b>Integrated Trailer Brake Controller</b>	
What Is Driver Alert .....	250	What Is the Integrated Trailer Brake Controller .....	268
How Does Driver Alert Work .....	250	Integrated Trailer Brake Controller Precautions .....	268
Driver Alert Precautions .....	250	Using the Integrated Trailer Brake Controller .....	268
Driver Alert Limitations .....	250	Adjusting the Integrated Trailer Brake Controller Mode .....	269
Switching Driver Alert On and Off .....	251	Integrated Trailer Brake Controller – Troubleshooting .....	270
Driver Alert Indicators .....	251	<b>Trailer Sway Control</b>	
Driver Alert – Troubleshooting .....	251	How Does Trailer Sway Control Work .....	272
		Trailer Sway Control Precautions .....	272
		Switching Trailer Sway Control On and Off .....	272
<b>Load Carrying</b>			
Load Carrying Precautions .....	252		
Using a Slide-In Camper .....	253		
Locating the Safety Compliance Certification Labels .....	253		
What Is the Gross Axle Weight Rating .....	253		
What Is the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating .....	253		
What Is the Gross Combined Weight Rating .....	253		
Calculating Payload .....	255		

# Table of Contents

## Driving Hints

Cold Weather Precautions .....	273
Driving on Snow and Ice .....	273
Breaking-In .....	273
Driving Economically .....	273
Driving in Special Conditions .....	274
Driving Through Shallow Water .....	275
Floor Mats .....	276

## Crash and Breakdown Information

Roadside Assistance .....	278
High Voltage Battery Vehicle Precautions - Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV) .....	279
Switching the Hazard Flashers On and Off .....	280
Jump Starting the Vehicle .....	280
Post-Crash Alert System .....	283
Automatic Crash Shutoff .....	284
Recovery Towing .....	284
Transporting the Vehicle .....	286

## Towing Your Vehicle

Towing Your Vehicle Precautions .....	287
Recreationally Towing Your Vehicle - Gasoline, FWD .....	287
Recreationally Towing Your Vehicle - Gasoline, AWD .....	287
Recreationally Towing Your Vehicle - Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV) .....	287
Emergency Towing - Gasoline .....	288
Emergency Towing - Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV) .....	288
Towing Your Vehicle – Troubleshooting - Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV) .....	289

## Fuses

Fuse Precautions .....	290
Under Hood Fuse Box .....	290
Body Control Module Fuse Box .....	296
Identifying Fuse Types .....	298

Fuses – Troubleshooting .....	298
-------------------------------	-----

## Maintenance

Maintenance Precautions .....	299
Opening and Closing the Hood .....	299
Under Hood Overview - 2.0L EcoBoost™ .....	301
Under Hood Overview - 2.5L, Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV) .....	302
Engine Oil .....	303
Checking the Coolant .....	304
Changing the Engine Air Filter - 2.0L EcoBoost™ .....	308
Changing the Engine Air Filter - 2.5L, Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV) .....	309
Changing the Fuel Filter .....	309
Drive Belt Routing Overview - 2.0L EcoBoost™ .....	310
Changing the 12V Battery .....	310
Adjusting the Headlamps .....	312
Exterior Bulbs .....	313
Interior Bulbs .....	318

## Vehicle Care

Cleaning Products .....	319
Cleaning the Exterior .....	319
Cleaning the Interior .....	321
Repairing Minor Paint Damage .....	323
Waxing Your Vehicle .....	323

## Body Styling Kits

Body Styling Kit Precautions .....	324
------------------------------------	-----

## Storing Your Vehicle

Preparing Your Vehicle for Storage .....	325
Removing Your Vehicle From Storage .....	326

## Wheel and Tire Information

Locating the Tire label .....	327
-------------------------------	-----

# Table of Contents

Department of Transportation Uniform Tire Quality Grades .....	327	Engine Oil Capacity and Specification - 2.0L EcoBoost™ .....	359
Information on the Tire Sidewall .....	328	Engine Oil Capacity and Specification - 2.5L, Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV) .....	360
Glossary of Tire Terminology .....	333	Cooling System Capacity and Specification - 2.0L EcoBoost™ .....	361
Tire Replacement Requirements .....	334	Cooling System Capacity and Specification - 2.5L, Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV) .....	362
Using Snow Chains .....	336	Fuel Tank Capacity - Excluding: Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV) .....	363
<b>Tire Care</b>		Fuel Tank Capacity - Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV) .....	364
Checking the Tire Pressures .....	338	Air Conditioning System Capacity and Specification - 2.0L EcoBoost™ .....	365
Inflating the Tires .....	338	Air Conditioning System Capacity and Specification - 2.5L, Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV) .....	366
Inspecting the Tire for Wear .....	339	Washer Fluid Specification .....	366
Inspecting the Tire for Damage .....	339	Brake Fluid Specification .....	367
Inspecting the Wheel Valve Stems .....	340		
Tire Rotation .....	340		
<b>Tire Pressure Monitoring System</b>		<b>Vehicle Identification</b>	
What Is the Tire Pressure Monitoring System .....	342	Vehicle Identification Number .....	368
Tire Pressure Monitoring System Overview .....	342		
Tire Pressure Monitoring System Precautions .....	343	<b>Connected Vehicle</b>	
Tire Pressure Monitoring System Limitations .....	343	What Is a Connected Vehicle .....	369
Viewing the Tire Pressures .....	344	Connected Vehicle Requirements .....	369
Tire Pressure Monitoring System – Troubleshooting .....	344	Connected Vehicle Limitations .....	369
		Connecting the Vehicle to a Mobile Network .....	369
		Connecting the Vehicle to a Wi-Fi Network .....	369
		Connected Vehicle – Troubleshooting - Vehicles With: Modem .....	370
		Connected Vehicle – Troubleshooting - Vehicles With: SYNC 3 .....	371
<b>Changing a Road Wheel</b>		<b>Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot</b>	
Changing a Flat Tire .....	346	Creating a Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot - Vehicles With: SYNC 3 .....	373
Wheel Nuts .....	354	Changing the Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot Name or Password .....	373
<b>Capacities and Specifications</b>			
Engine Specifications - 2.0L EcoBoost™ .....	355		
Engine Specifications - 2.5L, Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV) .....	356		
Motorcraft Parts - 2.0L EcoBoost™ .....	357		
Motorcraft Parts - 2.5L, Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV) .....	357		

# Table of Contents

## **Audio System - Vehicles Without: SYNC 3**

General Information .....	375
Audio Unit .....	375
AM/FM Radio .....	376
Connecting a Bluetooth® Device .....	377
Streaming Bluetooth Audio .....	378
Playing Media From a USB Device .....	379
USB Port .....	379
Apps .....	380
Using Voice Recognition .....	382
Audio System – Troubleshooting .....	383

## **Audio System - Vehicles With: SYNC 3**

Audio System Precautions .....	384
Switching the Audio Unit On and Off .....	384
Selecting the Audio Source .....	384
Playing or Pausing the Audio Source .....	384
Adjusting the Volume .....	384
Switching Shuffle Mode On and Off .....	384
Switching Repeat Mode On and Off .....	384
Setting a Memory Preset .....	384
Muting the Audio .....	385
Adjusting the Sound Settings .....	385
Setting the Clock and Date .....	385
AM/FM Radio .....	386
Digital Radio .....	386
Satellite Radio .....	388

## **SYNC™ 3**

General Information .....	389
Using Voice Recognition .....	391
Entertainment .....	398
Phone .....	408
Navigation .....	410

Electric Vehicle Information .....	415
Apps .....	416
Settings .....	418
SYNC™ 3 Troubleshooting .....	420

## **Accessories**

Accessories .....	433
-------------------	-----

## **Ford Protect**

What Is Ford Protect .....	434
----------------------------	-----

## **Scheduled Maintenance**

General Maintenance Information .....	436
Normal Scheduled Maintenance .....	439
Special Operating Conditions Scheduled Maintenance .....	442

## **Customer Information**

Rollover Warning .....	445
The Better Business Bureau Auto Line Program .....	445
The Mediation and Arbitration Program .....	446
Ordering a Canadian French Owner's Manual .....	446
Reporting Safety Defects in the United States .....	447
Reporting Safety Defects in Canada .....	447
Radio Frequency Certification Labels .....	448
Perchlorate .....	480
Replacement Parts Recommendation .....	481
Mobile Communications Equipment .....	481
Federal Highway Administration Regulation .....	482
End User License Agreement .....	482
Emission Law .....	507

# Table of Contents

---

## Appendices

Electromagnetic Compatibility .....	509
Declaration of Conformity - Vehicles	
With: SYNC 3 .....	511





# Contacting Us

---

If you require assistance or clarification on policies or procedures, please contact the customer relationship center.

## United States

Ford Motor Company  
Customer Relationship Center  
PO Box 6248  
Dearborn, MI 48126  
1-800-392-3673 (FORD)  
TDD for the hearing impaired:  
7-1-1 (where offered by your telephone  
service provider)  
[www.ford.com/help/contact/](http://www.ford.com/help/contact/)

## Ford Credit - US Only

Ford Credit offers a full range of financing and lease plans to help you acquire your vehicle. If you have financed or leased your vehicle through Ford Credit, thank you for your business.

For assistance call 1-800-727-7000, or for more information about Ford Credit and access to an account manager, visit [www.ford.com/finance](http://www.ford.com/finance).

## Canada

Customer Relationship Center  
Ford Motor Company of Canada Limited  
P.O. Box 2000  
Oakville, Ontario L6J 5E4  
1-800-565-3673 (FORD)  
TDD for the hearing impaired:  
7-1-1 (where offered by your telephone  
service provider)  
[www.ford.ca](http://www.ford.ca)  
Facebook: FordServiceCA (English),  
FordServiceQC (Français)

## Australia

Ford Motor Company  
Attention: Customer Relationship Centre  
Private Mail Bag 5  
Fairlane Business Park #3  
Campbellfield, Victoria, 3061  
Telephone: 13 3673 (FORD)  
E-mail: [foacust1@ford.com](mailto:foacust1@ford.com)

## New Zealand

Ford Motor Company  
Attention: Customer Relationship Centre  
Private Bag 76912  
Manukau City 2241  
Telephone: 0800 367 369 (FORDNZ)  
E-mail: [fnzcust@ford.com](mailto:fnzcust@ford.com)

## China - Imported Vehicle

Customer Relationship Center  
Telephone: 400-690-1886  
Website: <https://www.ford.com.cn/>

## China - Chang'An Ford

Customer Relationship Center  
Telephone: 800-810-8168  
Mobile: 400-887-7766  
Website: <https://www.ford.com.cn/>

## Asia Pacific

E-mail: [expcac@ford.com](mailto:expcac@ford.com)

## Caribbean, Central America and Israel

Ford Motor Company  
Ford Export Operations  
Attention: Owner Relations  
1555 Fairlane Drive  
Fairlane Business Park #3  
Allen Park, MI 48101  
Fax: (313) 390-0804  
Telephone: (313) 594-4857  
E-mail: [expcac@ford.com](mailto:expcac@ford.com)

# Contacting Us

---

## **U.S. Virgin Islands and Puerto Rico**

Ford Motor Company  
Ford Export Operations  
Attention: Owner Relations  
1555 Fairlane Drive  
Fairlane Business Park #3  
Allen Park, MI 48101  
Telephone: (800) 841-3673  
E-mail: prcac@ford.com

## **Argentina**

Telephone: 0800-888-3673

## **Brazil**

[www.ford.com.br](http://www.ford.com.br)

## **North Africa**

E-mail: nafcrc@ford.com

## **Sub-Saharan Africa**

E-mail: ssacrc@ford.com

## **Puerto Rico**

Ford International Business Development,  
Inc.  
P.O. Box 11957  
Caparra Heights Station  
San Juan, PR 00922-1957  
1-800-392-3673 (FORD)  
Fax: (313) 390-0804  
E-mail: prcac@ford.com  
[www.ford.com.pr](http://www.ford.com.pr)

## **Middle East**

Ford Middle East Customer Relationship  
Center  
P.O. Box 21740  
Dubai, United Arab Emirates  
Telephone: 80004441066  
Toll-free number for the Kingdom of Saudi  
Arabia: 8008443673  
Mobily and Zain cell phone users in Saudi  
Arabia: 800850078  
Kuwait: 22280384  
Local telephone number for Kuwait: +965  
1898900  
Fax: +971 4 3327266  
E-mail: menacac@ford.com  
[www.me.ford.com](http://www.me.ford.com)

## **South Korea**

Telephone: +82-02-1600-6003  
E-mail: infokr1@ford.com

# Introduction

## ABOUT THIS MANUAL

Thank you for choosing Ford. We recommend that you take some time to get to know your vehicle by reading this manual. The more that you know about your vehicle, the greater the safety and pleasure you will get from driving it.



**WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

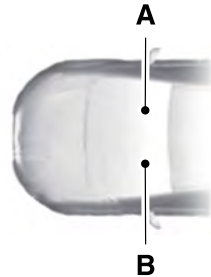
**Note:** *This manual describes product features and options available throughout the range of available models, sometimes even before they are generally available. It may describe options not fitted to the vehicle you have purchased.*

**Note:** *Some of the illustrations in this manual may show features as used in different models, so may appear different to you on your vehicle.*

**Note:** *Always use and operate your vehicle in line with all applicable laws and regulations.*

**Note:** *Pass on this manual when selling your vehicle. It is an integral part of your vehicle.*

This manual may qualify the location of a component as left-hand side or right-hand side. The side is determined when facing forward in the seat.



A Right-hand side.

B Left-hand side.

## SPECIAL NOTICES

### New Vehicle Limited Warranty

For a detailed description of what is covered by your New Vehicle Limited Warranty, see your warranty guide that is available online. For more information, refer to our website and download your copy of the warranty guide.

### Special Instructions

For your added safety, your vehicle is fitted with sophisticated electronic controls.



**WARNING:** You risk death or serious injury to yourself and others if you do not follow the instruction highlighted by the warning symbol. Failure to follow the specific warnings and instructions could result in personal injury.



**WARNING:** NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it. DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.

# Introduction

---

## On Board Diagnostics Data Link Connector



**WARNING:** Do not connect wireless plug-in devices to the data link connector. Unauthorized third parties could gain access to vehicle data and impair the performance of safety related systems. Only allow repair facilities that follow our service and repair instructions to connect their equipment to the data link connector.

Your vehicle has an OBD Data Link Connector (DLC) that is used in conjunction with a diagnostic scan tool for vehicle diagnostics, repairs and reprogramming services. Installing an aftermarket device that uses the DLC during normal driving for purposes such as remote insurance company monitoring, transmission of vehicle data to other devices or entities, or altering the performance of the vehicle, may cause interference with or even damage to vehicle systems. We do not recommend or endorse the use of unapproved aftermarket plug-in devices. The vehicle Warranty will not cover damage caused by an aftermarket plug-in device.

## Notice to Owners of Pickup Trucks and Utility Type Vehicles



**WARNING:** Utility vehicles have a significantly higher rollover rate than other types of vehicles.

Before you drive your vehicle, please read this Owner's Guide carefully. Your vehicle is not a passenger car. As with other vehicles of this type, failure to operate this vehicle correctly may result in loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury or death.

## Using Your Vehicle With a Snowplow

**Do not use this vehicle for snowplowing.**

Your vehicle does not have a snowplowing package.

## Using Your Vehicle as an Ambulance













**Do not use this vehicle as an ambulance.**
















Your vehicle does not have the Ambulance Preparation Package.

# Symbols Glossary

## SYMBOLS USED ON YOUR VEHICLE

These are some of the symbols you may see on your vehicle.

	Air conditioning system
	Air conditioning system lubricant type
	Anti-lock braking system
	Avoid smoking, flames or sparks
	Battery
	Battery acid
	Brake fluid - non petroleum based
	Brake system
	Brake system
	Cabin air filter
	Check fuel cap
	Child safety door lock or unlock
	Child seat lower anchor

	Child seat tether anchor
	Cruise control
	Do not open when hot
	Electric Parking brake
	Engine air filter
	Engine coolant
	Engine coolant temperature
	Engine oil
	Explosive gas
	Fan warning
	Fasten seatbelt
	Flammable
	Airbag
	Front fog lamps
	Fuel pump reset

# Symbols Glossary



Fuse compartment



Hazard flashers



Heated rear window



Windshield defrosting system



Interior luggage compartment release



Jack



Keep out of reach of children



Lighting control



Low tire pressure warning



Maintain correct fluid level



Note operating instructions



Horn control



Panic alarm



Parking aid



Passenger airbag activated



Passenger airbag deactivated



Power steering fluid



Power windows front/rear



Power window lockout



Requires registered technician



Safety alert



See Owner's Manual



See Service Manual



Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL)



Side airbag



Shield the eyes



Stability control



Hill descent control



Trail control



Windshield wiping system

# Symbols Glossary

---



Windshield wash and wipe



# Data Privacy



**WARNING:** Do not connect wireless plug-in devices to the data link connector. Unauthorized third parties could gain access to vehicle data and impair the performance of safety related systems. Only allow repair facilities that follow our service and repair instructions to connect their equipment to the data link connector.

We respect your privacy and are committed to protecting it. The information contained in this manual was correct at the time of publication, but as technology rapidly changes, we recommend that you visit the local Ford website for the latest information.

Your vehicle has electronic control units that have data recording functionality and the ability to permanently or temporarily store data. This data could include information on the condition and status of your vehicle, vehicle maintenance requirements, events and malfunctions. The types of data that can be recorded are described in this section. Some of the data recorded is stored in event logs or error logs.

**Note:** *Error logs are reset following a service or repair.*

**Note:** *We may provide information in response to requests from law enforcement, other government authorities and third parties acting with lawful authority or through a legal process. Such information could be used by them in legal proceedings.*

Data recorded includes, for example:

- Operating states of system components, for example fuel level, tire pressure and battery charge level.
- Vehicle and component status, for example wheel speed, deceleration, lateral acceleration and seatbelt status.

- Events or errors in essential systems, for example headlamps and brakes.
- System responses to driving situations, for example airbag deployment and stability control.
- Environmental conditions, for example temperature.

Some of this data, when used in combination with other information, for example an accident report, damage to a vehicle or eyewitness statements, could be associated with a specific person.

## Services That We Provide

If you use our services, we collect and use data, for example account information, vehicle location and driving characteristics, that could identify you. We transmit this data through a dedicated, protected connection. We only collect and use data to enable your use of our services to which you have subscribed, with your consent or where permitted by law. For additional information, see the terms and conditions of the services to which you have subscribed.

For additional information about our privacy policy, refer to the local Ford website.

## Services That Third Parties Provide

We recommend that you review the terms and conditions and data privacy information for any services equipped with your vehicle or to which you subscribe. We take no responsibility for services that third parties provide.

# Data Privacy

---

## SERVICE DATA

Service data recorders in your vehicle are capable of collecting and storing diagnostic information about your vehicle. This potentially includes information about the performance or status of various systems and modules in the vehicle, such as engine, throttle, steering or brake systems. In order to properly diagnose and service your vehicle, Ford Motor Company (Ford of Canada in Canada), and service and repair facilities may access or share among them vehicle diagnostic information received through a direct connection to your vehicle when diagnosing or servicing your vehicle. Additionally, Ford Motor Company (Ford of Canada, in Canada) may, where permitted by law, use vehicle diagnostic information for vehicle improvement or with other information we may have about you, for example, your contact information, to offer you products or services that may interest you. Data may be provided to our service providers such as part suppliers that may help diagnose malfunctions, and who are similarly obligated to protect data. We retain this data only as long as necessary to perform these functions or to comply with law. We may provide information where required in response to official requests to law enforcement or other government authorities or third parties acting with lawful authority or court order, and such information may be used in legal proceedings. For U.S. only (if equipped), if you choose to use connected apps and services, you consent that certain diagnostic information may also be accessed electronically by Ford Motor Company and Ford authorized service facilities, and that the diagnostic information may be used to provide services to you, personalizing your experience, troubleshoot, and to improve products and services and offer you products and services that may interest

you, where permitted by law. For Canada only, for more information, please review the Ford of Canada privacy policy at [www.ford.ca](http://www.ford.ca), including our U.S. data storage and use of service providers in other jurisdictions who may be subject to legal requirements in Canada, the United States and other countries applicable to them, for example, lawful requirements to disclose personal information to governmental authorities in those countries.

## EVENT DATA

This vehicle is equipped with an event data recorder. The main purpose of an event data recorder is to record, in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an airbag deployment or hitting a road obstacle; this data will assist in understanding how a vehicle's systems performed. The event data recorder is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short period of time, typically 30 seconds or less.

The event data recorder in this vehicle is designed to record such data as:

- How various systems in your vehicle were operating.
- Whether or not the driver and passenger seatbelts were buckled/fastened.
- How far (if at all) the driver was depressing the accelerator and/or the brake pedal.
- How fast the vehicle was traveling.
- Where the driver was positioning the steering wheel.

This data can help provide a better understanding of the circumstances in which crashes and injuries occur.

# Data Privacy

**Note:** *Event data recorder data is recorded by your vehicle only if a non-trivial crash situation occurs; no data is recorded by the event data recorder under normal driving conditions and no personal data or information (for example name, gender, age, and crash location) is recorded. However, parties, such as law enforcement, could combine the event data recorder data with the type of personally identifying data routinely acquired during a crash investigation.*

To read data recorded by an event data recorder, special equipment is required, and access to the vehicle or the event data recorder is needed. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties, such as law enforcement, that have such special equipment, can read the information if they have access to the vehicle or the event data recorder.

## SETTINGS DATA

Your vehicle has electronic control units that have the ability to store data based on your personalized settings. The data is stored locally in the vehicle or on devices that you connect to it, for example, a USB drive or digital music player. You can delete some of this data and also choose whether to share it through the services to which you subscribe. See **Settings** (page 418).

## Comfort and Convenience Data

Data recorded includes, for example:

- Seat and steering wheel position.
- Climate control settings.
- Radio presets.

## Entertainment Data

Data recorded includes, for example:

- Music, videos or album art.
- Contacts and corresponding address book entries.
- Navigation destinations.

## CONNECTED VEHICLE DATA



The modem has a SIM. The modem was enabled when your vehicle was built and periodically sends messages to stay connected to the cell phone network, receive automatic software updates and send vehicle-related information to us, for example diagnostic information. These messages could include information that identifies your vehicle, the SIM and the electronic serial number of the modem. Cell phone network service providers could have access to additional information, for example cell phone network tower identification. For additional information about our privacy policy, visit [www.FordConnected.com](http://www.FordConnected.com) or refer to your local Ford website.

**Note:** *The modem continues to send this information unless you disable the modem or stop the modem from sharing vehicle data by changing the modem settings. See **Connected Vehicle** (page 369).*

**Note:** *The service can be unavailable or interrupted for a number of reasons, for example environmental or topographical conditions and data plan coverage.*

**Note:** *To find out if your vehicle has a modem, visit [www.FordConnected.com](http://www.FordConnected.com).*

# Data Privacy

---

## MOBILE DEVICE DATA

If you connect a mobile device to your vehicle, you can display data from your device on the touchscreen for example, music and album art. You can share your vehicle data with mobile apps on your device through the system. See **Apps** (page 416).

The mobile apps function operates by your connected device sending data to us in the United States. The data is encrypted and includes, for example, the vehicle identification number of your vehicle, the SYNC module serial number, odometer, enabled apps, usage statistics and debugging information. We retain it only as long as necessary to provide the service, to troubleshoot, for continuous improvement and to offer you products and services that may be of interest to you according to your preferences and where allowed by law.

If you connect a cell phone to the system, the system creates a profile that links to that cell phone. The cell phone profile enables more mobile features and efficient operation. The profile contains, for example data from your phonebook, read and unread text messages and call history, including history of calls when your cell phone was not connected to the system.

If you connect a media device, the system creates and retains a media device index of supported media content. The system also records a short diagnostic log of approximately 10 minutes of all recent system activity.

The cell phone profile, media device index and diagnostic log remain in your vehicle unless you delete them and are generally accessible only in your vehicle when you connect your cell phone or media device. If you no longer plan to use the system or your vehicle, we recommend you use the master reset function to erase the stored information. See **Settings** (page 418).

System data cannot be accessed without special equipment and access to your vehicle's module.

For additional information about our privacy policy, refer to the local Ford website.

**Note:** To find out if your vehicle has connectivity technology, visit [www.FordConnected.com](http://www.FordConnected.com).

## EMERGENCY CALL SYSTEM DATA

When the emergency call system is active, it may disclose to emergency services that your vehicle has been in a crash involving the deployment of an airbag or activation of the fuel pump shut-off. Certain versions or updates to the emergency call system may also be capable of electronically or verbally disclosing to emergency services operators your vehicle location or other details about your vehicle or crash to assist emergency services operators to provide the most appropriate emergency services. If you do not want to disclose this information, do not activate the emergency call system.

**Note:** You cannot deactivate emergency call systems that are required by law.

# Visual Search

---

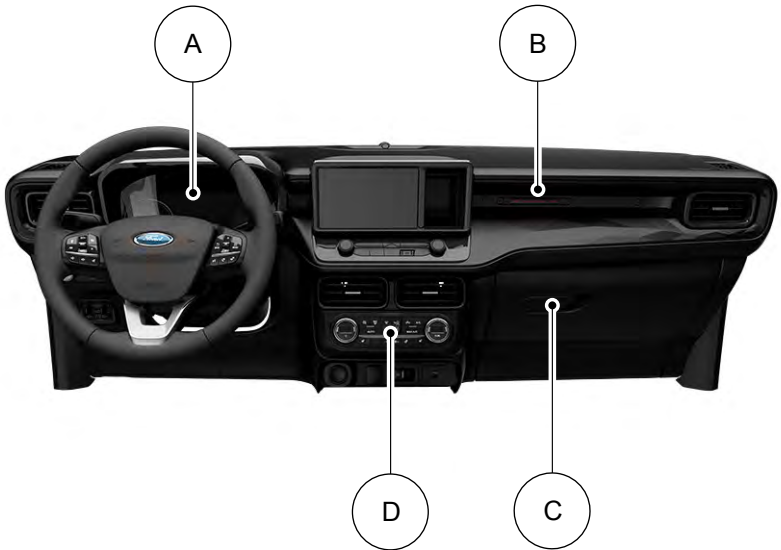
## STEERING WHEEL



- A See **Setting the Cruise Control Speed** (page 213). See **Setting the Adaptive Cruise Control Speed** (page 218).
- B See **Using the Instrument Cluster Display Controls** (page 116).
- C See **Using Voice Recognition** (page 382).
- D See **Muting the Audio** (page 385).

# Visual Search

## INSTRUMENT PANEL

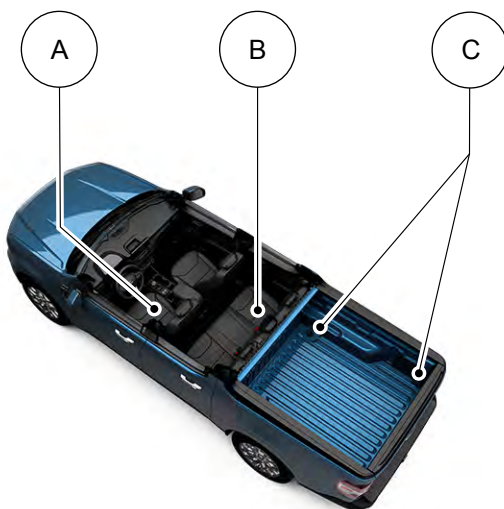


- A See **Instrument Cluster Overview** (page 108). See **Instrument Cluster Overview** (page 109). See **Instrument Cluster Overview** (page 110). See **Instrument Cluster Overview** (page 111).
- B See **Front Passenger Sensing System Indicators** (page 56).
- C Glove compartment.
- D See **Switching Climate Control On and Off** (page 126).

# Visual Search

---

## VEHICLE INTERIOR

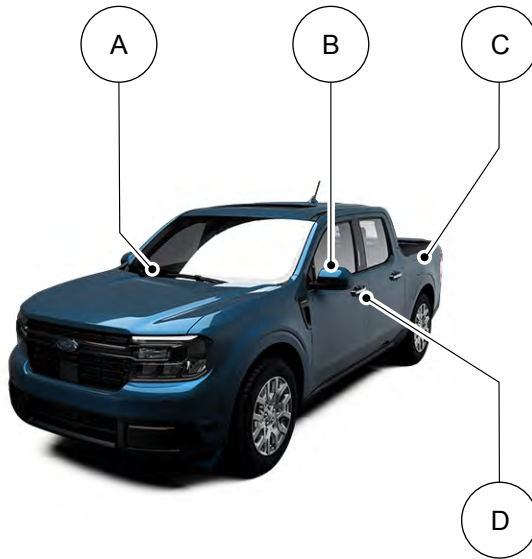


- A See **Sitting in the Correct Position** (page 135).
- B See **Adjusting the Seat Cushion** (page 143).
- C See **Locating the Pickup Bed Anchor Points** (page 258).

# Visual Search

---

## FRONT EXTERIOR

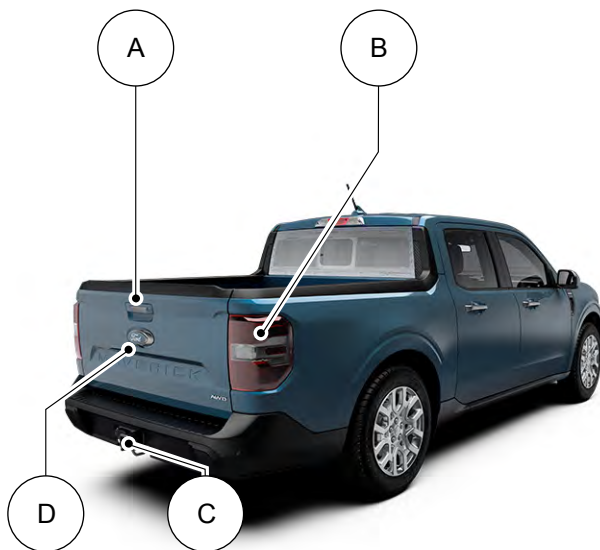


- A See **Replacing the Front Wiper Blades** (page 90).
- B See **Folding the Exterior Mirrors** (page 105).
- C See **Refueling Your Vehicle** (page 174). See **Refueling Your Vehicle** (page 176).
- D See **Unlocking and Locking the Doors Using the Key Blade** (page 73).



# Visual Search

## REAR EXTERIOR



- A See **Opening the Tailgate to the Middle Position** (page 82).
- B See **Changing a Stoplamp Bulb** (page 316).
- C See **Connecting a Trailer** (page 261). See **Connecting a Trailer** (page 261).
- D See **Locating the Rear View Camera** (page 210).

# Child Safety

## CHILD SAFETY PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Always make sure your child is secured properly in a device that is appropriate for their height, age and weight. Child safety restraints must be bought separately from your vehicle. Failure to follow these instructions and guidelines may result in an increased risk of serious injury or death to your child.



**WARNING:** All children are shaped differently. The National Highway Traffic Safety Administration and other safety organizations, base their recommendations for child restraints on probable child height, age and weight thresholds, or on the minimum requirements of the law. We recommend that you check with a NHTSA Certified Child Passenger Safety Technician (CPST) to make sure that you properly install the child restraint in your vehicle and that you consult your pediatrician to make sure you have a child restraint appropriate for your child. To locate a child restraint fitting station and CPST, contact NHTSA toll free at 1-888-327-4236 or go to [www.nhtsa.dot.gov](http://www.nhtsa.dot.gov). In Canada, contact Transport Canada toll free at 1-800-333-0371 or go to [www.tc.gc.ca](http://www.tc.gc.ca) to find a Child Car Seat Clinic in your area. Failure to properly restrain children in child restraints made especially for their height, age and weight, may result in an increased risk of serious injury or death to your child.



**WARNING:** On hot days, the temperature inside the vehicle can rise very quickly. Exposure of people or animals to these high temperatures for even a short time can cause death or serious heat related injuries, including brain damage. Small children are particularly at risk.



**WARNING:** Do not place a rearward facing child restraint in front of an active airbag. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Properly secure children 12 years old and under in a rear seating position whenever possible. If you are unable to properly secure all children in a rear seating position, properly secure the largest child on the front seat. If you must use a forward facing child restraint on the front seat, move the seat as far back as possible. Failure to follow these instructions could result in personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Always carefully follow the instructions and warnings provided by the manufacturer of any child restraint to determine if the restraint device is appropriate for your child's size, height, weight, or age. Follow the child restraint manufacturer's instructions and warnings provided for installation and use in conjunction with the instructions and warnings provided by your vehicle manufacturer. A safety seat that is improperly installed or utilized, is inappropriate for your child's height, age, or weight or does not properly fit the child may increase the risk of serious injury or death.

# Child Safety

**WARNING:** Do not allow a passenger to hold a child on their lap when your vehicle is moving. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death in the event of a sudden stop or crash.

**WARNING:** Do not use pillows, books or towels to boost your child's height. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** Properly secure child restraints or booster seats when they are not in use. They could become projectiles in a sudden stop or crash. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** Do not put the shoulder section of the seatbelt or allow the child to put the shoulder section of the seatbelt under their arm or behind their back. Failure to follow this instruction could reduce the effectiveness of the seatbelt and increase the risk of injury or death in a crash.

**WARNING:** Do not leave children or pets unattended in your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

When installing a child restraint with seatbelts:

- Place the vehicle seat in the upright position before you install the child restraint.
- Use the correct seatbelt buckle for that seating position.
- Insert the belt tongue into the buckle. Make sure the tongue is securely fastened in the buckle.

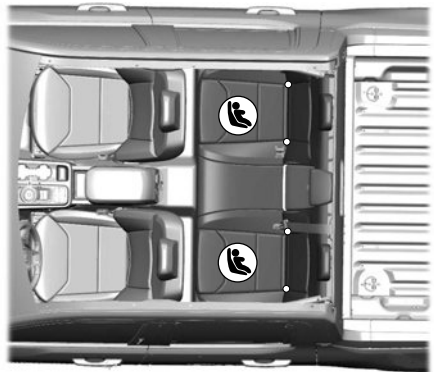
- Keep the buckle release button pointing up and away from the child restraint, with the tongue between the child restraint and the release button, to prevent accidental unbuckling.
- Put the seatbelt in the automatic locking mode.

## CHILD RESTRAINT ANCHOR POINTS

### WHAT ARE THE CHILD RESTRAINT ANCHOR POINTS

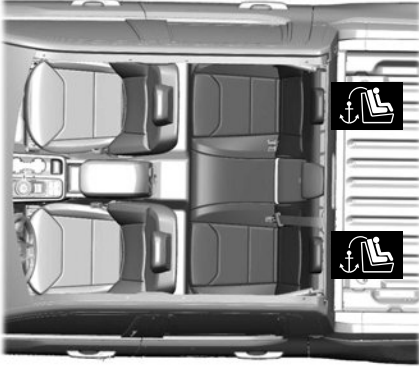
Anchor points allow you to quickly and safely install a child restraint.

### LOCATING THE CHILD RESTRAINT LOWER ANCHOR POINTS



# Child Safety

## LOCATING THE CHILD RESTRAINT TOP TETHER ANCHOR POINTS



## CHILD RESTRAINTS

### CHILD RESTRAINT POSITION INFORMATION

Install the child restraint tightly against the vehicle seat. It may be necessary to lift or remove the head restraint.

### Rear Facing Child Restraints

Combined Weight of Child and Child Restraint	LATCH (Lower Anchors Only)	Seatbelt Only
Up to 65 lb (29 kg)	X	X
Over 65 lb (29 kg)		X

### Forward Facing Child Restraints

Combined Weight of Child and Child Restraint	LATCH (Lower Anchors and Top Tether Anchor)	Seatbelt and Top Tether Anchor	Seatbelt and LATCH (Lower Anchors and Top Tether Anchor)
Up to 65 lb (29 kg)	X	X	X
Over 65 lb (29 kg)		X	X

# Child Safety

## CHILD RESTRAINTS RECOMMENDATION

Child Size, Height, Weight, or Age	Recommended Restraint Type
Children weighing 40 lb (18 kg) or less (generally age four or younger).	Use a child restraint (sometimes called an infant carrier, convertible seat, or toddler seat).
Children who have outgrown or no longer properly fit in a child restraint (generally children who are less than 57 in (1.45 m) tall, are greater than age four and less than age 12, and between 40 lb (18 kg) and 80 lb (36 kg) and upward to 100 lb (45 kg) if recommended by your child restraint manufacturer).	Use a belt-positioning booster seat.
Children who have outgrown or no longer properly fit in a belt-positioning booster seat (generally children who are at least 57 in (1.45 m) tall or greater than 80 lb (36 kg) or 100 lb (45 kg) if recommended by child restraint manufacturer).	Use a vehicle seatbelt having the lap belt snug and low across the hips, shoulder belt centered across the shoulder and chest, and seat backrest upright.

You are required by law to properly use child restraints for infants and toddlers in the United States, Canada and Mexico.

Many states and provinces require that small children use approved booster seats until they reach age eight, a height of 57 in (1.45 m) tall, or 80 lb (36 kg). Check your local and state or provincial laws for specific requirements about the safety of children in your vehicle.

When possible, properly restrain children 12 years of age and under in a rear seating position of your vehicle. Accident statistics suggest that children are safer when properly restrained in the rear seating positions than in a front seating position.

When installing a rear facing child restraint, adjust the vehicle seats to avoid interference between the child restraint and the vehicle seat in front of the child restraint.

## INSTALLING CHILD RESTRAINTS

### USING SEATBELTS



**WARNING:** Depending on where you secure a child restraint, and depending on the child restraint design, you may block access to certain seatbelt buckle assemblies and LATCH lower anchors, rendering those features potentially unusable. To avoid risk of injury, make sure occupants only use seating positions where they are able to be properly restrained.

**Note:** *Although the child restraint illustrated is a forward-facing child restraint, the steps are the same for installing a rear-facing child restraint.*

Perform the following steps when installing the child restraint with seatbelts:

# Child Safety

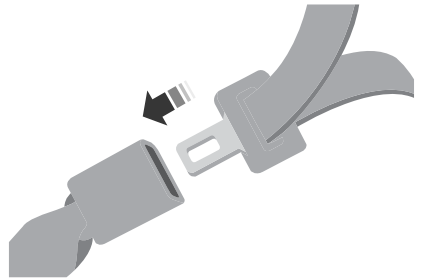
1. Position the child restraint in a seat with a seatbelt.



2. After positioning the child restraint in the proper seating position, pull down on the shoulder belt and then grasp the shoulder belt and lap belt together behind the belt tongue.



3. While holding the shoulder and lap belt portions together, route the tongue through the child restraint according to the child restraint manufacturer's instructions. Make sure that you did not twist the belt webbing.



4. Insert the belt tongue into the proper buckle (the buckle closest to the direction the tongue is coming from) for that seating position until you hear a snap and feel the latch engage. Make sure the tongue is latched securely by pulling on it.



5. To put the retractor in the automatic locking mode, grasp the shoulder portion of the belt and pull downward until you pull all of the belt out.

**Note:** *The automatic locking mode is available on the front passenger and rear seats.*

6. Allow the belt to retract to remove slack. The belt clicks as it retracts to indicate it is in the automatic locking mode.

# Child Safety

7. Try to pull the belt out of the retractor to make sure the retractor is in the automatic locking mode. You should not be able to pull more belt out. If the retractor did not lock, unbuckle the belt and repeat Steps 5 and 6.



8. Remove remaining slack from the belt. Force the seat down with extra weight, for example, by pressing down or kneeling on the child restraint while pulling up on the shoulder belt in order to force slack from the belt. This is necessary to remove the remaining slack that exists once you add the extra weight of the child to the child restraint. It also helps to achieve the proper snugness of the child restraint to your vehicle. Sometimes, a slight lean toward the buckle will provide extra help to remove remaining slack from the belt.
9. If the child restraint has a tether strap, attach it.



10. Before placing the child in the seat, forcibly move the seat forward and back to make sure the seat is securely held in place. To check this, grab the seat at the belt path and attempt to move it side to side and forward and back. There should be no more than 1 in (2.5 cm) of movement.

We recommend checking with a NHTSA Certified Child Passenger Safety Technician to make certain the child restraint is properly installed. In Canada, check with Transport Canada for referral to a Child Car Seat Clinic.

## USING LOWER ANCHORS AND TETHERS FOR CHILDREN



**WARNING:** Do not attach two child safety restraints to the same anchor. In a crash, one anchor may not be strong enough to hold two child safety restraint attachments and may break, causing serious injury or death.

# Child Safety



**WARNING:** Depending on where you secure a child restraint, and depending on the child restraint design, you may block access to certain seatbelt buckle assemblies and LATCH lower anchors, rendering those features potentially unusable. To avoid risk of injury, make sure occupants only use seating positions where they are able to be properly restrained.

The LATCH (Lower Anchors and Tethers for CHildren) system has three vehicle anchor points.

- Two lower anchors where the seat backrest and seat cushion meet, called the seat bight.
- One top tether anchor behind that seating position.

LATCH-compatible child restraints have two rigid or webbing mounted attachments that connect to the two lower anchors at the LATCH-equipped seating positions in your vehicle. This type of attachment method eliminates the need to use seatbelts to attach the child restraint.

However, you can still use the seatbelt to attach the child restraint. For forward-facing child restraints, you must also attach the top tether strap to the proper top tether anchor if a top tether strap has been provided with your child restraint.

Follow the instructions on attaching child restraints with tether straps.

## INSTALLING A CHILD RESTRAINT IN A CENTER SEAT



**WARNING:** The standardized spacing for LATCH lower anchors is 11 in (280 mm) center to center. Do not use LATCH lower anchors for the center seating position unless the child restraint manufacturer's instructions permit and specify using anchors spaced at least as far apart as those in this vehicle.

The lower anchors at the center of the second row rear seat are spaced 18 in (46 cm) apart. You cannot install a child restraint with rigid LATCH attachments at the center seating position. You can only use LATCH compatible child restraints with attachments on belt webbing at this seating position provided that the child restraint manufacturer's instructions permit use with the anchor spacing stated. Do not attach a child restraint to any lower anchor if an adjacent child restraint is attached to that anchor.

Each time you use the child restraint, check that the seat is properly attached to the lower anchors and tether anchor, if applicable. Tug the child restraint from side to side and forward and back where it is secured to your vehicle. The seat should move less than 1 in (2.5 cm).

If you did not properly anchor the child restraint, the risk of a child being injured in a crash greatly increases.



# Child Safety

## COMBINING THE SEATBELT AND LOWER ANCHORS FOR ATTACHING CHILD RESTRAINTS

When used in combination, you may attach either the seatbelt or the LATCH lower anchors first, provided a proper installation is achieved. Attach the tether strap afterward, if it is included with the child restraint.

## USING TETHER STRAPS

Many forward-facing child restraints include a tether strap which extends from the back of the child restraint and hooks to an anchoring point called the top tether anchor. Tether straps are available as an accessory for many older child restraints.

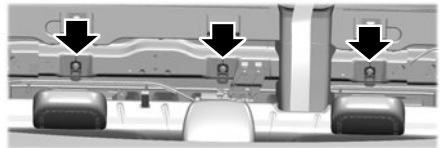
Contact the manufacturer of your child restraint for information about ordering a tether strap, or to obtain a longer tether strap if the tether strap on your child restraint does not reach the appropriate top tether anchor in your vehicle.

Once you install the child restraint using either the seatbelt, the lower anchors of the LATCH system, or both, you can attach the top tether strap.

Perform the following steps to install a child restraint with tether anchors.

**Note:** *If you install a child restraint with rigid LATCH attachments, do not tighten the tether strap enough to lift the child restraint off your vehicle seat cushion when the child is seated in it. Keep the tether strap just snug without lifting the front of the child restraint. Keeping the child restraint just touching your vehicle seat gives the best protection in a severe crash.*

1. Route the child restraint tether strap over the back of the seat. For the outermost seating positions, route the tether strap under the head restraint and between the head restraint posts. For the center seating position, route the tether strap over the top of the head restraint.
2. To access the top tether anchors, pull the strap on the top of the rear seat backrest and fold the backrest forward.



3. Locate the correct anchor for the selected seating position.



4. Clip the tether strap to the anchor as shown.
5. Tighten the child restraint tether strap according to the manufacturer's instructions. If your child restraint system has a tether strap, and the child restraint manufacturer recommends its use, we also recommend its use.

# Child Safety

- Return the rear seat backrest to its original rearward and locked position. Pull slightly on the seat backrest and make sure that it is locked.

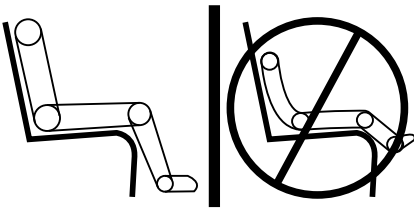
## BOOSTER SEATS

Use a belt-positioning booster seat for children who have outgrown or no longer properly fit in a child restraint and meet the following criteria.

- Generally children who are less than 57 in (1.45 m) tall.
- Are greater than age four (4) and less than age twelve (12).
- Are between 40 lb (18 kg) and 80 lb (36 kg) and upward to 100 lb (45 kg).

Many state and provincial laws require that children use approved booster seats until they reach age eight, a height of 57 in (1.45 m) tall, or 80 lb (36 kg).

Booster seats should be used until you can answer yes to all of these questions when seated without a booster seat:



- Can the child sit all the way back against their vehicle seat backrest with knees bent comfortably at the edge of the seat cushion?
- Can the child sit without slouching?
- Does the lap belt rest low across the hips?

- Is the shoulder belt centered on the shoulder and chest?
- Can the child stay seated like this for the whole trip?

Always use booster seats in conjunction with your vehicle lap and shoulder belt.

## Types of Booster Seats



- Backless booster seats

If your backless booster seat has a removable shield, remove the shield.

If a vehicle seating position has a low seat backrest or no head restraint, a backless booster seat may place your child's head, as measured at the tops of the ears, above the top of the seat. In this case, move the backless booster to another seating position with a higher seat backrest or head restraint and lap and shoulder belts, or consider using a high-back booster seat.

# Child Safety



If, with a backless booster seat, you cannot find a seating position that adequately supports your child's head, a high-back booster seat would be a better choice.

Children and booster seats vary in size and shape. Choose a booster that keeps the lap belt low and snug across the hips, never up across the stomach, and lets you adjust the shoulder belt to cross the chest and rest snugly near the center of the shoulder.

The following drawings compare the ideal fit to a shoulder belt uncomfortably close to the neck and a shoulder belt that could slip off the shoulder. The drawings also show how the lap belt should be low and snug across the child's hips.

- High-back booster seats



# Child Safety

---

If the booster seat slides on the vehicle seat upon which it is being used, placing a rubberized mesh sold as shelf or carpet liner under the booster seat may improve this condition. Do not use any item thicker than this under the booster seat. Check with the booster seat manufacturer's instructions.

## CHILD SAFETY LOCKS



**WARNING:** You cannot open the rear doors from inside if you have put the child safety locks on.



A child safety lock is on the rear edge of each rear door. You must switch the child safety lock separately on each door.

### Left-Hand Side

Turn the key clockwise to switch the child lock on and counterclockwise to switch it off.

### Right-Hand Side

Turn the key counterclockwise to switch the child lock on and clockwise to switch it off.

# Seatbelts

## SEATBELT PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Always drive and ride with your seatback upright and the lap belt snug and low across the hips.



**WARNING:** Children must always be properly restrained.



**WARNING:** Do not allow a passenger to hold a child on their lap when your vehicle is moving. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death in the event of a sudden stop or crash.



**WARNING:** All occupants of your vehicle, including the driver, should always properly wear their seatbelts, even when an airbag supplemental restraint system is provided. Failure to properly wear your seatbelt could seriously increase the risk of injury or death.



**WARNING:** It is extremely dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a crash, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed. Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle that is not equipped with seats and seatbelts. Make sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and properly using a seatbelt. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** In a rollover crash, an unbelted person is significantly more likely to die than a person wearing a seatbelt.



**WARNING:** Each seating position in your vehicle has a specific seatbelt assembly made up of one buckle and one tongue designed to be used as a pair. Use the shoulder belt on the outside shoulder only. Never wear the shoulder belt under the arm. Never use a single seatbelt for more than one person.



**WARNING:** Even with advanced restraints systems, properly restrain children 12 and under in a rear seating position. Failure to follow this could seriously increase the risk of injury or death.



**WARNING:** Seatbelts and seats may be hot in a vehicle that is in the sunshine. The hot seatbelts or seats may burn a small child. Check seat covers and buckles before you place a child anywhere near them.



**WARNING:** If your vehicle is involved in a crash, have the seatbelts and associated components inspected as soon as possible. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

All seating positions in this vehicle have lap and shoulder seatbelts. All occupants of the vehicle should properly wear their seatbelts, even when an airbag supplemental restraint system is provided.

The seatbelt system consists of:

- Lap and shoulder seatbelts.
- A shoulder seatbelt with automatic locking mode, except driver seatbelt.
- Height adjusters at the front outermost seating positions.

# Seatbelts

- Seatbelt pretensioners at the front outermost and second row outermost seating positions.
- Belt tension sensor at the front outermost passenger seating position.



A seatbelt warning light and chime.

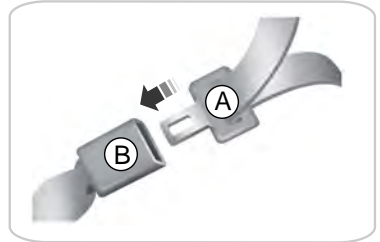


Crash sensors and monitoring system with readiness indicator.

The seatbelt pretensioners are designed to tighten the seatbelts when activated. In frontal and near-frontal crashes, the seatbelt pretensioners may be activated alone or, if the crash is of sufficient severity, together with the front airbags. The pretensioners may also activate when a Safety Canopy airbag deploys.

## FASTENING AND UNFASTENING THE SEATBELTS

All seatbelts in your vehicle are a three-point combination lap and shoulder seatbelt.



A Seatbelt tongue.

B Seatbelt buckle.

1. Pull the seatbelt out steadily.

**Note:** *It may lock if you pull it sharply or if the vehicle is on a slope.*

2. Insert the tongue into the buckle.
3. Pull the seatbelt tight to remove any slack.

### Unfastening the Seatbelts

1. Press the red button on the buckle to release the seatbelt.
2. Hold the seatbelt tongue and let it retract completely and smoothly to its stowed position.

# Seatbelts

## SENSITIVE LOCKING MODE

### WHAT IS SENSITIVE LOCKING MODE

Sensitive locking mode is a seatbelt retractor feature that allows shoulder belt length adjustment according to your movements and locking in response to vehicle movement.

### HOW DOES SENSITIVE LOCKING MODE WORK

If the driver suddenly brakes, turns a corner sharply, or the vehicle receives an impact of about 5 mph (8 km/h) or more, the seatbelts lock to help reduce forward movement of the driver and passengers.

In addition, the seatbelt retractor locks if you pull the seatbelt webbing out too quickly. If the retractor locks, slowly lower the height adjuster to allow the seatbelt to retract.

If the retractor does not unlock, pull the seatbelt out slowly then feed a small length of webbing back toward the stowed position.

## AUTOMATIC LOCKING MODE

### WHAT IS AUTOMATIC LOCKING MODE

This is a safety feature built into the seatbelt retractors that keeps the seatbelts pre-locked.

## ENGAGING AUTOMATIC LOCKING MODE



1. Fasten the combination lap and shoulder belt.
2. Grasp the shoulder portion and pull downward until you pull the entire belt out.
3. Allow the belt to retract. As the belt retracts, you will hear a clicking sound. This indicates the seatbelt is now in the automatic locking mode.

## DISENGAGING AUTOMATIC LOCKING MODE

Unbuckle the combination lap and shoulder belt and allow it to retract completely to disengage the automatic locking mode and activate the vehicle sensitive locking mode.

### Extracting Seatbelts in the Rear Outermost Seat Positions

Seatbelts in the rear outermost positions can lock if you firmly return the seat backrest to its upright position. You can unlock the seatbelts using the following procedures.

For vehicles where the rear seats recline:

1. Recline the seat to its full rear recline position.

# Seatbelts

2. The seatbelt should then unlock.
3. Return the seat backrest to its desired upright position.

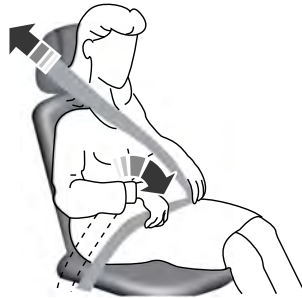
For vehicles with rear seats that do not recline or are locked with the seat in its full rear recline position:

1. Grasp the seatbelt webbing at the top of the seat backrest.
2. Pull the seatbelt webbing forward, firmly.
3. After pulling the seatbelt forward, allow the seatbelt to feed back into the seatbelt retractor as much as possible. If necessary, press the seat backrest down to allow the seatbelt webbing to retract further.
4. The seatbelt should then unlock.
5. If the seatbelt does not unlock, repeat steps 1-3.

## ADJUSTING THE SEATBELTS DURING PREGNANCY



**WARNING:** Always ride and drive with your seatback upright and properly fasten your seatbelt. Fit the lap portion of the seatbelt snugly and low across the hips. Position the shoulder portion of the seatbelt across your chest. Pregnant women must follow this practice. See the following figure.



Pregnant women should always wear their seatbelt. Position the lap belt portion of a combination lap and shoulder belt low across the hips below the belly and worn as tight as comfort allows. Position the shoulder belt to cross the middle of the shoulder and the center of the chest.

## ADJUSTING THE SEATBELT HEIGHT



**WARNING:** Position the seatbelt height adjuster so that the seatbelt rests across the middle of your shoulder. Failure to adjust the seatbelt correctly could reduce its effectiveness and increase the risk of injury in a crash.





# Seatbelts

1. Press the button and slide the height adjuster up or down.
2. Release the button and pull down on the height adjuster to make sure it is locked in place.

## SEATBELT REMINDER

### HOW DOES THE SEATBELT REMINDER WORK



**WARNING:** The system will only provide protection when you use the seatbelt correctly.

This system monitors all seating positions and provides audio and graphic feedback.

### SEATBELT REMINDER INDICATORS



This lamp illuminates if you do not fasten your seatbelt when you switch the ignition on. The lamp switches off when you fasten your seatbelt or about one minute has elapsed.

When the initial warning expires for the driver, more warnings are provided for the driver and front passenger. This lamp illuminates if you or your front passenger do not fasten the seatbelt buckle and the vehicle speed exceeds 6 mph (10 km/h).

**Note:** To avoid inadvertent warnings, do not place large objects on the front passenger seat.



This lamp illuminates when you switch the ignition on, identifying the number of seating positions with fastened buckles. It illuminates again when a seating position changes from unfastened to fastened.



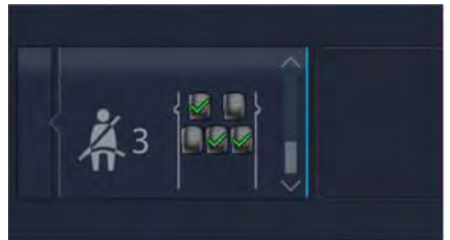
This warning displays if an occupant unfastens the rear seatbelt buckle or it becomes unfastened.

**Note:** If a rear seat is unoccupied, or an occupant never fastens the seatbelt buckle to begin with, the warning will not display.

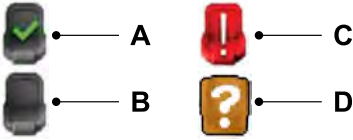
**Note:** Front seating positions appear in this warning display. Warnings for unfastened front seatbelt buckles appear in the initial warning lamp.

### Seatbelt Status

To view the seatbelt status, use the information display controls on the steering wheel.



# Seatbelts



- A Seatbelt fastened.
- B Seatbelt not fastened.
- C Seatbelt recently unfastened.
- D Fault.

## SEATBELT REMINDER AUDIBLE WARNINGS

A warning tone sounds if you do not fasten your seatbelt when you switch the ignition on. The tone switches off when you fasten your seatbelt or about one minute elapses.

When the initial warning expires for the driver, more warnings are provided for the driver and front passenger. This warning tone sounds if you or your front passenger do not fasten the seatbelt buckle and the vehicle speed exceeds 6 mph (10 km/h).

This tone also sounds if an occupant unfastens the rear seatbelt buckle or it becomes unfastened.

## SWITCHING THE SEATBELT REMINDER ON AND OFF



**WARNING:** While the system allows you to deactivate it, this system is designed to improve your chances of being safely belted and surviving an accident. We recommend you leave the system activated for yourself and others who may use the vehicle.

**Note:** The driver and front passenger warnings switch off independently. When you perform this procedure for one seating position, do not buckle the other position as this cancels the process.

Read Steps 1 - 4 before proceeding with the programming procedure.

Make sure that:

- You set the parking brake.
  - The transmission is in park (P).
  - The ignition is off.
  - You close all vehicle doors.
  - You unfasten the driver and front passenger seatbelts.
1. Switch the ignition on. Do not start the engine.
  2. Wait about one minute until the seatbelt warning light switches off. After Step 2, wait an additional five seconds before proceeding with Step 3. Once you start Step 3, you must complete the procedure within 30 seconds.
  3. For the seating position you are switching off, fasten then unfasten the seatbelt three times at a moderate speed, ending in the unfastened state. After Step 3, the seatbelt warning light switches on.
  4. When the seatbelt warning light is on, fasten then unfasten the seatbelt. After Step 4, the seatbelt warning light flashes for confirmation.

This switches the feature off for that seating position if it is currently on.

This switches the feature on for that seating position if it is currently off.

# Seatbelts

## CHECKING THE SEATBELTS

Check the seatbelts and child restraints periodically to make sure they work properly and are not damaged. Make sure there are no nicks, tears or cuts. Replace if necessary.

Check the following seatbelt assemblies after a crash.

- Retractors.
- Buckles.
- Front seatbelt buckle assemblies.
- Shoulder belt height adjusters.
- Shoulder belt guide on seat backrest.
- Child restraint LATCH and tether anchors.
- Attaching hardware.

Read the child restraint manufacturer's instructions for additional inspection and maintenance information specific to the child restraint.

We recommend that all seatbelt assemblies in use in vehicles involved in a crash be replaced. However, if the crash was minor and an authorized dealer finds that the belts do not show damage and continue to operate properly, they do not need to be replaced. Seatbelt assemblies not in use during a crash should also be checked and replaced if either damage or improper operation is noted.

Properly care for seatbelts. See **Cleaning Seatbelts** (page 323).

## SEATBELT EXTENSIONS



**WARNING:** Persons who fit into the vehicle's seatbelt should not use an extension. Unnecessary use could result in serious personal injury in the event of a crash.



**WARNING:** Only use extensions provided free of charge by our dealers. The dealer will provide an extension designed specifically for this vehicle, model year and seating position. The use of an extension intended for another vehicle, model year or seating position may not offer you the full protection of your vehicle's seatbelt restraint system.



**WARNING:** Never use seatbelt extensions to install child restraints.



**WARNING:** Do not use extensions to change the way the seatbelt fits across the torso, over the lap or to make the seatbelt buckle easier to reach.

If, because of body size or driving position, it is not possible to properly fasten the seatbelt over your lap and shoulder, an extension that is compatible with the seatbelts is available free of charge from our dealers. Only use our seatbelt extensions made by the original equipment seatbelt manufacturer with our seatbelts. Ask your authorized dealer if your extension is compatible with your vehicle restraint system.

# Personal Safety System™

---

## WHAT IS THE PERSONAL SAFETY SYSTEM

An advanced safety system that protects occupants in frontal crashes.

## HOW DOES THE PERSONAL SAFETY SYSTEM WORK

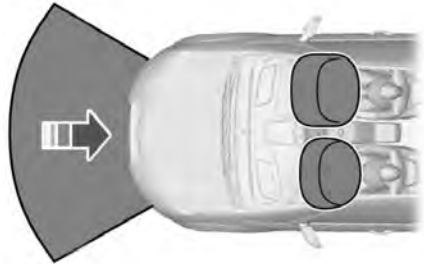
This system provides an improved level of frontal crash protection to front seat occupants and is designed to reduce the risk of airbag-related injuries. The system analyzes occupant conditions and crash severity before activating the appropriate safety devices. During a crash, the restraints control module may deploy the seatbelt pretensioners, and one or both stages of the dual-stage airbags based on crash severity and occupant conditions.

## PERSONAL SAFETY SYSTEM COMPONENTS

- Driver and passenger dual-stage airbag supplemental restraints.
  - Front seat outermost seatbelts with pretensioners, energy management retractors and seatbelt usage sensors.
  - Driver seat position sensor.
  - Passenger seat position sensor.
  - Front passenger sensing system.
  - Passenger airbag off and on indicators.
  - Front crash severity sensors.
  - Restraints control module with impact and safing sensors.
- Restraint system warning light and tone.
  - The electrical wiring for the airbags, crash sensors, seatbelt pretensioners, front seatbelt usage sensors, front passenger sensing system and indicator lights.

# Airbags

## HOW DO THE FRONT AIRBAGS WORK



The driver and front passenger airbags deploy during significant frontal and near frontal crashes.

The driver and passenger front airbag system consists of:

- Driver and passenger airbag modules.
- Front passenger sensing system.
- Crash sensors and monitoring system with readiness indicator. See **Crash Sensors and Airbag Indicator** (page 57).

The airbags are a supplemental restraint system and are designed to work with the seatbelts to help protect the driver and right front passenger from certain upper body injuries. Airbags do not inflate slowly; there is a risk of injury from a deploying airbag.

**Note:** *You will hear a loud bang and see a cloud of harmless powdery residue if an airbag deploys. This is normal.*

The airbags inflate and deflate rapidly upon activation. After airbag deployment, it is normal to notice a smoke-like, powdery residue or smell the burnt propellant. This may consist of cornstarch, talcum powder (to lubricate the bag) or sodium

compounds (for example, baking soda) that result from the combustion process that inflates the airbag. Small amounts of sodium hydroxide may be present which may irritate the skin and eyes, but none of the residue is toxic.

Contact with a deploying airbag may cause abrasions or swelling. Temporary hearing loss is also a possibility as a result of the noise associated with a deploying airbag.

Because airbags must inflate rapidly and with considerable force, there is the risk of death or serious injuries such as fractures, facial and eye injuries or internal injuries, particularly to occupants who are not properly restrained or are otherwise out of position at the time of airbag deployment. Thus, it is extremely important that occupants be properly restrained as far away from the airbag module as possible while maintaining vehicle control.

Routine maintenance of the airbags is not required.

## HOW DO THE SIDE AIRBAGS WORK



**WARNING:** Do not place objects or mount equipment on or near the airbag cover, on the side of the front or rear seatbacks, or in areas that may come into contact with a deploying airbag. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of personal injury in the event of a crash.



**WARNING:** Accessory seat covers not released by Ford Motor Company could prevent the deployment of the airbags and increase the risk of injuries in a crash.

# Airbags



**WARNING:** Do not lean your head on the door. The side airbag could injure you as it deploys from the side of the seatback.

The side airbags are on the outermost side of each front seat backrest. In certain sideways crashes or rollovers, the airbags will be inflated.

The airbag was designed to inflate between the door panel and occupant to further enhance the protection provided occupants in side impact crashes.



The system consists of the following:

- A label or embossed side panel indicating that your vehicle has side airbags.
- Side airbags inside the driver and front passenger seat backrests.
- Crash sensors and monitoring system with a readiness indicator. See **Crash Sensors and Airbag Indicator** (page 57).

## HOW DO THE KNEE AIRBAGS WORK

The driver knee airbag is under or within the instrument panel. During a crash, the restraints control module may activate the knee airbag based on crash severity and respective occupant conditions. Under certain crash and occupant conditions, the knee airbag may deploy but the corresponding front airbag may not activate. It is important to be properly seated and restrained to reduce the risk of death or serious injury.



Make sure the knee airbag is operating properly. See **Crash Sensors and Airbag Indicator** (page 57).

## HOW DOES THE SAFETY CANOPY™ WORK



**WARNING:** Do not place objects or mount equipment on or near the headliner at the siderail that may come into contact with a deploying curtain airbag. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of personal injury in the event of a crash.



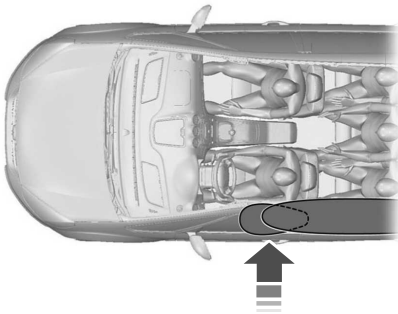
**WARNING:** Do not lean your head on the door. The curtain airbag could injure you as it deploys from the headliner.



**WARNING:** To reduce risk of injury, do not obstruct or place objects in the deployment path of the airbag.

# Airbags

The Safety Canopy deploys during significant side crashes or when a certain likelihood of a rollover event is detected by the rollover sensor. The Safety Canopy is mounted to the roof side-rail sheet metal, behind the headliner, above each row of seats. In certain sideways crashes or rollover events, the Safety Canopy will be activated, regardless of which seats are occupied. The Safety Canopy inflates between the side window area and occupants to further enhance protection provided in side impact crashes and rollover events.



The system consists of the following:

- Safety Canopy curtain airbags above the trim panels over the front and rear side windows identified by a label or wording on the headliner or roof-pillar trim.
- A flexible headliner which opens above the side doors to allow air curtain deployment



• Crash sensors and monitoring system with a readiness indicator. See **Crash Sensors and Airbag Indicator** (page 57).

Properly restrain children 12 years old and under in the rear seats. The Safety Canopy will not interfere with children restrained using a properly installed child or booster seat because it is designed to inflate downward from the headliner above the doors along the side window opening.

## AIRBAG PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Airbags do not inflate slowly or gently, and the risk of injury from a deploying airbag is the greatest close to the trim covering the airbag module.



**WARNING:** All occupants of your vehicle, including the driver, should always properly wear their seatbelts, even when an airbag supplemental restraint system is provided. Failure to properly wear your seatbelt could seriously increase the risk of injury or death.



**WARNING:** Properly secure children 12 years old and under in a rear seating position whenever possible. If you are unable to properly secure all children in a rear seating position, properly secure the largest child on the front seat. If you must use a forward facing child restraint on the front seat, move the seat as far back as possible. Failure to follow these instructions could result in personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Do not place your arms on the airbag cover or through the steering wheel. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

# Airbags



**WARNING:** Keep the areas in front of the airbags free from obstruction. Do not affix anything to or over the airbag covers. Objects could become projectiles during airbag deployment. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** To reduce risk of injury, do not obstruct or place objects in the deployment path of the airbag.



**WARNING:** Do not place a rearward facing child restraint in front of an active airbag. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Do not attempt to service, repair, or modify the supplementary restraint system or associated components. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Several airbag system components get hot after inflation. To reduce the risk of injury, do not touch them after inflation.



**WARNING:** If a supplementary restraint system component has deployed, it will not function again. Have the system and associated components inspected as soon as possible. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

## PROPERLY ADJUSTING THE DRIVER AND FRONT PASSENGER SEATS



**WARNING:** National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) recommends a minimum distance of at least 10 in (25 cm) between an occupant's chest and the driver airbag module.

To properly position yourself away from the airbag:

- Move your seat to the rear as far as you can while still reaching the pedals comfortably.
- Recline the seat slightly one or two degrees from the upright position.

After all occupants have adjusted their seats and put on seatbelts, it is very important that they continue to sit properly. Properly seated occupants sit upright, lean against the seat backrest, and center themselves on the seat cushion, with their feet comfortably extended on the floor. Sitting improperly can increase the chance of injury in a crash event. For example, if an occupant slouches, lies down, turns sideways, sits forward, leans forward or sideways, or puts one or both feet up, the chance of injury during a crash greatly increases.

## CHILDREN AND AIRBAGS



**WARNING:** Do not place a rearward facing child restraint in front of an active airbag. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



# Airbags



Children must always be properly restrained. Accident statistics suggest that children are safer when properly restrained in the rear seating positions than in the front seating position. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of injury in a crash.

## FRONT PASSENGER SENSING SYSTEM

### WHAT IS THE FRONT PASSENGER SENSING SYSTEM

This system detects a properly seated occupant and determines if the front passenger airbag should be enabled.

### HOW DOES THE FRONT PASSENGER SENSING SYSTEM WORK

The system uses a passenger airbag status indicator which illuminates indicating that the front passenger frontal airbag is either enabled or disabled.

**Note:** *When you first switch the ignition on, the passenger airbag status indicator off and on lamps illuminate for a short period to confirm they are functional.*



The indicator lamps are on the right side of the instrument panel.

The front passenger sensing system is designed to disable the front passenger frontal airbag under these conditions:

- The front passenger seat is unoccupied.
- The system determines an infant is present in a child restraint.
- A passenger takes their weight off of the seat for a period of time.
- If there is a problem with the airbag system or the passenger sensing system.

**Note:** *Even with this technology, parents are strongly encouraged to always properly restrain children in the rear seat.*

- When the front passenger sensing system disables the front passenger frontal airbag, the passenger airbag status indicator illuminates the off lamp.
- If you have installed the child restraint, but the passenger airbag status indicator illuminates the on lamp, switch your vehicle off, remove the child restraint from your vehicle and reinstall the restraint following the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.

The front passenger sensing system works with sensors that are part of the front passenger seat and seatbelt. The sensors are designed to detect the presence of a properly seated occupant and determine if the front passenger frontal airbag should be enabled.

# Airbags

- When the front passenger sensing system enables the front passenger frontal airbag, the passenger airbag status indicator illuminates the on lamp.

If a person of adult size is sitting in the front passenger seat, but the passenger airbag status indicator off lamp is illuminated, it is possible that the person is not sitting properly in the seat. If this happens:

- Switch your vehicle off and ask the person to place the seat backrest in an upright position.
- Have the person sit upright in the seat, centered on the seat cushion, with the person's legs comfortably extended.
- Restart your vehicle and have the person remain in this position for about two minutes. This allows the system to detect that person and enable the passenger frontal airbag.
- If the indicator off lamp remains illuminated even after this, advise the person to ride in the rear seat.

After all occupants have adjusted their seats and put on seatbelts, it is very important that they continue to sit upright, leaning against the seat backrest, and centered on the seat cushion, with their feet comfortably extended on the floor.

Sitting improperly can increase the chance of injury in a crash event. For example, if an occupant slouches, lies down, turns sideways, sits forward, leans forward or sideways, or puts one or both feet up, the chance of injury during a crash greatly increases.

If you think that the state of the passenger airbag status indicator lamp is incorrect, check the following:

- Objects lodged underneath the seat.
- Objects between the seat cushion and the center console.
- Objects hanging off the seat backrest.

- Objects stowed in the seat backrest map pocket.
- Objects placed on the occupant's lap.
- Cargo interference with the seat
- Other passengers pushing or pulling on the seat.
- Rear passenger feet and knees resting or pushing on the seat.

The listed conditions could cause the weight of a properly seated occupant to be incorrectly interpreted by the front passenger sensing system. The person in the front passenger seat could appear heavier or lighter due to the conditions listed.



Make sure the front passenger sensing system is operating properly. See **Crash Sensors and Airbag Indicator** (page 57).

If the airbag readiness light is on, do the following:

- Pull your vehicle over.
- Switch your vehicle off.
- Check for any objects lodged underneath the front passenger seat or cargo interfering with the seat.
- Remove the obstruction if found.
- Restart your vehicle.
- Wait at least two minutes and verify that the airbag readiness light in the instrument cluster is no longer illuminated.
- If the airbag readiness light in the instrument cluster remains illuminated, there may be a problem due to the front passenger sensing system.

Do not attempt to repair or service the system. Take your vehicle in for service immediately.

# Airbags

If it is necessary to modify an advanced front airbag system to accommodate a person with disabilities, contact your Customer Relationship Center.

## FRONT PASSENGER SENSING SYSTEM PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Sitting improperly, out of position or with the seatback reclined too far can take weight off the seat cushion and affect the decision of the passenger sensing system, resulting in serious injury or death in the event of a crash. Always sit upright against your seat back, with your feet on the floor.



**WARNING:** Any alteration or modification to the front passenger seat may affect the performance of the front passenger sensing system. This could seriously increase the risk of injury or death.

## FRONT PASSENGER SENSING SYSTEM INDICATORS

Occupant	Passenger Airbag Status Indicator	Passenger Airbag
Empty	OFF: Illuminated	Disabled
	ON: Not Illuminated	
Child	OFF: Illuminated	Disabled
	ON: Not Illuminated	
Adult	OFF: Not Illuminated	Enabled
	ON: Illuminated	

# Airbags

## CRASH SENSORS AND AIRBAG INDICATOR



**WARNING:** Modifying or adding equipment to the front of your vehicle could affect the performance of the airbag system, increasing the risk of injury. This includes the hood, bumper system, frame, front body structure, tow hooks, hood pins, push bar and snowplows.

Your vehicle has a collection of crash and occupant sensors. These sensors provide information to the restraints control module which deploys (activates) the following:

- Seatbelt pretensioners.
- Driver airbag.
- Passenger airbag.
- Knee airbag(s).
- Seat mounted side airbags.
- Safety Canopy.

Based on the type of crash, the restraints control module deploys the appropriate safety devices.

The restraints control module also monitors the readiness of the above safety devices plus the crash and occupant sensors. The readiness of the safety system is indicated by a warning indicator light in the instrument cluster or by a backup tone if the warning light is not working. Routine maintenance of the airbag is not required.

A difficulty with the system is indicated by one or more of the following:



The readiness light will not illuminate immediately after you switch the ignition on.

- The readiness light either flashes or stays on.
- You hear a series of five beeps. The tone pattern repeats periodically until the problem, the light or both are repaired.

If any of these things happen, even intermittently, have the supplemental restraint system serviced at an authorized dealer immediately. Unless serviced, the system may not function properly in the event of a crash.

The fact that the seatbelt pretensioners or front airbags did not activate for both front seat occupants in a crash does not mean that something is wrong with the system. Rather, it means the restraints control module determined the accident conditions (crash severity, seatbelt usage) were not appropriate to activate these safety devices.

- The design of the front airbags is to activate only in frontal and near-frontal crashes (not rollovers, side impacts or rear impacts) unless the crash causes sufficient frontal deceleration.
- The design of the front seatbelt pretensioners is to activate in frontal, near-frontal and side crashes, and in rollovers. The design of the rear seatbelt pretensioners is to activate in frontal crashes and in rollovers.
- The design of the knee airbag(s) is to deploy based on crash severity and occupant conditions.

# Airbags

---

- The design of the side airbags is to inflate in certain side impact crashes or rollover events. Side airbags may activate in other types of crashes if the vehicle experiences sufficient sideways motion or deformation.
- The design of the Safety Canopy is to inflate in certain side impact crashes or rollover events. The Safety Canopy may activate in other types of crashes if the vehicle experiences sufficient sideways motion or deformation, or a certain likelihood of rollover.

## **DISPOSING OF AIRBAGS**

Contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible. Airbags must be disposed of by qualified personnel.

# 911 Assist

## WHAT IS 911 ASSIST

911 Assist is a SYNC system feature that can call for help.

For more information, visit [www.owner.ford.com](http://www.owner.ford.com).

## EMERGENCY CALL REQUIREMENTS



**WARNING:** Do not wait for 911 Assist to make an emergency call if you can do it yourself. Dial emergency services immediately to avoid delayed response time which could increase the risk of serious injury or death after a crash. If you do not hear 911 Assist within five seconds of the crash, the system or phone may be damaged or non-functional.



**WARNING:** Always place your phone in a secure location in your vehicle so it does not become a projectile or get damaged in a crash. Failure to do so may cause serious injury to someone or damage the phone which could prevent 911 Assist from working properly.



**WARNING:** Unless the 911 Assist setting is set on before a crash, the system will not dial for help which could delay response time, potentially increasing the risk of serious injury or death after a crash.

- SYNC is powered and working properly at the time of the incident and throughout feature activation and use.
- The 911 Assist feature must be set on before the incident.
- You must pair and connect a **Bluetooth®** enabled and compatible cell phone to SYNC.

- A connected **Bluetooth®** enabled phone must have the ability to make and maintain an outgoing call at the time of the incident.
- A connected **Bluetooth®** enabled phone must have adequate network coverage, battery power and signal strength.
- The vehicle must have battery power and be located in the U.S., Canada or in a territory in which 911 is the emergency number.

**Note:** *If any user sets 911 Assist to on or off, that setting applies for all paired phones. If 911 Assist is off and the phone connected to SYNC, an icon displays on the status bar.*

**Note:** *Every phone operates differently. While SYNC 911 Assist works with most cellular phones, some may have trouble using this feature.*

## EMERGENCY CALL LIMITATIONS

The SYNC 911 Assist feature only operates in the U.S., Canada or in a territory in which 911 is the emergency number. The following are limitations of this feature:

- Your cellular phone or 911 Assist hardware sustains damage in a crash.
- The vehicle's battery or the SYNC system has no power.
- The phone(s) thrown from your vehicle are the ones paired and connected to the system.

# Keys and Remote Controls

## REMOTE CONTROL LIMITATIONS



**WARNING:** Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. The term "IC:" before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Industry Canada license-exempt RSS standard(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Make sure a valid remote control is within 5 ft (1.5 m) from the front door handles and rear of vehicle.

The system may not function if:

- The remote control remains stationary for about a minute.
- The vehicle battery has no charge.
- The remote control battery has no charge.
- There is interference causing issues with the remote control frequencies.
- The remote control is too close to metal objects or electronic devices, for example keys or a cell phone.

## USING THE REMOTE CONTROL

Use your remote control to access various vehicle systems.

**Note:** *The buttons on your remote may vary depending on the vehicle region or options.*

### Unlock



Press the button to unlock all doors. See **Unlocking and Locking the Doors Using the Remote Control** (page 73).

### Lock



Press the button to lock all doors. See **Unlocking and Locking the Doors Using the Remote Control** (page 73).

### Remote Start (If Equipped)



Press the button to remote start. See **What Is Remote Start** (page 123).

### Tailgate (If Equipped)



Press the button to open the tailgate. See **Locking and Unlocking the Tailgate** (page 83).

### Panic Alarm (If Equipped)



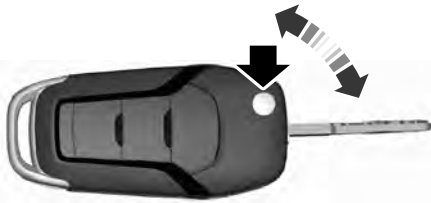
Press the button to sound the panic alarm. See **Sounding the Panic Alarm** (page 61).

## OPENING AND CLOSING THE FLIP KEY

### Opening Your Flip Key

Press the round button on the remote control to extend the flip key.

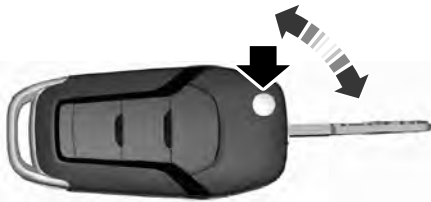
# Keys and Remote Controls



**Note:** *Inspect the key blade for debris. Periodically clean with a brush.*

## Closing Your Flip Key

Press and hold the round button on the remote control to fold the key blade when not in use.



## REMOVING THE KEY BLADE



Push the release button on your passive key and pull the key blade out.

## SOUNDING THE PANIC ALARM



Press the button to sound the panic alarm. Press the button again, or switch the ignition on to turn it off.

**Note:** *The panic alarm only operates when the ignition is off.*

## LOCATING YOUR VEHICLE



Press the lock button twice within three seconds. The turn signal lamps flash.

**Note:** *We recommend you use this method to locate your vehicle.*



# Keys and Remote Controls

## CHANGING THE REMOTE CONTROL BATTERY - VEHICLES WITHOUT: PUSH BUTTON START

**WARNING:** Keep batteries away from children to prevent ingestion. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death. If ingested, immediately seek medical attention.

**WARNING:** If the battery compartment does not securely close, stop using the remote control and replace it as soon as possible. In the meantime, keep the remote control away from children. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

### Battery Replacement Procedure

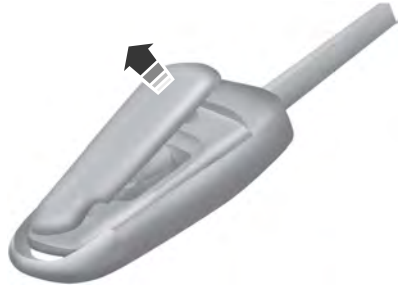
The remote control uses one coin-type 3-volt lithium battery CR2032 or equivalent.

Press the button to release the key blade before beginning the procedure.



1. Insert a screwdriver, in the position shown and gently push the clip.

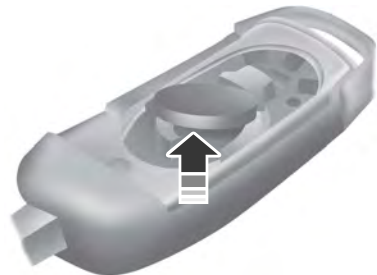
2. Press the clip down to release the battery cover.



3. Carefully remove the cover.



4. Insert a screwdriver as shown to release the battery.



# Keys and Remote Controls

**Note:** Do not touch the battery contacts or the printed circuit board with the screwdriver.

5. Remove the battery.
6. Install a new battery with the + facing up.
7. Replace the battery cover.



Dispose of old batteries in an environmentally friendly way. Seek advice from your local authority about recycling old batteries.

**Note:** Do not wipe off any grease on the battery terminals or on the back surface of the circuit board.

**Note:** Replacing the battery does not erase the programmed key from your vehicle. The remote control should operate normally.

## CHANGING THE REMOTE CONTROL BATTERY - VEHICLES WITH: PUSH BUTTON START



**WARNING:** Keep batteries away from children to prevent ingestion. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death. If ingested, immediately seek medical attention.



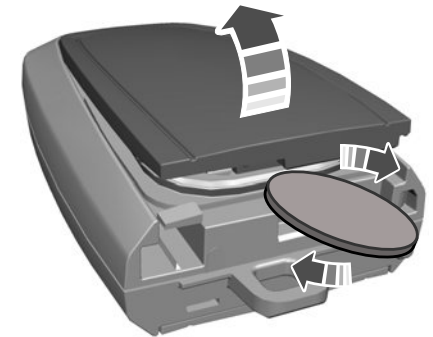
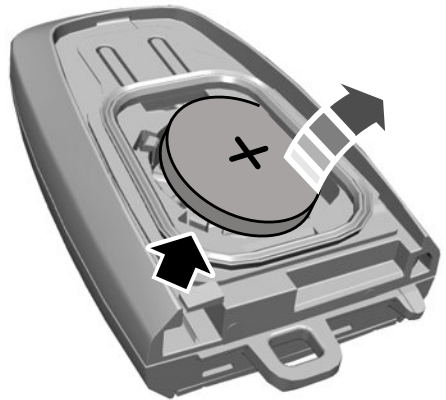
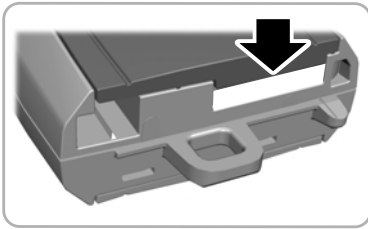
**WARNING:** If the battery compartment does not securely close, stop using the remote control and replace it as soon as possible. In the meantime, keep the remote control away from children. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

The remote control uses one coin-type 3-volt lithium battery CR2450 or equivalent.



1. Push the release button and pull the key blade out.

## Keys and Remote Controls



2. Twist a thin coin under the tab hidden behind the key blade head to remove the battery cover.

3. Insert a screwdriver, and carefully remove the battery.
4. Install a new battery with the **+** facing upward.
5. Reinstall the battery housing cover onto the transmitter and install the key blade.



Dispose of old batteries in an environmentally friendly way. Seek advice from your local authority about recycling old batteries.

**Note:** Do not wipe off any grease on the battery terminals or on the back surface of the circuit board.

**Note:** Replacing the battery does not erase the programmed key from your vehicle. The remote control should operate normally.

### REPLACING A LOST KEY OR REMOTE CONTROL

You can purchase replacement keys or remote controls from an authorized dealer. Authorized dealers can program remote controls for your vehicle.

# Keys and Remote Controls



**Note:** Your vehicle keys came with a security label that provides important key cut information. Keep the label in a safe place for future reference.

## PROGRAMMING THE REMOTE CONTROL

Contact an authorized dealer to program remote controls for your vehicle.

## KEYS AND REMOTE CONTROLS – TROUBLESHOOTING

### KEYS AND REMOTE CONTROLS – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
Key Battery Low Replace Soon	Replace remote control battery.

## WHAT IS MYKEY

MyKey allows you to program keys with restricted driving modes to promote good driving habits.

## MYKEY SETTINGS

### NON-CONFIGURABLE MYKEY SETTINGS

#### Seatbelt Reminder or Belt-Minder™

MyKey mutes the audio system until the front seat passengers buckle the front seat belts.

**Note:** *If your vehicle includes an AM/FM radio or a very basic audio system, then the radio may not mute.*

#### Satellite Radio (If Equipped)

Some Satellite radio channels have restricted access to adult radio content.

#### Early Low Fuel

The low fuel level warning lamp turns on earlier.

#### Driving and Parking Aids

You cannot configure settings for parking aids, blind spot information system, and cross traffic alert. These systems turn on when the vehicle turns on, and you cannot switch them off with a MyKey.

You cannot configure settings for pre-collision assist and lane keeping. These systems turn on when the vehicle turns on, but you can switch them off with a MyKey.

A new destination in the navigation system can only be set using voice commands when using a MyKey, and with your vehicle moving.

**Note:** *MyKey drivers may be able to switch the lane departure warning feature off, but this feature turns back on automatically with every new key cycle.*

## CONFIGURABLE MYKEY SETTINGS

You can configure the following settings after creating a MyKey. See **Creating a MyKey** (page 67).

### Speed Limit



**WARNING:** Do not set MyKey maximum speed limit to a limit that will prevent the driver from maintaining a safe speed considering posted speed limits and prevailing road conditions. The driver is always responsible to drive in accordance with local laws and prevailing conditions. Failure to do so could result in accident or injury.

You can set a speed limit for your vehicle. Warning messages appear in the information display and a tone sounds if your vehicle reaches the set speed. You cannot override the set speed when using a MyKey.

### Speed Minder

You can set a speed reminder for your vehicle. Warning messages appear in the information display and a tone sounds if your vehicle exceeds the set speed.

### Audio System Volume Limit

The audio system maximum volume reduces. A message appears in the information display if you attempt to exceed the volume limit. Automatic volume control turns off.

## Emergency Assistance

If you set emergency assistance to always on, you cannot switch it off with a MyKey.

## Do Not Disturb

If you set do not disturb to always on, you cannot switch it off with a MyKey.

**Note:** *If a phone is connected using Apple CarPlay or Android Auto while driving with a MyKey, the driver can receive phone calls and text messages even if the do not disturb restriction is on, and if the vehicle comes with satellite radio, there is no restriction on the adult content.*

## Traction and Stability Control

If you set traction control or stability control to always on, you cannot switch it off with a MyKey.

## CREATING A MYKEY - VEHICLES WITHOUT: PUSH BUTTON START

1. Switch the ignition on using an admin key.

**Note:** *You can program the restrictions to all keys but one. Any keys that you did not program are administrator keys or admin keys.*

2. Access the main menu in the information display and then scroll through the menus to change the settings of your MyKey. From the MyKey menu select the option Create MyKey. See **Instrument Cluster Display** (page 116).

3. When prompted, hold the OK button until you see a message informing you to label this key as a MyKey. The programmed restrictions apply when you switch the vehicle off, open and close the driver door and restart your vehicle with the programmed key or remote control.

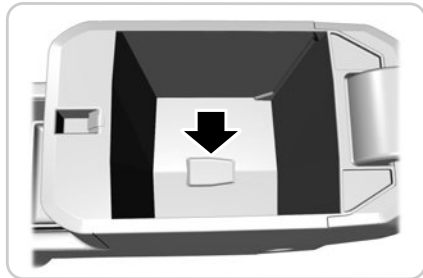
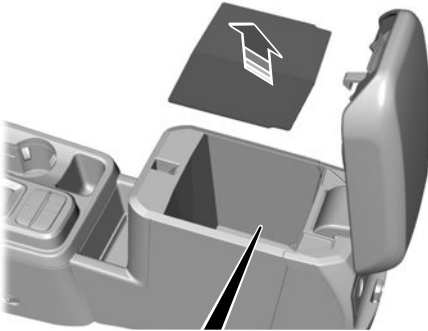
4. Switch the ignition off.

You successfully created a MyKey.

You can also program configurable settings for the keys.

**Note:** *We recommend that you label this key.*

## CREATING A MYKEY - VEHICLES WITH: PUSH BUTTON START



1. Place the remote control in the backup slot.

**Note:** You can program the restrictions to all keys but one. Any keys that you did not program are administrator keys or admin keys.

2. Switch the ignition on.
3. Access the main menu in the information display and then scroll through the menus to change the settings of your MyKey. From the MyKey menu select the option Create MyKey. See **Instrument Cluster Display** (page 116).

4. When prompted, hold the OK button until you see a message informing you to label this key as a MyKey. The programmed restrictions apply when you switch the vehicle off, open and close the driver door and restart your vehicle with the programmed key or remote control.
5. Switch the ignition off.

You successfully created a MyKey.

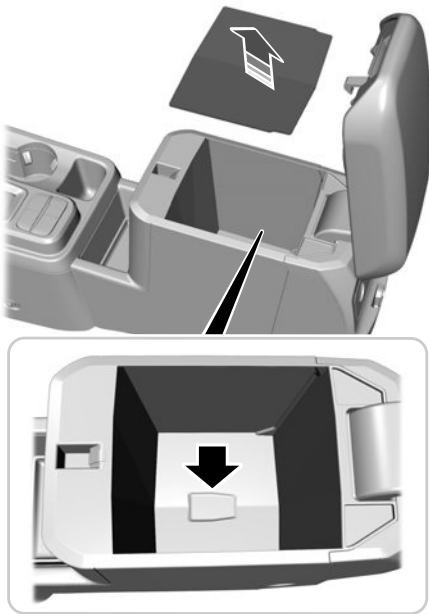
You can also program configurable settings for the keys.

**Note:** We recommend that you label this key.

## PROGRAMMING A MYKEY

You can program the restrictions to all keys but one. Any keys that you did not program are administrator keys or admin keys.

**Note:** You can use admin keys to Create a MyKey, Program MyKey settings and Clear all MyKey restrictions.



1. Insert the key you want to program into the ignition. If your vehicle has a push-button start, place the remote control in the backup slot.
2. Switch the ignition on.
3. Access the main menu in the information display and then scroll through the menus to change the settings of your MyKey. From the MyKey menu select the option Create MyKey. See **Instrument Cluster Display** (page 116).
4. When prompted, hold the OK button until you see a message informing you to label this key as a MyKey. The programmed restrictions apply when you switch the vehicle off, open and close the driver door and restart your vehicle with the programmed key or remote control.

5. Switch the ignition off.

You successfully created a MyKey. Make sure you label it so you can distinguish it from the admin keys.

You can also program configurable settings for the keys.

## CLEARING ALL MYKEYS

When you clear your MyKeys, you remove all restrictions and return all MyKeys to their original admin key status at once. To clear all MyKeys of all MyKey settings, use the information display.

1. Switch the ignition on using an admin key.
2. Access the main menu in the information display and then scroll through the menus to begin clearing your MyKey programming. See **Instrument Cluster Display** (page 116).
3. Follow the instructions in the display.
4. A confirmation message appears in the display after you finish clearing your MyKeys.

**Note:** When you clear your MyKeys, you remove all restrictions and return all MyKeys to their original admin key status. You cannot remove the MyKey restrictions individually.

## CHECKING MYKEY SYSTEM STATUS

You can find information about your programmed MyKeys by using the information display. See **Instrument Cluster Display** (page 116).



## MyKey Distance

Tracks the distance when drivers use a MyKey. The only way to delete the accumulated distance is by using an admin key to clear all MyKeys. If the distance does not accumulate as expected, then the intended user is not using the MyKey, or an admin key user recently cleared and then recreated a MyKey.

## Number of MyKeys

Indicates the number of MyKeys programmed to your vehicle. Use this feature to detect how many MyKeys you have for your vehicle and determine when all MyKeys have been deleted.

## Number of Admin Keys

Indicates how many admin keys are programmed to your vehicle. Use this feature to determine how many admin keys you have for your vehicle, and detect if an additional MyKey has been programmed.

## USING MYKEY WITH REMOTE START SYSTEMS

MyKey is not compatible with unapproved, aftermarket remote start systems. If you choose to install a remote start system, see an authorized dealer for an approved remote start system.

## MYKEY – TROUBLESHOOTING

### MYKEY – INFORMATION MESSAGES - VEHICLES WITHOUT: PUSH BUTTON START

Message	Description
Key is Already a MyKey	Displays when trying to create a MyKey with a key already designated as a MyKey.
This Key restricted at Next Key Cycle. Label Key as MyKey	Displays to confirm that the key is restricted after you switch the ignition off.

## MYKEY – INFORMATION MESSAGES - VEHICLES WITH: PUSH BUTTON START

Message	Description
Place Key in Backup Location	Displays when trying to create a MyKey and the admin key is not placed in the backup position. See <b>Creating a MyKey</b> (page 68).
Key is Already a MyKey	Displays when trying to create a MyKey with a key already designated as a MyKey.
This Key restricted at Next Key Cycle. Label Key as MyKey	Displays to confirm that the key is restricted after you switch the ignition off.

## **MYKEY – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS - VEHICLES WITHOUT: PUSH BUTTON START**

### **What is an admin key?**

An admin key is a key that you have not created as a MyKey. See **Creating a MyKey** (page 67).

### **Why am I not able to create a MyKey?**

The key used to switch the ignition on is not an admin key. The key used to switch the ignition on is the only admin key. There has to be at least one admin key.

### **Why am I not able to program a MyKey?**

The key used to switch the ignition on is not an admin key. You have not created any MyKeys. See **Creating a MyKey** (page 67).

### **Why am I not able to clear the MyKeys?**

The key used to switch the ignition on is not an admin key. You have not created any MyKeys. See **Creating a MyKey** (page 67).

### **Why is the MyKey distance not accumulating?**

The key used to start the engine is an admin key. You have not created any MyKeys. See **Creating a MyKey** (page 67). You have cleared the MyKeys. See **Clearing All MyKeys** (page 69).

## **MYKEY – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS - VEHICLES WITH: PUSH BUTTON START**

### **What is an admin key?**

An admin key is a key that you have not created as a MyKey. See **Creating a MyKey** (page 68).

### **Why am I not able to create a MyKey?**

You have not placed the admin key in the backup position. See **Creating a MyKey** (page 68). The key used to switch the ignition on is not an admin key. The key used to switch the ignition on is the only admin key. There has to be at least one admin key. You did not switch the ignition off after creating the last MyKey.

### **Why am I not able to program a MyKey?**

The admin key is not inside your vehicle. The key used to switch the ignition on is not an admin key. You have not created any MyKeys. See **Creating a MyKey** (page 68).

### **Why am I not able to clear the MyKeys?**

The admin key is not inside your vehicle. The key used to switch the ignition on is not an admin key. You have not created any MyKeys. See **Creating a MyKey** (page 68).

### **Why is the MyKey distance not accumulating?**

The key used to start the engine is an admin key. An admin key and a MyKey are inside your vehicle. You have not created any MyKeys. See **Creating a MyKey** (page 68). You have cleared the MyKeys. See **Clearing All MyKeys** (page 69).

### **Why am I not able to start the engine with a MyKey?**

An admin key and a MyKey are inside your vehicle. The system recognizes only the admin key when both are present.

# Doors and Locks

## OPERATING THE DOORS FROM OUTSIDE YOUR VEHICLE

### UNLOCKING AND LOCKING THE DOORS USING THE REMOTE CONTROL

You can only use the remote control when your vehicle is stationary.

#### Unlocking the Doors



Press the button to unlock all doors.

#### Locking the Doors

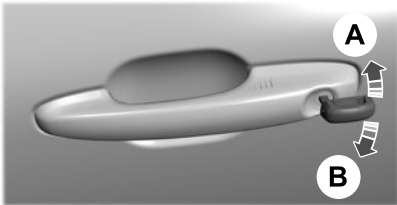


Press the button to lock all doors. One short flash of the turn signal lamps confirms that your vehicle has locked.

**Note:** For more information on operating the doors from outside your vehicle See *Keyless Entry* (page 77).

### UNLOCKING AND LOCKING THE DOORS USING THE KEY BLADE

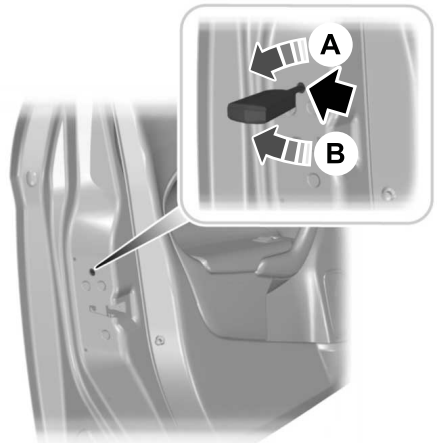
If there is a power door lock fault, you can use the key blade to lock and unlock the driver door.



- A Lock.
- B Unlock.

### INDIVIDUALLY UNLOCKING AND LOCKING THE DOORS USING THE KEY BLADE

If there is a power door lock fault you can use the key blade to lock and unlock the doors.



- A Lock.
- B Unlock.

## OPERATING THE DOORS FROM INSIDE YOUR VEHICLE

### UNLOCKING AND LOCKING THE DOORS USING THE CENTRAL LOCKING

The power door lock control is on the driver door.



Press the button to unlock all doors.

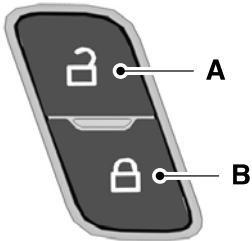
# Doors and Locks



Press the button to lock all doors.

## INDIVIDUALLY UNLOCKING AND LOCKING THE DOORS USING THE LOCKING BUTTON

The power door lock control is on the driver and front passenger door panels.



- A Unlock.
- B Lock.

## OPENING THE DOORS FROM INSIDE YOUR VEHICLE

Pull the interior door handle twice to unlock and open a rear door. The first pull unlocks the door and the second pull opens the door.

## AUTOUNLOCK

### WHAT IS AUTOUNLOCK

Autounlock is an unlocking feature that unlocks the vehicle doors when your vehicle comes to a stop.

## AUTOUNLOCK REQUIREMENTS

Autounlock unlocks all the doors when all of the following occur:

- The ignition is on, all the doors are closed and your vehicle is moving at a speed greater than 12 mph (20 km/h).
- Your vehicle comes to a stop.
- You open the driver door within 10 minutes of switching the ignition off or to the accessory position.

## SWITCHING AUTOUNLOCK ON AND OFF

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select **Settings**.
2. Select **Vehicle Settings**.
3. Switch **Autounlock** on or off.

## AUTOLOCK

### WHAT IS AUTOLOCK

Autolock is a locking feature that locks your vehicle doors when you start driving.

## AUTOLOCK REQUIREMENTS

Autolock locks all the doors when all of the following occur:

- All doors are closed.
- The ignition is on.
- Your vehicle reaches a speed greater than 12 mph (20 km/h).

## MISLOCK

### WHAT IS MISLOCK

Mislock is a locking feature that warns you if your vehicle has not locked.

# Doors and Locks

## MISLOCK LIMITATIONS

When you press the lock button once, the direction indicators do not flash if:

- Any door or the liftgate is open.
- The hood is open.

When you press the lock button twice within three seconds, the horn sounds if:

- Any door or the liftgate is open.
- The hood is open.

If you switch mislock off, the horn does not sound if you press the lock button on the remote control when a door is open.

## SWITCHING MISLOCK ON AND OFF

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select **Settings**.
2. Select **Vehicle Settings**.

3. Switch **Mislock Chirp** on or off.

## DOORS AND LOCKS AUDIBLE WARNINGS

### Door Ajar Audible Warning

Sounds when a door is not fully closed and your vehicle is moving.

## DOORS AND LOCKS – TROUBLESHOOTING

### DOORS AND LOCKS – WARNING LAMPS

#### Door Ajar Warning Lamp



It illuminates when you switch the ignition on and remains on if any door or the hood is open.

## DOORS AND LOCKS – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
Driver Door Ajar	Displays if a door is open. Fully close the door.
Passenger Door Ajar	
Rear Left Door Ajar	
Rear Right Door Ajar	

# Doors and Locks

---

## **DOORS AND LOCKS – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS**

### **Can accessories such as steps or handles be used with the latch assembly?**

Do not use the door latch assembly to attach any accessory, such as handles or steps, as this can cause damage to your vehicle.

# Keyless Entry (If Equipped)

## KEYLESS ENTRY LIMITATIONS

Make sure your remote control is within 3 ft (1 m) from the front door handles and the tailgate.

The system could not function if:

- The remote control remains stationary for about a minute.
- The vehicle battery has no charge.
- The remote control battery has no charge.
- There is interference causing issues with the remote control frequencies.
- The remote control is too close to metal objects or electronic devices, for example keys or a cell phone.

## KEYLESS ENTRY SETTINGS

### Switching Keyless Entry On and Off

1. Switch the ignition on using an original key that has not been created as a MyKey.
2. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select **Settings**.
3. Select **Vehicle Settings**.
4. Select **Locks**.

### Reprogramming the Unlocking Function

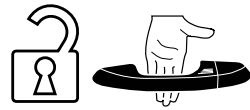
You can enable two-stage unlocking function allowing you to unlock only the driver door when you touch the unlock sensor.

Press and hold both the lock and unlock buttons on the remote control for four seconds to disable or enable two-stage unlocking.

If you program the unlocking function so that only the driver door unlocks, you can unlock all of the other doors from inside your vehicle using the power door lock control. You can unlock individual doors by pulling the interior door handles on those doors.

## USING KEYLESS ENTRY

### Unlocking the Doors



With your passive key within 3 ft (1 m) of your vehicle, touch the unlock sensor on the back of the door handle for a brief period and then pull on the door handle to unlock, being careful not to touch the lock sensor at the same time or pull on the door handle too quickly. The intelligent access system requires a brief delay to authenticate your intelligent access key.

### Locking the Doors



With your passive key within 3 ft (1 m) of your vehicle, touch the outer door handle lock sensor for approximately one second to lock, being careful not to touch the unlock sensor on the back of the door handle at the same time. After locking, you can immediately pull on the door handle to confirm locking occurred without inadvertently unlocking.



# Keyless Entry (If Equipped)

---

## **KEYLESS ENTRY – TROUBLESHOOTING**

### **KEYLESS ENTRY – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS**

#### **Why does the passive key not work?**

The system deactivates passive keys left inside your vehicle when you lock it. You cannot switch the ignition on using a deactivated passive key. Press the unlock button on the remote control to reactivate a passive key.

# Keyless Entry Keypad (If Equipped)

## WHAT IS THE KEYLESS ENTRY KEYPAD

The keyless entry keypad allows you to lock and unlock your vehicle using the keypad on the window trim.

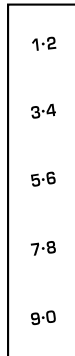
## KEYLESS ENTRY KEYPAD LIMITATIONS

The system may not function if:

- The vehicle battery has no charge.

## LOCATING THE KEYLESS ENTRY KEYPAD

The keypad is near the driver window and illuminates when you touch it.



## KEYLESS ENTRY KEYPAD MASTER ACCESS CODE

### What Is the Master Access Code

The master access code is a factory-set five-digit entry code. You can operate the keypad with the master access code at any time. The master access code is on the owner's wallet card in the glove box and is available from an authorized dealer.

## KEYLESS ENTRY KEYPAD PERSONAL ACCESS CODES

### Programming a Personal Entry Code

1. Enter the five-digit master code.
2. Press **1-2** on the keypad within five seconds.
3. Enter your personal five-digit code. You must do this within five seconds of completing Step 2.
4. Press **1-2** on the keypad to save personal code 1.

The doors lock then unlock to confirm that programming was successful.

To program additional personal entry codes, repeat Steps 1 through 3, then for Step 4:

- Press **3-4** to save personal code 2.
- Press **5-6** to save personal code 3.
- Press **7-8** to save personal code 4.
- Press **9-0** to save personal code 5.

If your vehicle comes with SYNC, you can also program the system with a personal entry code.

# Keyless Entry Keypad (If Equipped)

## Hints:

- Do not set a code that uses five of the same number.
- Do not use five numbers in sequential order.
- The five-digit master code works even if you have set your own personal code.

## Erasing a Personal Code

1. Enter the five-digit master code.
2. Press and release **1-2** on the keypad within five seconds.
3. Press and hold **1-2** for two seconds. You must do this within five seconds of completing Step 2.

All personal codes erase and only the five-digit master code works.

## Anti-Scan Feature

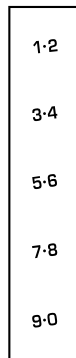
The keypad goes into an anti-scan mode if you enter the wrong code seven times. This mode turns off the keypad for one minute and the keypad lamp flashes.

The anti-scan feature turns off after:

- One minute of keypad inactivity.
- You press the unlock button on the remote control.
- You switch the ignition on.
- You unlock your vehicle using keyless entry.

## USING THE KEYLESS ENTRY KEYPAD

### Unlocking the Doors



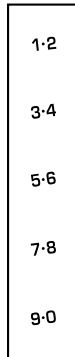
Enter the factory-set five-digit code or your personal code. You must press each number within five seconds of each other.

- Press 3-4 within five seconds to unlock all doors.

# Keyless Entry Keypad (If Equipped)

---

## Locking the Doors



Press and hold **7-8** and **9-0** at the same time with the driver door closed.

**Note:** *You do not need to enter the code first.*

## KEYLESS ENTRY KEYPAD – TROUBLESHOOTING

### KEYLESS ENTRY KEYPAD – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

#### **Why does the keypad not accept the access code?**

If you enter the access code too fast on the keypad, the unlock function may not work. Slowly re-enter the access code.

#### **Why does the keypad not function?**

The keypad goes into an anti-scan mode if you enter a wrong code seven times. The anti-scan mode disables the keypad for one minute and the red light flashes.

# Tailgate

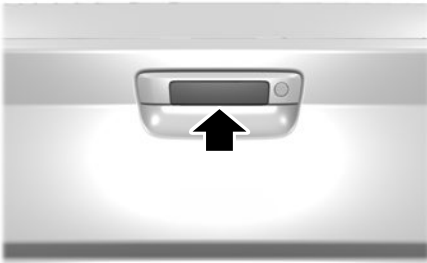
## TAILGATE PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** It is extremely dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a crash, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed. Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle that is not equipped with seats and seatbelts. Make sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and properly using a seatbelt. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

## OPENING THE TAILGATE

### OPENING THE TAILGATE FROM OUTSIDE YOUR VEHICLE



Pull up on the handle to release the tailgate.

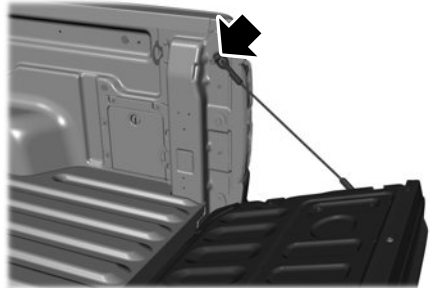
**Note:** You may need to unlock the tailgate first.

### OPENING THE TAILGATE TO THE MIDDLE POSITION

1. Open the tailgate.
2. Lower the tailgate.



3. Raise the tailgate slightly to allow slack in the tailgate cables and unlatch them.



4. Move the tailgate cables and secure them to the tailgate strikers.

**Note:** Attach both cables when using the tailgate in the middle position.

**Note:** Attach the safety bracket when using the tailgate in the middle position.

When hauling cargo using the tailgate middle position, make sure the load is evenly distributed and supported using the support locations in the pickup bed. See **Locating the Pickup Bed Slots** (page 260).

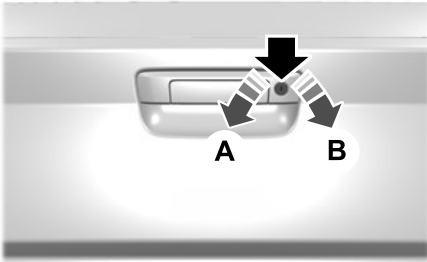
**Note:** Secure all cargo.

**Note:** The maximum load capacity for the middle position is 500 lb (226 kg).

# Tailgate

## LOCKING AND UNLOCKING THE TAILGATE

### Manual



- A Lock.
- B Unlock.

1. Insert the ignition key into the tailgate lock.
2. Turn it to the left to lock the tailgate.
3. Turn it to the right to unlock the tailgate.

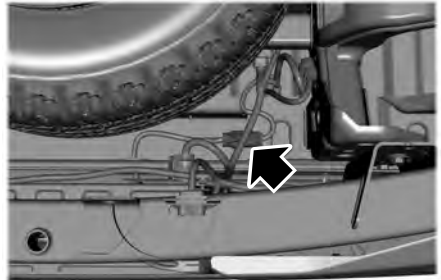
### Power

You can lock and unlock the tailgate with the remote control or power door unlock control.

## REMOVING AND INSTALLING THE TAILGATE



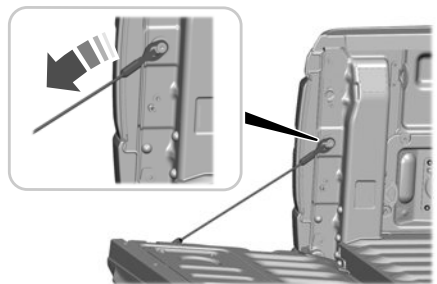
**WARNING:** Always properly secure cargo to prevent shifting cargo or cargo falling from the vehicle. Failure to do so could result in compromised vehicle stability and serious personal injury to vehicle occupants or others.



1. Unlatch the tailgate.
2. Disconnect the power door locks in-line connector. It is under the pickup box on the right-hand side of the vehicle near the spare tire.
3. Install a protective cap on the in-line connector portion that remains under the pickup box.

**Note:** A protective cap should be in the glove compartment.

4. Partially lower the tailgate. Carefully feed the tailgate harness up through the gap between the pickup box and the bumper and place it out of the way under the pickup box.
5. Lower the tailgate.

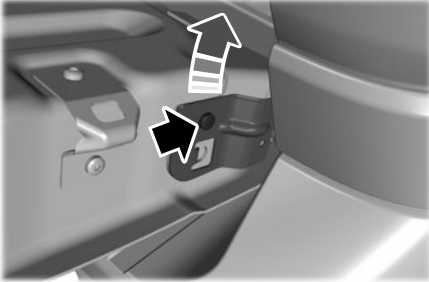


# Tailgate

---

6. Use the pull tabs to unlock the clip on each connector, move the clip past the head of the support screw and disconnect the cable.
7. Disconnect the other cable.

**Note:** *To avoid damaging the tailgate, you may need assistance when removing. The tailgate weighs approximately 55 lb (25 kg).*



8. Remove the screw and safety bracket.
9. Lift the tailgate to 45 degrees from the horizontal position.
10. Lift the right-hand side off its hinge.
11. Lift the tailgate to 80 degrees from the horizontal position.
12. Remove the tailgate from the left-hand side hinge by sliding it to the right.
13. Install the tailgate in reverse order.

# Security

---

## PASSIVE ANTI-THEFT SYSTEM

### WHAT IS THE PASSIVE ANTI-THEFT SYSTEM

The passive anti-theft system prevents someone from starting the vehicle with an incorrectly coded key.

**Note:** Do not leave a duplicate coded key in your vehicle. Always take the keys and lock all the doors when leaving your vehicle.

### HOW DOES THE PASSIVE ANTI-THEFT SYSTEM WORK

The passive anti-theft system arms when you switch the ignition off.

It disarms when the ignition is switched on with a correctly coded key.

**Note:** The system is not compatible with non-Ford aftermarket remote start systems.

**Note:** Do not leave a duplicate coded key in your vehicle. Always take the keys and lock all doors when leaving your vehicle.

## ANTI-THEFT ALARM SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)

### WHAT IS THE ANTI-THEFT ALARM SYSTEM

The Anti-Theft Alarm System warns you of an unauthorized entry to your vehicle.

## HOW DOES THE ANTI-THEFT ALARM SYSTEM WORK

When armed, the anti-theft alarm is triggered in any of the following ways:

- If someone opens a door, the liftgate or the hood without a correctly coded key or remote control.
- If you turn the power on without a correctly coded key.
- If the interior sensors detect movement inside your vehicle.
- If the inclination sensors detect an attempt to raise your vehicle.
- If someone disconnects the vehicle battery or the battery backup alarm.

If the anti-theft alarm is triggered, the alarm horn sounds for 30 seconds and the direction indicators flash for 5 minutes.

Any further attempts to carry out one of the above sounds the alarm again.

## WHAT IS THE PERIMETER ALARM

The perimeter alarm is designed to detect unauthorized access to your vehicle.

## WHAT ARE THE INTERIOR SENSORS

The interior sensors are designed to detect any movement inside your vehicle.

The interior sensors are in the overhead console.

**Note:** Do not cover the interior sensors.

## WHAT ARE THE INCLINATION SENSORS

The inclination sensor is designed to detect an attempt to raise your vehicle, for example to remove a wheel or to tow it away.



# Security

---

## WHAT IS THE BATTERY BACKUP ALARM

The battery backup alarm is an additional alarm system that has its own battery and horn. It is designed to detect if the vehicle battery or the battery backup alarm is disconnected.

## ARMING THE ANTI-THEFT ALARM SYSTEM

The alarm is ready to arm when your vehicle is switched off.

Lock your vehicle with your remote control to arm the alarm.

## DISARMING THE ANTI-THEFT ALARM SYSTEM

Disarm the alarm by performing any of the following actions:

- Unlock the doors or luggage compartment with the remote control.
- Switch your vehicle on or start your vehicle.

## ANTI-THEFT ALARM SYSTEM SETTINGS

### WHAT ARE THE ALARM SECURITY LEVELS

You can select two levels of alarm security, all sensors and perimeter sensing.

#### All Sensors

All sensors is the standard setting.

In all sensors, all equipped sensors are on when you arm the alarm.

**Note:** Do not arm the alarm with all sensors if passengers, animals or other moving objects are inside your vehicle.

### Perimeter Sensing

In perimeter sensing, the interior sensors are off when you arm the alarm.

All the other equipped sensors activate when you arm the alarm in this mode.

## SETTING THE ALARM SECURITY LEVEL

To select a different security level, use the instrument cluster display:

1. Select **Settings**.
2. Select **Vehicle**.
3. Select **Alarm**.
4. Select a setting.

## WHAT IS ASK ON EXIT

You can choose which level of security you require after you switch the ignition off.

**Note:** If you do not choose a setting, the system defaults to all sensors.

## SWITCHING ASK ON EXIT ON AND OFF

To switch the system on or off, use the instrument cluster display:

1. Select **Settings**.
2. Select **Vehicle**.
3. Select **Alarm**.
4. Switch **Ask on exit** on or off.

# Security

---

## SECURITY – TROUBLESHOOTING

### SECURITY – INFORMATION MESSAGES

<b>Message</b>	<b>Action</b>
No Key Detected	The system has not detected a correctly coded key.
Starting System Fault	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Vehicle Alarm To Stop Alarm, Start Vehicle.	Displays when the alarm has been triggered due to unauthorized entry.
Alarm Announcement	

# Security

---

## **SECURITY – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS**

### **What should I do if there is any potential alarm problem with my vehicle?**

Take all remote controls to an authorized dealer if there is any potential alarm problem with your vehicle.

### **What should I do if the vehicle is unable to start with a correctly coded key?**

Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

# Steering Wheel

## ADJUSTING THE STEERING WHEEL



**WARNING:** Do not adjust the steering wheel when your vehicle is moving.

**Note:** Make sure that you are sitting in the correct position. See **Sitting in the Correct Position** (page 135).



1. Unlock the steering column.
2. Adjust the steering wheel to the desired position.



3. Lock the steering column.

## HORN



Press on the center of the steering wheel near the horn icon to activate the horn.

## SWITCHING THE HEATED STEERING WHEEL ON AND OFF

(IF EQUIPPED)



To activate the heated steering wheel, press the button on the climate control unit. An indicator on the button illuminates when the heated steering wheel is on.

**Note:** The engine must be running to use this feature.

**Note:** A sensor regulates the temperature of the steering wheel.

**Note:** The heated steering wheel may remain on after remote starting your vehicle, depending on the remote start settings. It may also turn on when you start your vehicle if it was on the last time the engine was switched off.

# Wipers and Washers

## WIPERS

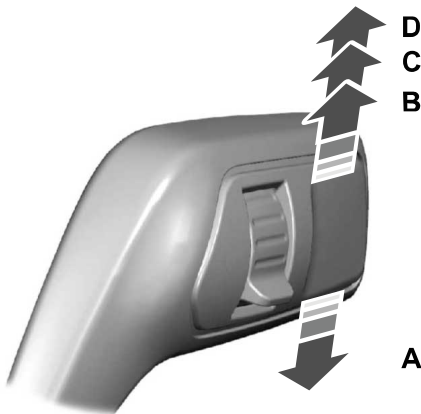
### WIPER PRECAUTIONS

Do not operate the wipers on a dry windshield. This could scratch the glass or damage the wiper blades. Use the windshield washers before wiping a dry windshield.

Fully defrost the windshield before you switch the windshield wipers on.

Switch the windshield wipers off before entering a car wash.

### SWITCHING WINDSHIELD WIPERS ON AND OFF



- A Single wipe.
- B Intermittent wipe.
- C Normal wipe.
- D High-speed wipe.



Push the lever up or down to operate the windshield wipers.

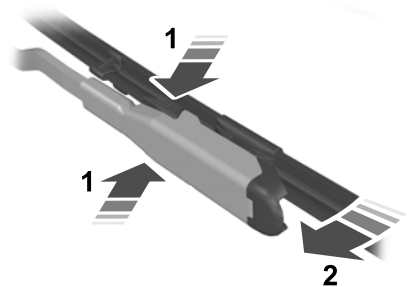
### CHECKING THE WIPER BLADES



Run the tip of your fingers over the edge of the blade to check for roughness.

### REPLACING THE FRONT WIPER BLADES

Make sure your vehicle is off before beginning this procedure.



1. Lift the wiper arm and then press the wiper blade locking buttons together.

**Note:** Do not hold the wiper blade to lift the wiper arm.

**Note:** Make sure that the wiper arm does not spring back against the glass when the wiper blade is not attached.

2. Slightly rotate the wiper blade.
3. Remove the wiper blade.

# Wipers and Washers

- To install, reverse the removal procedure.

**Note:** Make sure that the wiper blade locks into place.

## WASHERS

### WASHER PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** If you operate your vehicle in temperatures below 41°F (5°C), use washer fluid with antifreeze protection. Failure to use washer fluid with antifreeze protection in cold weather could result in impaired windshield vision and increase the risk of injury or accident.

Do not operate the washers when the washer reservoir is empty. This could cause the washer pump to overheat.

Keep the outside of the windshield clean. The rain sensor is very sensitive and the wipers may operate if dirt, mist or insects hit the windshield.

## USING THE WINDSHIELD WASHER



Pull the lever toward you to operate the windshield washer.

**Note:** A *courtesy wipe* occurs a short time after the wipers stop to clear any remaining washer fluid when switched on. See **Switching the Courtesy Wipe On and Off** (page 91).

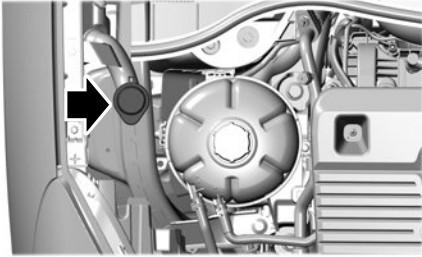
## SWITCHING THE COURTESY WIPE ON AND OFF

- Using the instrument cluster controls on the steering wheel, select **Settings**.
- Select **Vehicle**.
- Select **Wipers**.
- Switch **Courtesy Wipe** on or off.

# Wipers and Washers

---

## ADDING WASHER FLUID



## WASHER FLUID SPECIFICATION

See **Washer Fluid Specification** (page 366).

## WIPERS AND WASHERS – TROUBLESHOOTING

### WIPERS AND WASHERS – WARNING LAMPS



Illuminates when the windshield washer fluid is low.

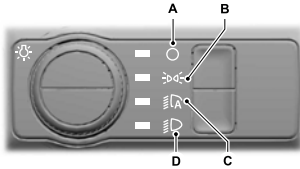
### WIPERS AND WASHERS – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

#### **Why are there streaks and smears on the windshield?**

The wiper blades could be dirty, worn or damaged. Check the wiper blades. See **Checking the Wiper Blades** (page 90). If the wiper blades are dirty, clean them with washer fluid or water applied with a soft sponge or cloth. If the wiper blades are worn or damaged, install new ones. See **Replacing the Front Wiper Blades** (page 90).

# Exterior Lighting

## EXTERIOR LIGHTING CONTROL



- A Lamps off.
- B Parking lamps on.
- C Autolamps on.
- D Headlamps on.

Rotate the control to make a selection.

**Note:** The lighting control defaults to autolamps every time you switch your vehicle on.

## HEADLAMPS

### USING THE HIGH BEAM HEADLAMPS



Push the lever away from you to switch the high beams on.

Push the lever forward again or pull the lever toward you to switch the high beams off.

Slightly pull the lever toward you and release it to flash the headlamps.

### SWITCHING HEADLAMP EXIT DELAY ON AND OFF

To switch headlamp exit delay on, pull the turn signal lever toward you after switching your vehicle off.

To switch headlamp exit delay off, pull the turn signal lever toward you again or switch your vehicle on.

**Note:** The headlamps turn off after three minutes with any door open or 30 seconds after the last door closes.

## HEADLAMP INDICATORS

### Lamps On



Illuminates when you switch the low beam headlamps or the parking lamps on.

### Headlamp High Beam



Illuminates when you switch the high beam headlamps on.



# Exterior Lighting

## HEADLAMPS – TROUBLESHOOTING

### HEADLAMPS – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

#### Why is there condensation in the headlamps?

Headlamps have vents to accommodate normal changes in air pressure. Condensation can be a natural by-product of this design. When moist air enters the lamp assembly through the vents, there is a possibility that condensation can occur when the temperature is cold. When normal condensation occurs, a fine mist can form on the interior of the lens. The fine mist eventually clears and exits through the vents during normal operation.

#### How much condensation is acceptable?

The presence of a fine mist, for example no streaks, drip marks or large droplets. A fine mist covers less than 50% of the lens.

#### How long may it take for the acceptable condensation to be cleared?

Clearing time may take as long as 48 hours under dry weather conditions.

#### How much condensation is unacceptable?

A water puddle inside the lamp. Streaks, drip marks or large droplets present on the interior of the lens.

#### What should I do if unacceptable condensation is present?

Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

#### Why do my headlamps turn off when I have them switched on when I switch my vehicle off?

The battery saver turns the headlamps off after a short period of time after you switch your vehicle off.

## AUTOLAMPS

### WHAT ARE AUTOLAMPS



**WARNING:** The system does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. You may need to override the system if it does not turn the headlamps on in low visibility conditions, for example daytime fog.

Autolamps turn the headlamps on in low light situations or when the windshield wipers operate.

### AUTOLAMP SETTINGS

1. Using the instrument cluster controls on the steering wheel, select **Settings**.
2. Select **Vehicle**.
3. Select **Lighting**.
4. Select **Autolamp Delay**.
5. Select a setting and press the **OK** button.

# Exterior Lighting

## EXTERIOR LAMPS

### SWITCHING THE TURN SIGNAL LAMPS ON AND OFF



Push the lever up or down to switch the turn signal lamps on.

Set the lever to the middle position to switch the turn signal lamps off.

**Note:** Tap the lever up or down to make the turn signal lamps flash three times.

### SWITCHING THE DAYTIME RUNNING LAMPS ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITH: DAYTIME RUNNING LAMPS (DRL)



**WARNING:** The daytime running lamps system does not activate the rear lamps and may not provide adequate lighting during low visibility driving conditions. Make sure you switch the headlamps on, as appropriate, during all low visibility conditions. Failure to do so may result in a crash.

Daytime running lamps are always on unless you switch on the headlamps or your vehicle is in park (P).

### SWITCHING THE DAYTIME RUNNING LAMPS ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITH: CONFIGURABLE DAYTIME RUNNING LAMPS



**WARNING:** The daytime running lamps system does not activate the rear lamps and may not provide adequate lighting during low visibility driving conditions. Make sure you switch the headlamps on, as appropriate, during all low visibility conditions. Failure to do so may result in a crash.

1. Using the instrument cluster controls on the steering wheel, select **Settings**.
2. Select **Vehicle**.
3. Select **Lighting**.
4. Switch **Daytime Running Lights** on or off.

The daytime running lamps turn on when all of the following occur:

- You switch the system on.
- You switch your vehicle on.
- The transmission is not in park (P) for vehicles with automatic transmissions or you release the parking brake for vehicles with manual transmissions.
- The lighting control is in the autolamps position.
- The headlamps are off.

**Note:** Other lighting control positions do not turn on the daytime running lamps.

## EXTERIOR LAMP INDICATORS

### Turn Signal Lamp



It flashes when you switch the turn signal lamps on.

**Note:** An increase in the rate of flashing warns of a failed turn signal lamp.

# Exterior Lighting

## EXTERIOR LAMP AUDIBLE WARNING

### Exterior Lamps On

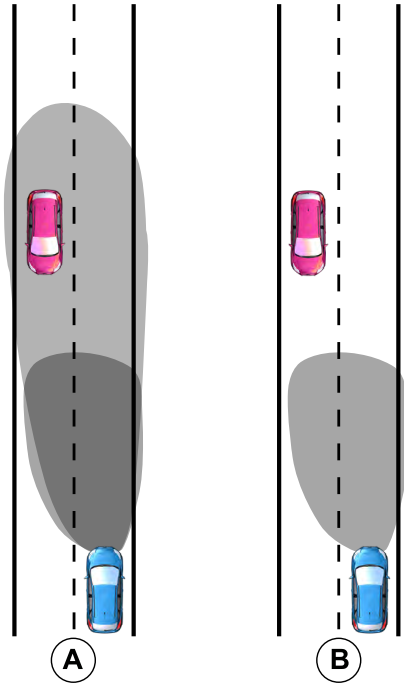
Sounds when you open the driver door and the exterior lamps are on.

## AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL

### HOW DOES AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL WORK

Automatic high beam control turns the high beams on if it is dark enough and no other traffic is present. If it detects an approaching vehicle's headlamps or tail lamps, or street lighting ahead, the system turns the high beams off.

A camera sensor, centrally mounted behind the windshield of your vehicle, continuously monitors conditions to turn the high beams on and off.



- A Without automatic high beam control.
- B With automatic high beam control.

## AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** The system does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. You may need to override the system if it does not turn the high beams on or off.

# Exterior Lighting



**WARNING:** Do not use the system in poor visibility, for example fog, heavy rain, spray or snow.



**WARNING:** You may need to override the system when approaching other road users.



**WARNING:** You may need to override the system during inclement weather.

## AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL REQUIREMENTS

The system turns the high beams on if all of the following occur:

- You switch the system on.
- You set the lighting control to the autolamps position.
- The ambient light level is low enough that you require high beams.
- There is no traffic in front of your vehicle.
- The vehicle speed is greater than approximately 32 mph (52 km/h).

## AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL LIMITATIONS

The system turns the high beams off if any of the following occur:

- You switch the system off.
- You set the lighting control to any position except autolamps.
- The ambient light level is high enough that you do not require high beams.
- The system detects an approaching vehicle's headlamps or rear lamps.
- The system detects severe rain, snow or fog.

- The system detects street lighting.
- The camera has reduced visibility.
- The vehicle speed falls below approximately 27 mph (44 km/h).

## SWITCHING AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL ON AND OFF

1. Using the instrument cluster controls on the steering wheel, select **Settings**.
2. Select **Vehicle**.
3. Select **Lighting**.
4. Switch **Auto High Beam** on or off.

## AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL INDICATORS



Illuminates to confirm when the system is ready to assist.

## OVERRIDING AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL



Push the lever away from you to switch the high beams on.

Push the lever away from you again to switch the high beams off.

Push the lever away from you for a third time to switch automatic high beam control back on.

# Exterior Lighting

---

## **AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL – TROUBLESHOOTING**

### **AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL – INFORMATION MESSAGES**

<b>Message</b>	<b>Description</b>
Front Camera Low Visibility Clean Screen	The camera has reduced visibility. Clean the windshield. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Front Camera Temporarily Not Available	The camera has malfunctioned. Wait a short period of time for the camera to cool down. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Front Camera Malfunction Service Required	The camera has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

# Interior Lighting

## SWITCHING ALL OF THE INTERIOR LAMPS ON AND OFF

The lamps turn on under the following conditions:

- You open any door.
- You press a button on the remote control.
- You press the all lamps on button on the overhead console.



Press to switch all interior lamps on or off.

## SWITCHING THE FRONT INTERIOR LAMPS ON AND OFF



E249791

Press the edge of the lamp lens.

## SWITCHING THE REAR INTERIOR LAMPS ON AND OFF

Press the edge of the lamp lens.

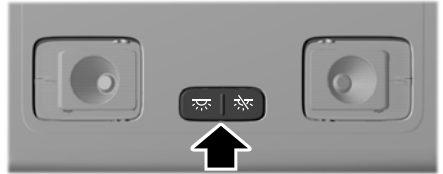
**Note:** If you switch the rear lamps on through the overhead console, you cannot switch them off with the rear lamp switch.

## INTERIOR LAMP FUNCTION

### WHAT IS THE INTERIOR LAMP FUNCTION

The interior lamp function switches the courtesy and door lamps on or off.

## SWITCHING THE INTERIOR LAMP FUNCTION ON AND OFF



Set the switch to the middle position.

## ADJUSTING THE INSTRUMENT PANEL LIGHTING BRIGHTNESS

The instrument lighting dimmer buttons are on the lighting control.



Repeatedly press one of the buttons to adjust the brightness.



## AMBIENT LIGHTING

### SWITCHING AMBIENT LIGHTING ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITHOUT: SYNC 3

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle Settings**.
3. Press **Ambient Light**.

Drag the slider above zero brightness to switch ambient lighting on.

Drag the slider to zero brightness to switch ambient lighting off.

# Interior Lighting

---

## **SWITCHING AMBIENT LIGHTING ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITH: SYNC 3**

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle Settings**.
3. Press **Ambient Light**.
4. Switch **Ambient Light** on or off.

## **ADJUSTING AMBIENT LIGHTING**

Drag the slider left or right.

## **INTERIOR LIGHTING – TROUBLESHOOTING**

### **INTERIOR LIGHTING – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS**

#### **Why do my courtesy lamps or interior lamps turn off when I have them switched on when I switch my vehicle off?**

The battery saver turns the courtesy lamps and interior lamps off after a short period of time after you switch your vehicle off.

# Windows

## OPENING AND CLOSING THE WINDOWS



**WARNING:** Do not leave children unattended in your vehicle and do not let them play with the power windows. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



**WARNING:** When closing the power windows, verify they are free of obstruction and make sure that children and pets are not in the proximity of the window openings.



Press the window control switch to open the window. Lift the window control switch to close the window.

To reduce wind noise or pulsing noise when just one window is open, slightly open the opposite window.

### One-Touch Down (If Equipped)

Press the window control switch fully and release it. Press again or lift it to stop the window.

### One-Touch Up (If Equipped)

Lift the window control switch fully and release it. Press or lift it again to stop the window.

### Resetting One-Touch Up

Start the engine.

1. Lift and hold the window control switch until you fully close the door window. Continue to hold the window control switch for a few seconds after you close the window.
2. Release the window control switch.

3. Press and hold the window control switch until you fully open the door window.
4. Release the window control switch.
5. Lift and hold the window control switch until you fully close the window.
6. Test for correct window operation by carrying out the one-touch down and one-touch up features.

### Accessory Delay

The window switches remain operational for several minutes when you switch the ignition off or until you open either front door.

## WINDOW BOUNCE-BACK

### WHAT IS WINDOW BOUNCE-BACK

The window stops and reverses some distance if it detects an obstacle when closing.

### OVERRIDING WINDOW BOUNCE-BACK



**WARNING:** If you override bounce-back, the window does not reverse if it detects an obstacle. Take care when closing the windows to avoid personal injury or damage to your vehicle.



**WARNING:** Bounce-back is off until you reset the memory. Take care when closing the windows to avoid personal injury or damage to your vehicle.

**Note:** *The window stops if you release the switch before the window fully closes.*



# Windows

Pull up the window switch and hold within a few seconds of the window reaching the bounce-back position. The window travels up with no bounce-back protection. The window stops if you release the switch before the window fully closes.

The window control switch is on the instrument panel below the climate controls.

Press and hold the window control switch to open the window. Pull and hold the window control switch to close the window.

## LOCKING THE REAR WINDOW CONTROLS



Press the control to lock or unlock the rear window controls. It illuminates when you lock the rear window controls.

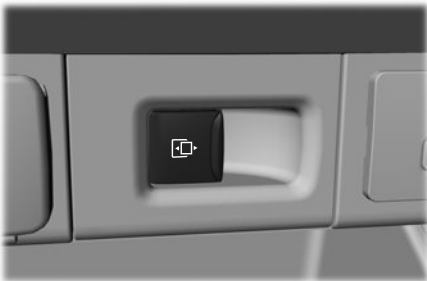
## OPENING AND CLOSING THE SLIDING WINDOWS (IF EQUIPPED)



**WARNING:** When closing the power windows, verify they are free of obstruction and make sure that children and pets are not in the proximity of the window openings.



**WARNING:** Do not leave children unattended in your vehicle and do not let them play with the power windows. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



# Interior Mirror

---

## INTERIOR MIRROR PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Do not adjust the mirrors when your vehicle is moving. This could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

**Note:** Do not clean the mirror housing or glass with harsh abrasives, fuel or other petroleum-based cleaning products.

## MANUALLY DIMMING THE INTERIOR MIRROR

Pull the tab below the mirror toward you to reduce glare at night.

# Exterior Mirrors

## ADJUSTING THE EXTERIOR MIRRORS

**WARNING:** Do not adjust the mirrors when your vehicle is moving. This could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.



- A Left-hand mirror.
- B Right-hand mirror.



To adjust your mirrors, switch your vehicle on, with the ignition in accessory mode or the engine running.

1. Select the mirror you want to adjust. The control light turns on.
2. Use the adjustment control to adjust the position of the mirror.
3. Press the mirror control again. The control light turns off.

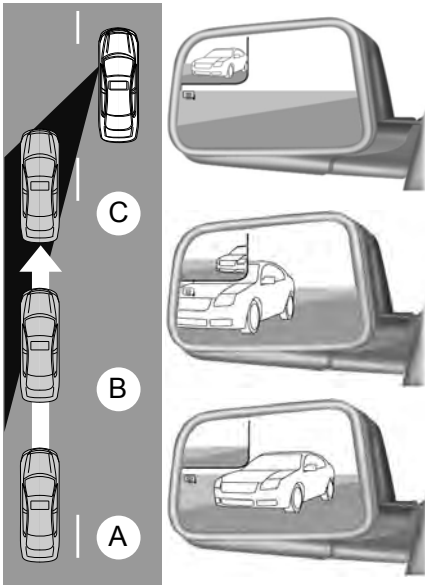
## Integrated Blind Spot Mirror

**WARNING:** Objects in the mirror are closer than they appear.

Blind spot mirrors have an integrated convex mirror built into the upper outboard corner of the exterior mirrors. They can assist you by increasing visibility along the side of your vehicle.

Check the main mirror first before a lane change, then check the blind spot mirror. If no vehicles are present in the blind spot mirror and the traffic in the adjacent lane is at a safe distance, signal that you are going to change lanes. Glance over your shoulder to verify traffic is clear, and carefully change lanes.

## Exterior Mirrors



The image of the approaching vehicle is small and near the inboard edge of the main mirror when it is at a distance. The image becomes larger and begins to move outboard across the main mirror as the vehicle approaches (A). The image transitions from the main mirror and begins to appear in the blind spot mirror as the vehicle approaches (B). The vehicle transitions to your peripheral field of view as it leaves the blind spot mirror (C).

### **FOLDING THE EXTERIOR MIRRORS**

Push the mirror toward the door window glass. Make sure that you fully engage the mirror in its support when returning it to its original position.

# Moonroof (If Equipped)

## OPENING AND CLOSING THE SUN SHADE



**WARNING:** Do not leave children unattended in your vehicle and do not let them play with the sun shades. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

### Opening and Closing the Sun Shade

The sliding shade can be manually opened or closed when the moonroof is closed. Pull the shade toward the front of the vehicle to close it.

## OPENING AND CLOSING THE MOONROOF



**WARNING:** Do not leave children unattended in your vehicle and do not let them play with the moonroof. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



**WARNING:** When closing the moonroof, verify that it is free of obstruction and make sure that children and pets are not in the proximity of the roof opening.

**Note:** With the panoramic moonroof panel fully open and vehicle speed increasing to approximately 50 mph (80 km/h), the moonroof opening panel automatically closes approximately 8 in (20 cm) to reduce excessive wind noise at higher speeds. This feature only functions one time per key cycle, so you can open the glass further if desired.

The moonroof controls are located on the overhead console and have a one-touch open and close feature. To stop its movement during one-touch operation, press the control a second time.

### Opening the Moonroof



Press and release the switch to activate the one-touch open feature. To stop movement, press the switch a second time.

### Closing the Moonroof



Press and release the switch to activate the one-touch close feature, from either the open or vent positions. To stop movement, press the switch a second time.

## VENTING THE MOONROOF



**WARNING:** Do not leave children unattended in your vehicle and do not let them play with the moonroof. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



**WARNING:** When closing the moonroof, verify that it is free of obstruction and make sure that children and pets are not in the proximity of the roof opening.

The moonroof controls are on the overhead console.



With the moonroof in the closed position, press and release the switch to vent the moonroof. To close the moonroof from the vent position, press and release the switch again.

## **Moonroof (If Equipped)**

---

### **MOONROOF BOUNCE-BACK**

#### **WHAT IS MOONROOF BOUNCE-BACK**

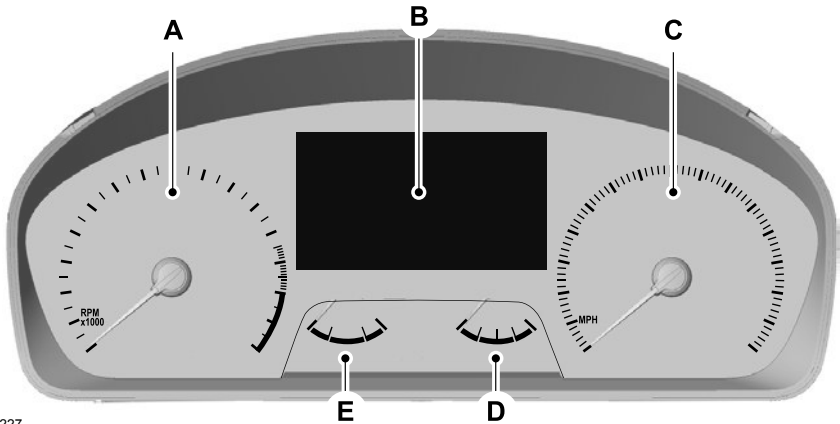
The moonroof stops and reverses some distance if it detects an obstacle when closing.

#### **OVERRIDING MOONROOF BOUNCE-BACK**

Press and hold the close button within two seconds after the moonroof comes to a stop.

# Instrument Cluster

## INSTRUMENT CLUSTER OVERVIEW - GASOLINE, VEHICLES WITH: 4.2 INCH SCREEN

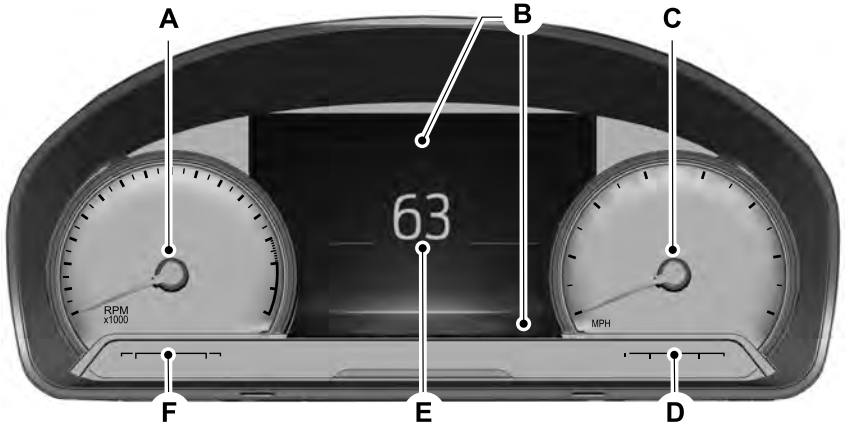


E282227

- A Tachometer.
- B Instrument cluster display.
- C Speedometer.
- D Fuel gauge.
- E Engine coolant temperature gauge.

# Instrument Cluster

## INSTRUMENT CLUSTER OVERVIEW - GASOLINE, VEHICLES WITH: 6.5 INCH SCREEN

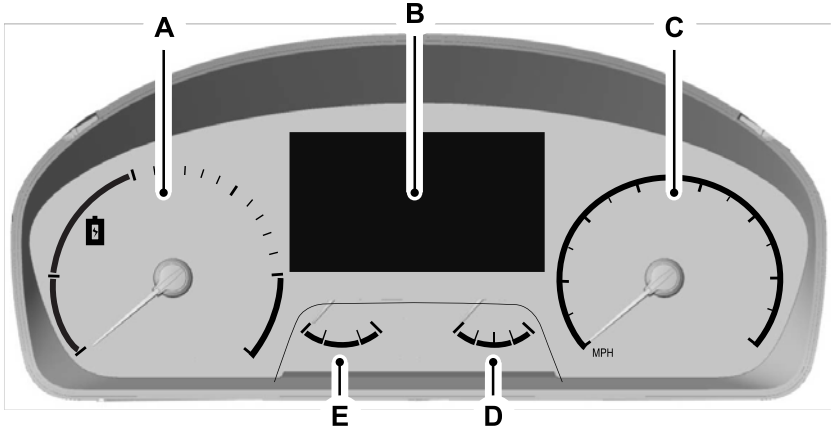


- A Tachometer.
- B Information bar.
- C Speedometer.
- D Fuel gauge.
- E Instrument cluster display.
- F Engine coolant temperature gauge.



# Instrument Cluster

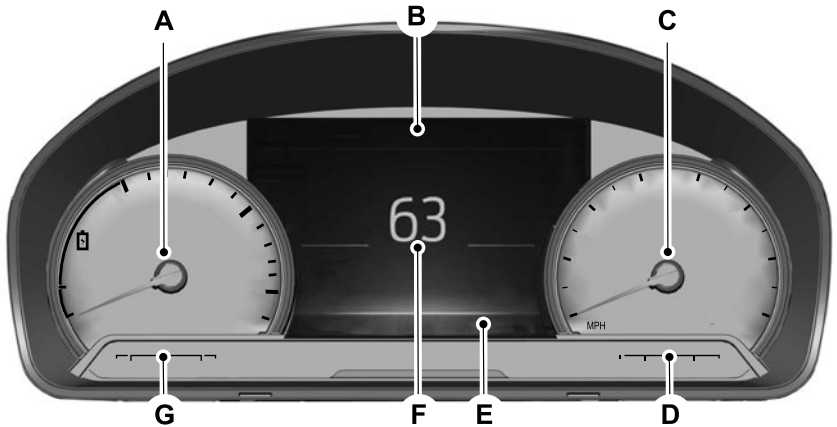
## INSTRUMENT CLUSTER OVERVIEW - HYBRIDELECTRIC VEHICLE (HEV), VEHICLES WITH: 4.2 INCH SCREEN



- A Power gauge.
- B Instrument cluster display.
- C Speedometer.
- D Fuel gauge.
- E Engine coolant temperature gauge.

## Instrument Cluster

### INSTRUMENT CLUSTER OVERVIEW - HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (HEV), VEHICLES WITH: 6.5 INCH SCREEN



- A Power gauge.
- B Information bar.
- C Speedometer.
- D Fuel gauge.
- E Vehicle driving range.
- F Instrument cluster display.
- G Engine coolant temperature gauge.

### WHAT IS THE TACHOMETER - GASOLINE

Indicates the engine speed.

# Instrument Cluster

---

## WHAT IS THE POWER GAUGE - HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (HEV)

The power gauge displays power to the wheels when accelerating or maintaining speed. When slowing down by lifting your foot off the accelerator pedal or pressing the brake, the gauge displays the power captured by the regenerative braking system and returned to the high voltage battery.

## WHAT IS THE SPEEDOMETER

Indicates the vehicle speed.

## FUEL GAUGE

### WHAT IS THE FUEL GAUGE

Indicates approximately how much fuel is in the fuel tank.

### FUEL GAUGE LIMITATIONS

The fuel gauge may not provide an accurate reading when your vehicle is on an incline.

### LOCATING THE FUEL FILLER DOOR

The arrow adjacent to the fuel pump symbol indicates on which side of your vehicle the fuel filler door is located.

## WHAT IS THE LOW FUEL REMINDER

A low fuel level reminder displays and sounds when the distance to empty reaches 75 mi (120 km) to empty for MyKey, and at 50 mi (80 km), 25 mi (40 km), 12 mi (20 km) and 0 mi (0 km) for all vehicle keys.

**Note:** *The low fuel reminder can appear at different fuel gauge positions depending on fuel economy conditions. This variation is normal.*

## WHAT IS DISTANCE TO EMPTY - GASOLINE, HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (HEV)

Indicates the approximate distance your vehicle can travel on the fuel remaining in the tank. Changes in driving pattern can cause the value to not only decrease but also increase or stay constant for periods of time.

## WHAT IS THE ENGINE COOLANT TEMPERATURE GAUGE

Indicates the engine coolant temperature.

## WHAT IS THE INFORMATION BAR

The information bar displays information related to the ambient air temperature, odometer, compass, indicators and warning lamps.

# Instrument Cluster

## WHAT ARE THE INSTRUMENT CLUSTER WARNING LAMPS

Warning lamps alert you to a vehicle condition that could become serious. Some lamps illuminate when you start your vehicle to make sure they work. If any lamps remain on after starting your vehicle, refer to the respective system warning lamp for further information.

## INSTRUMENT CLUSTER WARNING LAMPS

### Anti-Lock Braking System



If it illuminates when you are driving, this indicates your vehicle requires service. Your vehicle continues to have normal braking without the anti-lock brake system function. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

### Battery



It illuminates when you switch the ignition on.

If it illuminates when the engine is running, this indicates your vehicle requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

### Brake System



It illuminates when you apply the parking brake and the ignition is on. If it illuminates when your vehicle is moving, make sure the parking brake is released. If the parking brake is released, this



indicates low brake fluid level or the brake system requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

**Note:** Indicators may vary depending on region.

### Door Ajar



It illuminates when you switch the ignition on and remains on if any door is open.

### Electric Park Brake



It illuminates or flashes when the electric parking brake requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.



### Engine or Motor Coolant Temperature



If it illuminates, safely stop your vehicle and switch your vehicle off. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

### Fasten Seatbelt



It illuminates and a tone sounds until you fasten the seatbelts.

### Fasten Rear Seatbelt



It illuminates and a tone sounds until you fasten the rear seatbelts.

### High Voltage Electric System Failure



It illuminates if your vehicle has an electrical component fault or failure that causes your vehicle to shutdown or enter a limited operating mode. A message may appear in the instrument cluster display.

# Instrument Cluster

## Hood Ajar



It illuminates when the ignition is on and the hood is not completely closed.

## Low Beam Warning



It illuminates when the low beam headlamp requires service. Have the system checked as soon as possible.

## Low Fuel Level



It illuminates when the fuel level is low.

## Low Tire Pressure Warning



It illuminates when your tire pressure is low. If illuminated, check your tire pressure as soon as possible. If it begins to flash at anytime, have the system checked as soon as possible.

## Low Washer Fluid



It illuminates when the washer fluid is low.

## Malfunction Indicator Lamp



It illuminates when the ignition is on and the engine is off, this is normal operation. If it illuminates when the engine is on this indicates that the emission control system requires service. If it flashes, have your vehicle checked immediately. See **Starting and Stopping the Engine – Warning Lamps** (page 162).

## Oil Pressure



It illuminates when the engine oil pressure is low.

## Powertrain Fault



It illuminates when the powertrain requires service. Have the system checked as soon as possible.

## Tailgate Ajar



It illuminates when the ignition is on and the tailgate is not completely closed.

## WHAT ARE THE INSTRUMENT CLUSTER INDICATORS

Indicators notify you of various features that are active on your vehicle.

## INSTRUMENT CLUSTER INDICATORS

### Adaptive Cruise Control



See **Adaptive Cruise Control** (page 215).

### Airbag



See **Airbags** (page 50).

### Automatic High Beam Control



See **Automatic High Beam Control Indicators** (page 97).

# Instrument Cluster

---

## Auto Hold



See **Auto Hold** (page 198).



## Auto-Start-Stop



See **Auto-Start-Stop** (page 168).

## Blind Spot Monitor



See **Blind Spot Information System** (page 237).

## Cruise Control



See **Cruise Control** (page 213).

## High Beam



See **Using the High Beam Headlamps** (page 93).

## Lamps On



See **Exterior Lighting** (page 93).

## Ready to Drive



See **Hybrid Electric Vehicle Information** (page 166).

## Stability and Traction Control



See **Stability Control** (page 201). See **Traction Control** (page 199).



## Turn Signal



See **Switching the Turn Signal Lamps On and Off** (page 95).

# Instrument Cluster Display

## USING THE INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY CONTROLS



**WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

The controls are on the steering wheel.



E250032

- A Return button.
- B OK button.
- C Menu button.

### Return Button

Press to go back or exit a menu.

### OK Button

Press to make a selection.

### Toggle Buttons

Press the toggle up or down button to scroll through menu items.

### Status Indicator



Menu items with a check box indicate a feature's status. A check in the box indicates the feature is on, and unchecked indicates the feature is off.

## INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY MAIN MENU - VEHICLES WITH: 4.2 INCH SCREEN

Menu Item
Trip 1
MyView
Driver Assist.
Audio
Phone
Settings

# Instrument Cluster Display

## INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY MAIN MENU - VEHICLES WITH: 6.5 INCH SCREEN

Menu Item
Select Screens
Audio
Phone
Settings
Display Setup

## CUSTOMIZING THE INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY - VEHICLES WITH: 4.2 INCH SCREEN

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select **MyView**.
2. Press the menu button.
3. Select a screen.
4. Press the **OK** button.

## CUSTOMIZING THE INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY - VEHICLES WITH: 6.5 INCH SCREEN

### Adding Screens Using Select Screens

You can select various screens to show on the instrument cluster display.

1. Select **Select Screens**.
2. Use the controls on the steering wheel to highlight a screen to add.
3. Press the **OK** button.

**Note:** *The amount of screens you can add is limited. If the selected screen does not appear, you must deselect items from the menu.*

Select Screens
Calm screen
Fuel economy
Trip 1
Trip 2
This trip
EV Coach
Tire pressure
Intelligent AWD
Off-Road
Trailer light check
Seatbelts
Auto StartStop
Now playing

**Note:** *Some options may appear slightly different or not at all if items are optional.*

### Configuring Gauges

You can select which values your speedometer shows in the instrument cluster display.

1. Select **Display Setup**.
2. Select a speed unit to display.



# Instrument Cluster Display

---

## PERSONALIZED SETTINGS

### CHANGING THE INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY LANGUAGE - VEHICLES WITH: 4.2 INCH SCREEN

You can change the language using the instrument cluster display.

1. Select **Settings** and press the menu button.
2. Select **Display**.
3. Select **Language**.
4. Select a language.

### CHANGING THE INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY LANGUAGE - VEHICLES WITH: 6.5 INCH SCREEN

You can change the language using the instrument cluster display.

1. Select **Display Setup**.
2. Select **Language**.
3. Select a language.

**Note:** Available languages vary by region.

### CHANGING THE MEASURE UNIT - VEHICLES WITH: 4.2 INCH SCREEN

You can change the measurement unit using the instrument cluster display.

1. Select **Settings** and press the menu button.
2. Select **Display**.
3. Select **Measurement Unit**.
4. Select a measurement unit.

### CHANGING THE MEASURE UNIT - VEHICLES WITH: 6.5 INCH SCREEN

You can change the measurement unit using the instrument cluster display.

1. Select **Display Setup**.
2. Select **Measurement Units**.
3. Select a measurement unit.

### CHANGING THE TEMPERATURE UNIT - VEHICLES WITH: 4.2 INCH SCREEN

You can change the temperature unit using the instrument cluster display.

1. Select **Settings** and press the menu button.
2. Select **Display**.
3. Select **Temperature Unit**.
4. Select a temperature unit.

### CHANGING THE TEMPERATURE UNIT - VEHICLES WITH: 6.5 INCH SCREEN

You can change the temperature unit using the instrument cluster display.

1. Select **Display Setup**.
2. Select **Temperature units**.
3. Select a temperature unit.

### CHANGING THE TIRE PRESSURE UNIT - VEHICLES WITH: 4.2 INCH SCREEN

You can change the tire pressure unit using the instrument cluster display.

1. Select **Settings** and press the menu button.
2. Select **Display**.
3. Select **Tire Pressure**.

# Instrument Cluster Display

4. Select a tire pressure unit.

## CHANGING THE TIRE PRESSURE UNIT - VEHICLES WITH: 6.5 INCH SCREEN

You can change the tire pressure unit using the instrument cluster display.

1. Select **Display Setup**.
2. Select **Tire pressure**.
3. Select a pressure unit.

## FUEL ECONOMY DISPLAY - GASOLINE

An instant fuel economy gauge is provided along with average fuel economy. Average fuel economy is continuously averaged since the last reset.

**Note:** *Press and hold the **OK** button on the controls on the steering wheel to reset your average fuel economy.*

## FUEL ECONOMY DISPLAY - HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (HEV)

An instant fuel economy gauge is provided along with average fuel economy. Average fuel economy is continuously averaged since the last reset.

When the gasoline engine is off the instant fuel economy gauges is replaced with an electric driving message.

**Note:** *Press and hold the **OK** button on the controls on the steering wheel to reset your average fuel economy.*

## EV COACH - HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (HEV)

EV coach can help you get the most out of your vehicle's electric driving capabilities.

**Note:** *EV coach is a selectable screen. See **Customizing the Instrument Cluster Display** (page 117).*

When you are accelerating or maintaining speed you see a blue or white solid bar indicating vehicle power. You may also see a blue rectangular box which shows the power level at which the engine turns on.

- When the power level is within the box, the color of the bar is blue. This means you are in electric operation and the engine is off.
- When the power level is outside of the box, the color of the bar is white. This means you are in hybrid operation with a combination of the electric motor and the engine providing vehicle power.

When you are decelerating with either your foot off the accelerator pedal or on the brake pedal, a green or white solid bar displays indicating the power being used to slow down your vehicle. You may also see a green rectangular box which shows the amount of power that can be recaptured by the regenerative braking system and returned to the high voltage battery.

- When the power level is within the box, the color of the bar will be all green. This means that the regenerative braking system is being used to efficiently slow your vehicle down and return the maximum percentage of energy to the high voltage battery.
- When the power level is outside of the box, then the bar is white. This means both the regenerative braking system and conventional braking system are being used.

# Instrument Cluster Display

---

## WHAT IS BRAKE COACH - HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (HEV)

The brake coach appears after your vehicle has come to a stop. It coaches you to brake in a manner that maximizes the amount of energy returned through the regenerative braking system.

The percent displayed is an indication of the regenerative braking efficiency with 100% representing the maximum amount of energy recovered. You can switch brake coach on or off in the settings menu. See **Instrument Cluster Display Main Menu** (page 117).

## WHAT IS THE TRIP SUMMARY - HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (HEV)

The trip summary displays upon shutting off your vehicle. The values are cumulative since you last started your vehicle.

The information shown is the same as the This Trip screen. See **Trip Data** (page 121).

# Trip Computer

---

## ACCESSING THE TRIP COMPUTER - VEHICLES WITH: 4.2 INCH SCREEN

1. Use the instrument cluster display controls to navigate the home screen.
2. Select the trip screen.
3. Press the menu button on the steering wheel.
4. Select **Trip 1** or **Trip 2**.

## ACCESSING THE TRIP COMPUTER - VEHICLES WITH: 6.5 INCH SCREEN

### Using Select Screens

1. Use the instrument cluster display controls to navigate the home menu.
2. Select **Select Screens**.
3. Use the control on the steering wheel to navigate the menu. See **Customizing the Instrument Cluster Display** (page 117).

### Using the Home Screen

Once the screens have been added, use the instrument cluster display controls on the steering wheel to view each trip screen.

## RESETTING THE TRIP COMPUTER

1. Use the instrument cluster display controls to navigate the home screen.
2. Select the trip screen you want to reset.
3. Press and hold the **OK** button until the system reset confirmation appears.

## RESETTING THE INDIVIDUAL TRIP VALUES - VEHICLES WITH: 4.2 INCH SCREEN

1. Use the instrument cluster display controls to navigate the home screen.
2. Select the trip screen.
3. Press the menu button on the steering wheel.
4. Select **Reset Individual Values**.
5. Select a trip value to reset.
6. Press and hold the **OK** button until the system reset confirmation appears.

## CONFIGURING THE TRIP COMPUTER - VEHICLES WITH: 4.2 INCH SCREEN

1. Use the instrument cluster display controls to navigate the home screen.
2. Select the trip screen.
3. Press the menu button on the steering wheel.
4. Select **Configure View**.
5. Select values to display.

## TRIP DATA

### Trip 1 and 2

Provides trip timer, trip average fuel economy and total trip distance traveled. For hybrid vehicles, the trip also shows the distance traveled on electric power only.

**Note:** *Trip 1 and 2 are selectable screens. See **Accessing the Trip Computer** (page 121).*

# Trip Computer

---

## **This Trip**

Provides trip timer, trip average fuel economy, total trip distance traveled, and distance traveled on electric power only with the engine off. If the gasoline engine has not turned on during the trip then trip average fuel economy is not shown. This Trip resets each time you start your vehicle.

**Note:** *This trip is a selectable screen. See **Accessing the Trip Computer** (page 121).*

# Remote Start (If Equipped)

## WHAT IS REMOTE START

The system allows you to remotely start your vehicle and to adjust the interior temperature according to the settings that you chose.

## REMOTE START PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Do not start the engine in a closed garage or in other enclosed areas. Exhaust fumes are toxic. Always open the garage door before you start the engine. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

## REMOTE START LIMITATIONS

Remote start does not work under the following conditions:

- The alarm horn is sounding.
- The hood is open.
- The transmission is not in park (P).
- The ignition is on.
- The battery voltage is below the minimum operating voltage.

**Note:** Do not use remote start if your fuel level is low.

**Note:** You can use remote start with FordPass. See **Connecting the Vehicle to a Wi-Fi Network** (page 369).

## ENABLING REMOTE START

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select **Settings**.
2. Select **Vehicle Settings**.
3. Select **Remote Start**.

4. Switch **System** on.

**Note:** To use remote start, make sure that the modem is enabled. See **Enabling and Disabling the Modem** (page 369).

## REMOTELY STARTING AND STOPPING THE VEHICLE

### Remotely Starting the Vehicle



Press the button on the remote control.



Within three seconds, press the button twice on the remote control.

**Note:** You can also use the FordPass App to start the vehicle.

**Note:** The turn signals flash twice.

**Note:** The parking lamps turn on when the vehicle is running.

**Note:** The horn sounds if the system fails to start.

**Note:** All other vehicle systems remain off when you have remotely started the vehicle.

**Note:** The vehicle remains secured when you have remotely started the vehicle. A valid key must be inside your vehicle to switch the ignition on and drive your vehicle.

### Remotely Stopping the Vehicle



Within three seconds, press the button twice on the remote control.

## EXTENDING THE REMOTE START DURATION

To extend the remote start duration during remote start, do the following:

## Remote Start (If Equipped)



Press the button on the remote control.



Within three seconds, press the button on the remote control.

Within three seconds, press the button again.

If the duration is set to 15 minutes, the duration extends by another 15 minutes. This provides a total of 30 minutes.

**Note:** Remote start can only be extended once.

**Note:** A maximum of two remote starts, or one remote start with an extension, are allowed. To reset the restart procedure switch the vehicle to on, then to off.

### REMOTE START REMOTE CONTROL INDICATORS

#### Remote Control Feedback

An LED on the remote control provides status feedback of remote start or stop commands.

LED	Status
Solid green.	Remote start successful.
Solid red.	Remote stop successful.
Blinking red.	Request failed or status not received.
Blinking green.	Status incomplete.

### REMOTE START SETTINGS - VEHICLES WITH: SYNC 3

#### SWITCHING CLIMATE CONTROL AUTO MODE ON AND OFF

- Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select **Settings**.
- Select **Vehicle Settings**.
- Select **Remote Start**.
- Select **Climate Control**.
- Switch **Auto** on.

**Note:** If you switch the auto mode on, the system attempts to heat or cool the interior to 72°F (22°C).

**Note:** When you remotely start the engine, you cannot adjust the climate control settings until you start your vehicle.

**Note:** When you switch the ignition on, the climate control system returns to the last used settings.

**Note:** The heated windshield, heated rear window, heated mirrors, heated seats and heated steering wheel could turn on in cold weather. Ventilated seats could turn on in hot weather.

#### SWITCHING CLIMATE CONTROL LAST SETTINGS ON AND OFF

- Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select **Settings**.
- Select **Vehicle Settings**.
- Select **Remote Start**.
- Select **Climate Control**.
- Switch **Last Settings** on.

**Note:** If you switch the last settings on, the system remembers the last used settings.

## Remote Start (If Equipped)

---

### SWITCHING THE HEATED SEAT SETTINGS ON AND OFF

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select **Settings**.
2. Select **Vehicle Settings**.
3. Select **Remote Start**.
4. Select **Seats**.
5. Select **Auto** or **Off**.

**Note:** *If you switch the heated seat settings on, the heated seats turn on during cold weather.*

**Note:** *You cannot adjust the heated seat settings when you have remotely started the engine.*

### SWITCHING THE HEATED STEERING WHEEL SETTINGS ON AND OFF

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select **Settings**.
2. Select **Vehicle Settings**.
3. Select **Remote Start**.
4. Select **Seats and Wheel**.
5. Select **Auto** or **Off**.

**Note:** *If you switch the heated steering wheel settings on, the heated steering wheel turn on during cold weather.*

**Note:** *You cannot adjust the heated steering wheel settings when you have remotely started the engine.*

### SETTING THE REMOTE START DURATION

You can set a duration for the engine to run.

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select **Settings**.
2. Select **Vehicle Settings**.
3. Select **Remote Start**.

4. Select **Duration**.



# Climate Control - Vehicles With: Dual Automatic Temperature Control (DATC)

## IDENTIFYING THE CLIMATE CONTROL UNIT



Depending on your vehicle options, the controls could look different than what you see here.

## SWITCHING CLIMATE CONTROL ON AND OFF



Press the button.

## SWITCHING RECIRCULATED AIR ON AND OFF



Press the button to recirculate air currently in the passenger compartment.

**Note:** Recirculated air may turn off automatically, or prevent you from switching on in all air flow modes except MAX A/C to reduce the risk of fogging. Recirculation may also turn on and off automatically in various air distribution control combinations to improve heating or cooling efficiency.

## SWITCHING AIR CONDITIONING ON AND OFF



Press the button.

**Note:** Under certain conditions, the air conditioning compressor could continue to operate after you switch air conditioning off.

## SWITCHING MAXIMUM DEFROST ON AND OFF



Press the button.

Air flows through the windshield air vents, and the blower motor adjusts to the highest speed.

You can also use this setting to defog and clear the windshield of a thin covering of ice.

**Note:** To prevent window fogging, you cannot select recirculated air when maximum defrost is on.

**Note:** The heated wiper park also turns on when you select maximum defrost.

## SWITCHING MAXIMUM COOLING ON AND OFF



Press the button.

**Note:** When you switch maximum cooling off, air conditioning remains on.

## SWITCHING THE HEATED WIPER PARK ON AND OFF (IF

EQUIPPED)



When you switch the heated mirrors on, the heated wiper park also turns on.

## SWITCHING THE HEATED MIRRORS ON AND OFF (IF

EQUIPPED)



Press the button.

# Climate Control - Vehicles With: Dual Automatic Temperature Control (DATC)

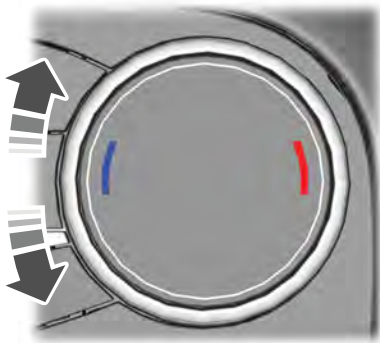
## SETTING THE BLOWER MOTOR SPEED



**Note:** Lights on the control illuminate to indicate the blower motor speed.

**Note:** When you switch the blower motor off, air conditioning turns off and the windows could fog up.

## SETTING THE TEMPERATURE



Turn the control on the left-hand side of the climate control to set the left-hand temperature.

**Note:** This control also sets the right-hand side temperature when you switch off dual zone mode.

Turn the control on the right-hand side of the climate control to set the right-hand temperature.

## DIRECTING THE FLOW OF AIR

### Directing Air to the Windshield Air Vents



Press the button.

### Directing Air to the Instrument Panel Air Vents



Press the button.

### Directing Air to the Footwell Air Vents



Press the button.

## AUTO MODE

### SWITCHING AUTO MODE ON AND OFF



Press the button to switch auto mode on. Repeatedly press the button to adjust auto mode.

**Note:** When you switch auto mode on, lights on the blower motor control do not illuminate to indicate the blower motor speed.

Adjust the blower motor control or air distribution control to switch auto mode off.

## AUTO MODE INDICATORS

The indicators are on the Auto Mode button.

## Climate Control - Vehicles With: Dual Automatic Temperature Control (DATC)

---

<b>Auto Mode Indicator Status</b>	<b>Description</b>
One indicator illuminated.	The blower motor speed is reduced. Use this setting to minimize the amount of noise from the blower motor. This setting increases the time taken to cool the interior.
Two indicators illuminated.	The blower motor speed is moderate.
Three indicators illuminated.	The blower motor speed is increased. Use this setting to reduce the time taken to cool the interior. This setting increases the amount of noise from the blower motor.

# Climate Control - Vehicles With: Dual Automatic Temperature Control (DATC)

---

## SWITCHING DUAL MODE ON AND OFF



Press the button.

## CLIMATE CONTROL – TROUBLESHOOTING

### CLIMATE CONTROL – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

#### Why is the volume of air to the rear passenger compartment limited?

Objects may obstruct the air direction to the rear passenger compartment. Make sure objects have not been placed under the front seats.

#### Why is the volume of air from the air vents reduced?

The air intake area at the base of the windshield could be obstructed. Make sure the air intake area is free from any snow, ice or leaves.

#### What are the recommended settings for heating the interior?

Auto mode on and instrument panel and side air vents fully open.

#### How can I quickly heat the interior?

Select the highest blower motor speed, highest temperature and direct the air to the footwell air vents.

#### What are the recommended settings for cooling the interior?

Auto mode on.

#### How can I quickly cool the interior?

Switch maximum cooling on, switch recirculated air on and drive with the windows open until you feel cold air through the air vents.

#### How can I reduce the humidity build-up inside my vehicle?

Do not drive with the system off or with recirculated air on.

#### How can I defog the side windows?

Switch maximum defrost on.

#### How can I defog or clear the windshield of thin ice?

Switch maximum defrost on.

#### Why do I feel air from the footwell air vents regardless of the air distribution?

This is normal operation. You may feel a small amount of air from the footwell air vents regardless of the air distribution.

#### What happens if I switch auto mode on when the outside temperature and in-vehicle temperature is high?

The system temporarily selects recirculated air to maximize cooling.

#### What happens if I switch auto mode on when the outside temperature is low and the engine is cold?

Air is directed to the windshield and the outer instrument panel air vents.

# Climate Control - Vehicles With: Electronic Automatic Temperature Control (EATC)

## IDENTIFYING THE CLIMATE CONTROL UNIT



Depending on your vehicle options, the controls could look different than what you see here.

## SWITCHING CLIMATE CONTROL ON AND OFF



Press the button.

## SWITCHING RECIRCULATED AIR ON AND OFF



Press the button to recirculate air currently in the passenger compartment.

**Note:** Recirculated air may turn off automatically, or prevent you from switching on in all air flow modes except MAX A/C to reduce the risk of fogging. Recirculation may also turn on and off automatically in various air distribution control combinations to improve heating or cooling efficiency.

## SWITCHING AIR CONDITIONING ON AND OFF



Press the button.

**Note:** Under certain conditions, the air conditioning compressor could continue to operate after you switch air conditioning off.

## SWITCHING MAXIMUM DEFROST ON AND OFF



Press the button.

Air flows through the windshield air vents, and the blower motor adjusts to the highest speed.

You can also use this setting to defog and clear the windshield of a thin covering of ice.

**Note:** To prevent window fogging, you cannot select recirculated air when maximum defrost is on.

**Note:** The heated wiper park also turns on when you select maximum defrost.

## SWITCHING MAXIMUM COOLING ON AND OFF



Press the button.

**Note:** When you switch maximum cooling off, air conditioning remains on.

## SWITCHING THE HEATED WIPER PARK ON AND OFF (IF

EQUIPPED)



When you switch the heated mirrors on, the heated wiper park also turns on.

## SWITCHING THE HEATED MIRRORS ON AND OFF (IF

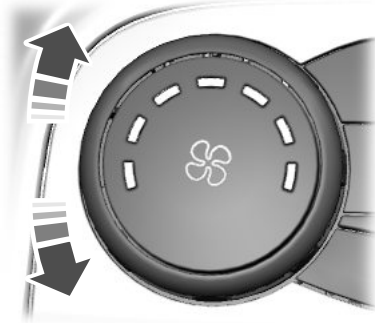
EQUIPPED)



Press the button.

# Climate Control - Vehicles With: Electronic Automatic Temperature Control (EATC)

## SETTING THE BLOWER MOTOR SPEED

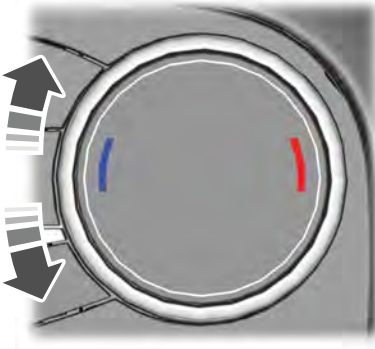


Turn the control.

**Note:** Lights on the control illuminate to indicate the blower motor speed.

**Note:** When you switch the blower motor off, air conditioning turns off and the windows could fog up.

## SETTING THE TEMPERATURE



Turn the control on the left-hand side of the climate control to set the left-hand temperature.

Turn the control on the right-hand side of the climate control to set the right-hand temperature.

## DIRECTING THE FLOW OF AIR

### Directing Air to the Windshield Air Vents



Press the button.

### Directing Air to the Instrument Panel Air Vents



Press the button.

### Directing Air to the Footwell Air Vents



Press the button.

## AUTO MODE

### SWITCHING AUTO MODE ON AND OFF



Press the button to switch auto mode on. Repeatedly press the button to adjust auto mode.

**Note:** When you switch auto mode on, lights on the blower motor control do not illuminate to indicate the blower motor speed.

Adjust the blower motor control or air distribution control to switch auto mode off.

# Climate Control - Vehicles With: Electronic Automatic Temperature Control (EATC)

## AUTO MODE INDICATORS

The indicators are on the Auto Mode button.

Auto Mode Indicator Status	Description
One indicator illuminated.	The blower motor speed is reduced. Use this setting to minimize the amount of noise from the blower motor. This setting increases the time taken to cool the interior.
Two indicators illuminated.	The blower motor speed is moderate.
Three indicators illuminated.	The blower motor speed is increased. Use this setting to reduce the time taken to cool the interior. This setting increases the amount of noise from the blower motor.

## CLIMATE CONTROL – TROUBLESHOOTING

### CLIMATE CONTROL – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

#### Why is the volume of air to the rear passenger compartment limited ?

Objects may obstruct the air direction to the rear passenger compartment. Make sure objects have not been placed under the front seats.

#### Why is the volume of air from the air vents reduced?

The air intake area at the base of the windshield could be obstructed. Make sure the air intake area is free from any snow, ice or leaves.

#### What are the recommended settings for heating the interior?

Auto mode on and instrument panel and side air vents fully open.

#### How can I quickly heat the interior?

Select the highest blower motor speed, highest temperature and direct the air to the footwell air vents.

#### What are the recommended settings for cooling the interior?

Auto mode on.

#### How can I quickly cool the interior?

Switch maximum cooling on, switch recirculated air on and drive with the windows open until you feel cold air through the air vents.

#### How can I reduce the humidity build-up inside my vehicle?

Do not drive with the system off or with recirculated air on.

#### How can I defog the side windows?

Switch maximum defrost on.

#### How can I defog or clear the windshield of thin ice?

Switch maximum defrost on.

# Climate Control - Vehicles With: Electronic Automatic Temperature Control (EATC)

---

## **Why do I feel air from the footwell air vents regardless of the air distribution?**

This is normal operation. You may feel a small amount of air from the footwell air vents regardless of the air distribution.

## **What happens if I switch auto mode on when the outside temperature and in-vehicle temperature is high?**

The system temporarily selects recirculated air to maximize cooling.

## **What happens if I switch auto mode on when the outside temperature is low and the engine is cold?**

Air is directed to the windshield and the outer instrument panel air vents.



# Interior Air Quality

---

## WHAT IS THE CABIN AIR FILTER

The cabin air filter improves the quality of air in your vehicle by trapping dust, pollen and other particles.

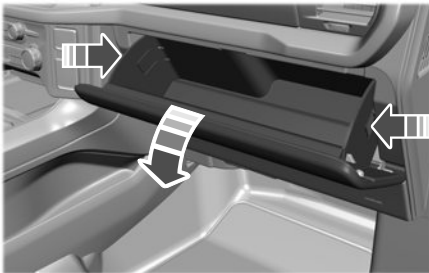
## REPLACING THE CABIN AIR FILTER

Replace the filter at regular intervals. See **Scheduled Maintenance** (page 436).

The cabin air filter is behind the glove compartment.

To remove the lower glove compartment and access the filter:

1. Open the glove compartment.



2. Press the tab on each side.
3. Fully lower the glove compartment.
4. Pull the glove compartment toward you.

# Front Seats

## FRONT SEAT PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Sitting improperly, out of position or with the seatback reclined too far can take weight off the seat cushion and affect the decision of the passenger sensing system, resulting in serious injury or death in the event of a crash. Always sit upright against your seat back, with your feet on the floor.



**WARNING:** Do not recline the seat backrest too far as this can cause the occupant to slide under the seatbelt, resulting in personal injury in the event of a crash.

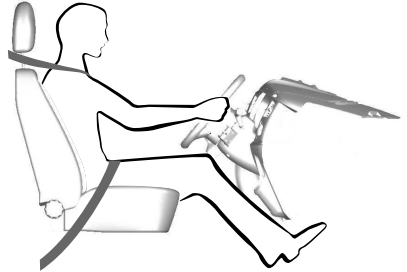


**WARNING:** Do not place objects higher than the top of the seat backrest. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death in the event of a sudden stop or crash.



**WARNING:** Do not adjust the driver seat or seat backrest when your vehicle is moving. This may result in sudden seat movement, causing the loss of control of your vehicle.

## SITTING IN THE CORRECT POSITION



When you use them properly, the seat, head restraint, seatbelt and airbags will provide optimum protection in the event of a crash.

We recommend that you follow these guidelines:

- Sit in an upright position with the base of your spine as far back as possible.
- Do not recline the seat backrest so that your torso is more than 30 degrees from the upright position.
- Adjust the head restraint so that the top of it is level with the top of your head and as far forward as possible. Make sure that you remain comfortable.
- Keep sufficient distance between yourself and the steering wheel. We recommend a minimum of 10 in (25 cm) between your breastbone and the airbag cover.
- Hold the steering wheel with your arms slightly bent.

## Front Seats

- Bend your legs slightly so that you can press the pedals fully.
- Position the shoulder strap of the seatbelt over the center of your shoulder and position the lap strap tightly across your hips.

Make sure that your driving position is comfortable and that you can maintain full control of your vehicle.

### MANUAL SEATS

#### HEADRESTRAINT COMPONENTS



The front seat head restraints consists of:

- A An energy absorbing head restraint.
- B Two steel stems.
- C Guide sleeve adjust and unlock button.

#### ADJUSTING THE HEAD RESTRAINT

**WARNING:** Fully adjust the head restraint before you sit in or operate your vehicle. This will help minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash. Do not adjust the head restraint when your vehicle is moving.

**WARNING:** The head restraint is a safety device. Whenever possible it should be installed and properly adjusted when the seat is occupied. Failure to adjust the head restraint properly could reduce its effectiveness during certain impacts.

**WARNING:** Adjust the head restraints for all passengers before you drive your vehicle. This will help minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash. Do not adjust the head restraints when your vehicle is moving.

**Note:** Adjust the seat backrest to an upright driving position before adjusting the head restraint. Adjust the head restraint so that the top of it is level with the top of your head and as far forward as possible. Make sure that you remain comfortable. If you are extremely tall, adjust the head restraint to its highest position.

Pull the head restraint up to raise it.

To lower the head restraint:

1. Press and hold the adjust and unlock button.
2. Push the head restraint down.

To tilt the head restraint (if equipped):

# Front Seats



1. Adjust the seat backrest to an upright driving or riding position.
2. Pivot the head restraint forward toward your head to the preferred position.

After the head restraint reaches the forward-most tilt position, pivot it forward again to release it to the rearward, untilted position.

**Note:** Do not attempt to force the head restraint backward after it is tilted. Instead, continue tilting it forward until the head restraint releases to the upright position.

## REMOVING THE HEADRESTRAINT

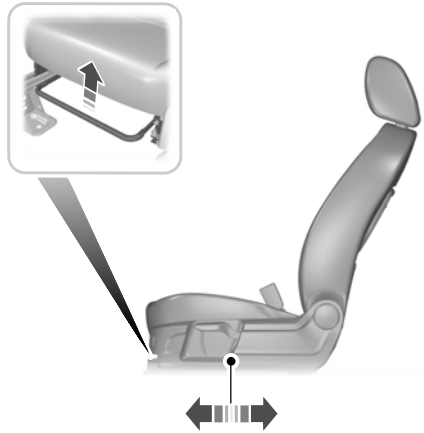
1. Pull the head restraint up until it reaches its highest position.
2. Press and hold the adjust and unlock button.
3. Pull the head restraint up.

## INSTALLING THE HEAD RESTRAINT


Align the steel stems into the guide sleeves and push the head restraint down until it locks.

## MOVING THE SEAT BACKWARD AND FORWARD

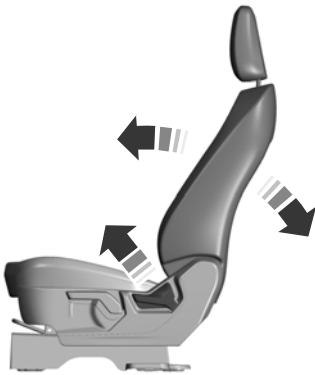
 **WARNING:** Make sure the seat fully locks into place by rocking it backward and forward.



## ADJUSTING THE SEAT BACKREST

 **WARNING:** Do not place cargo or any objects behind the seat backrest before returning it to the original position. Pull on the seat backrest to make sure that it has fully latched after returning the seat backrest to its original position. An unlatched seat may become dangerous if you stop suddenly or have a crash.

# Front Seats



## ADJUSTING THE SEAT HEIGHT



## POWER SEATS (IF EQUIPPED)

## HEADRESTRAINT COMPONENTS



The front seat head restraints consists of:

- A An energy absorbing head restraint.
- B Two steel stems.
- C Guide sleeve adjust and unlock button.

## ADJUSTING THE HEAD RESTRAINT



**WARNING:** Fully adjust the head restraint before you sit in or operate your vehicle. This will help minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash. Do not adjust the head restraint when your vehicle is moving.



**WARNING:** The head restraint is a safety device. Whenever possible it should be installed and properly adjusted when the seat is occupied. Failure to adjust the head restraint properly could reduce its effectiveness during certain impacts.

# Front Seats



**WARNING:** Adjust the head restraints for all passengers before you drive your vehicle. This will help minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash. Do not adjust the head restraints when your vehicle is moving.

**Note:** Adjust the seat backrest to an upright driving position before adjusting the head restraint. Adjust the head restraint so that the top of it is level with the top of your head and as far forward as possible. Make sure that you remain comfortable. If you are extremely tall, adjust the head restraint to its highest position.

Pull the head restraint up to raise it.

To lower the head restraint:

1. Press and hold the adjust and unlock button.
2. Push the head restraint down.

To tilt the head restraint (if equipped):



1. Adjust the seat backrest to an upright driving or riding position.
2. Pivot the head restraint forward toward your head to the preferred position.

After the head restraint reaches the forward-most tilt position, pivot it forward again to release it to the rearward, untilted position.

**Note:** Do not attempt to force the head restraint backward after it is tilted. Instead, continue tilting it forward until the head restraint releases to the upright position.

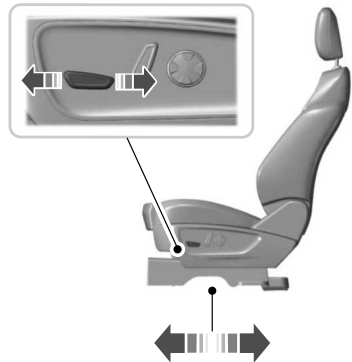
## REMOVING THE HEADRESTRAINT

1. Pull up the head restraint until it reaches its highest position.
2. Press and hold the adjust and unlock button.
3. Pull up the head restraint.

## INSTALLING THE HEAD RESTRAINT

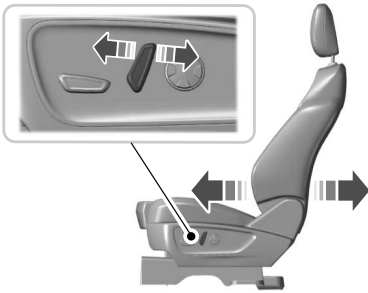
Align the steel stems into the guide sleeves and push the head restraint down until it locks.

## MOVING THE SEAT BACKWARD AND FORWARD

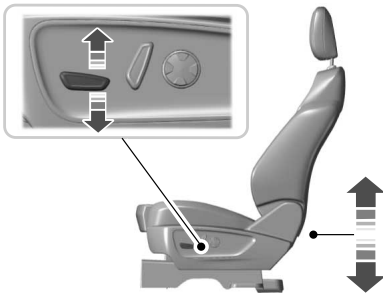


# Front Seats

## ADJUSTING THE SEAT BACKREST



## ADJUSTING THE SEAT HEIGHT



## ADJUSTING THE LUMBAR SUPPORT (If Equipped)



## HEATED SEATS (IF EQUIPPED)

### HEATED SEAT PRECAUTIONS

**⚠ WARNING:** Use caution when using the heated seat if you are unable to feel pain to your skin because of advanced age, chronic illness, diabetes, spinal cord injury, medication, alcohol use, exhaustion or other physical conditions. The heated seat could cause burns even at low temperatures, especially if used for long periods of time. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

**⚠ WARNING:** Do not poke sharp objects into the seat cushion or seat backrest. This could damage the heated seat element and cause it to overheat. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

**⚠ WARNING:** Do not place anything on the seat that blocks the heat, for example a seat cover or a cushion. This could cause the seat to overheat. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

Do not:

- Place heavy objects on the seat.
- Operate the heated seat if water or any other liquid spills on the seat. Allow the seat to dry.

### SWITCHING THE HEATED SEATS ON AND OFF

The vehicle must be running to use this feature.

## Front Seats

---



Press the heated seat symbol to cycle through the various heat settings and off. The more indicators that display, the warmer the temperature of the seat.

**Note:** *The heated seats may remain on after you remote start your vehicle, based on your remote start settings. The heated seats may also turn on when you start your vehicle if they were on when you switched your vehicle off.*

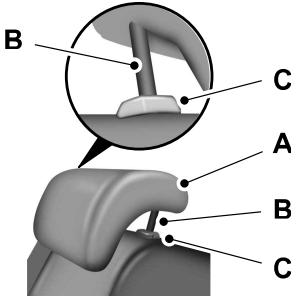


# Rear Seats

## MANUAL SEATS

### HEADRESTRAINT COMPONENTS

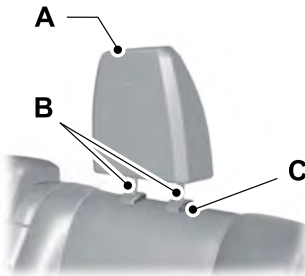
#### Center Head Restraint



The head restraint consists of:

- A An energy absorbing head restraint.
- B Two steel stems.
- C Guide sleeve adjust and unlock button.

#### Outermost Head Restraint



The head restraints consist of:

- A An energy absorbing head restraint.
- B Two steel stems.
- C Guide sleeve unlock and remove button.

### ADJUSTING THE HEAD RESTRAINT

**⚠ WARNING:** Fully adjust the head restraint before you sit in or operate your vehicle. This will help minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash. Do not adjust the head restraint when your vehicle is moving.

**⚠ WARNING:** The head restraint is a safety device. Whenever possible it should be installed and properly adjusted when the seat is occupied. Failure to adjust the head restraint properly could reduce its effectiveness during certain impacts.

**⚠ WARNING:** Adjust the head restraints for all passengers before you drive your vehicle. This will help minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash. Do not adjust the head restraints when your vehicle is moving.

**Note:** *Adjust the seat backrest to an upright driving position before adjusting the head restraint. Adjust the head restraint so that the top of it is level with the top of your head and as far forward as possible. Make sure that you remain comfortable. If you are extremely tall, adjust the head restraint to its highest position.*

Pull the head restraint up to raise it.

To lower the center head restraint:

## Rear Seats

1. Press and hold the adjust and unlock button.
2. Push the head restraint down.


### REMOVING THE HEAD RESTRAINT


1. Pull up the head restraint until it reaches its highest position.
2. Press and hold the unlock and remove button.
3. Pull up the head restraint.


### INSTALLING THE HEAD RESTRAINT

Align the steel stems into the guide sleeves and push the head restraint down until it locks.

### ADJUSTING THE SEAT CUSHION

 **WARNING:** Do not drive your vehicle with a seat that is unlatched or in the folded position. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death in the event of a sudden stop or crash.


 **WARNING:** Do not fold a seat if it is occupied. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.


 **WARNING:** Make sure that cargo and other objects are not trapped under the seat cushion and that you return the seat cushion to the full-down position. Failure to do so may prevent the seat from operating properly, which could increase the risk of serious injury in a crash.




Pull either strap to raise the seat cushion.

### FOLDING THE SEAT BACKREST

 **WARNING:** Do not drive your vehicle with a seat that is unlatched or in the folded position. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death in the event of a sudden stop or crash.

 **WARNING:** Do not fold a seat if it is occupied. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

 **WARNING:** When folding the seat backrest down, take care not to get your fingers caught in the mechanism.

## Rear Seats

---



Pull the strap to fold the backrest forward.

**Note:** Move the front seats forward to avoid interference between the front and rear seats. This provides more access to the back.

### UNFOLDING THE SEAT BACKREST



**WARNING:** When unfolding the seat, make sure that the seatbelts are not trapped behind the seat.



**WARNING:** Make sure that the seats and the seat backrests are secure and fully locked in their catches.

Rotate the seat backrest upright until it latches in the upright position.

**Note:** We recommend that you push the seat backrest upright from the passenger side of the vehicle.

# Rear Occupant Alert System - Vehicles With: SYNC 3

## WHAT IS THE REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM

The rear occupant alert system monitors vehicle conditions and notifies you to check for rear seat occupants when you switch the ignition off.

## HOW DOES THE REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM WORK

The system monitors when rear doors have been opened and closed to indicate the potential presence of an occupant in the rear seat.

A message displays in the information and entertainment display screen and an audible warning sounds when you switch the ignition off after any of the following conditions have been met:

- A rear door is opened or closed while the ignition is on.
- You switch the ignition on within 15 minutes of a rear door opening and closing.
- You switch the ignition on within 15 minutes of the alert having displayed or sounded.

## REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** On hot days, the temperature inside the vehicle can rise very quickly. Exposure of people or animals to these high temperatures for even a short time can cause death or serious heat related injuries, including brain damage. Small children are particularly at risk.



**WARNING:** Do not leave children or pets unattended in your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

## REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM LIMITATIONS

The system does not detect the presence of objects or passengers in the rear seat. It monitors when rear doors are opened and closed.

**Note:** *It is possible to receive an alert when there is no rear seat occupant, but alert conditions are met.*

**Note:** *It is possible to receive no alert when there is an occupant in the rear seat, if alert conditions are not met. For example, if a rear seat occupant does not enter the vehicle through a rear door.*

**Note:** *The audible warning does not sound when the front door is opened before you switch the ignition off.*

## SWITCHING REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM ON AND OFF

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Switch **Rear Occupant Alert** on or off.

**Note:** *The default setting is on.*

**Note:** *Performing a master reset causes the system to switch on again.*

### Semiannual Reminder (If Equipped)

When you switch the system off, a message appears every six months as a reminder that the system is off. You can switch the system back on or leave it off.

# Rear Occupant Alert System - Vehicles With: SYNC 3

---

## REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM INDICATORS



Message
Check rear seats for occupants.

Displays when you switch your vehicle off after the alert conditions are met.

The message displays for a short period of time. Press **Close** to acknowledge and remove the message.

**Note:** Depending on your SYNC version, the graphic may look different from what you see here.

## REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM AUDIBLE WARNINGS

Sounds when you switch your vehicle off after the alert conditions are met.

The warning sounds for a short period of time.

# USB Ports

## LOCATING THE USB PORTS

### Data Transfer USB Ports



The USB Ports could be in the following locations:

- On the lower instrument panel.
- Inside the media bin.
- Inside the center console.

**Note:** *These USB ports can also charge devices.*

**Note:** *Not all USB ports in your vehicle have data transfer capabilities.*

**Note:** *We recommend using only USB-IF certified cables and adapters. Non-certified cables and adapters may not work.*

### Charge Only USB Ports



The USB ports could be in the following locations:

- On the lower instrument panel.
- On the upper instrument panel.
- Inside the media bin.
- Inside the center console.
- On the rear of the center console.
- In the cargo area.

## PLAYING MEDIA USING THE USB PORT



**WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Connect your device to the USB port.



Press the audio button on the feature bar.

Select **Sources**.



Select the USB option.



Press the button to play a track. Press the button again to pause the track.



Press the button to skip to the next track.

Press and hold the button to fast forward through the track.



Press the button once to return to the beginning of a track. Repeatedly press the button to return to previous tracks.

Press and hold the button to fast rewind.

# USB Ports

---

## **CHARGING A DEVICE**

Connect your device to the USB port.

You can use the charger when the vehicle is in accessory mode, when the vehicle is running, or when SYNC is on.

# Power Outlet - Vehicles With: 110V Power Outlet

## WHAT IS THE POWER OUTLET

The power outlet can power devices that use a household plug.

## POWER OUTLET PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Do not keep electrical devices plugged in the power point whenever the device is not in use. Do not use any extension cord with the 110 volt AC power point, since it will defeat the safety protection design. Doing so may cause the power point to overload due to powering multiple devices that can reach beyond the 400 watt load limit and could result in fire or serious injury.



**WARNING:** Do not keep electrical devices plugged in the power point whenever the device is not in use. Power points power up during remote start.

## POWER OUTLET LIMITATIONS

Devices may exceed the power rating shown the device label when plugged in. Unplug the device and switch the ignition on and off to reset the system.

You should not use the power outlet for these types of electric devices:

- Cathode ray tube type televisions.
- Motor loads, for example vacuum cleaners, electric saws and other electric power tools, or compressor-driven refrigerators.

- Measuring devices which process precise data, for example medical equipment or measuring equipment.
- Other appliances requiring an extremely stable power supply, for example microcomputer-controlled electric blankets or touch sensor lamps.

## LOCATING THE POWER OUTLET

The power outlet could be on the instrument panel, the rear of the center console or in the pickup bed.

## POWER OUTLET INDICATORS

The power outlet indicator illuminates to let you know the status of the system.

Indicator Status	Description
On	When the indicator light is on, the outlet is providing power.
Off	When the indicator light is off, there is no power to the outlet.
Flashing	When the indicator light is flashing, the outlet is in a fault mode.

## Fault mode

The power outlet temporarily turns off power if the device exceeds the watt limit.

1. Unplug your device.
2. Switch your vehicle off to let the system cool and reset the fault mode.



## Power Outlet - Vehicles With: 110V Power Outlet

---

3. Switch your vehicle back on, but do not plug your device back in.
4. With your vehicle on, make sure the indicator light remains on.
5. Make sure your device does not exceed the power limits and then plug in your device.

**Note:** *If a fault occurs again, your device may exceed the capacity available from the power outlet.*

# Power Outlet - Vehicles With: 12V Power Outlet

## WHAT IS THE POWER OUTLET

The power outlet can power devices using a 12 V outlet adapter.

## POWER OUTLET PRECAUTIONS

When you switch the vehicle on, you can use the socket to power 12 V appliances with a maximum current rating of 15 A. Do not use the power point over the vehicle capacity of 12 V DC 180 W or a fuse could blow. Do not plug in any device that supplies power to the vehicle through the power points. This could result in damage to vehicle systems. Do not hang any accessory from the accessory plug. Always keep the power point caps closed when not in use. Do not insert objects other than an accessory plug into the power point.

To prevent the battery from running out of charge:

- Do not use the power point longer than necessary when the vehicle is off.
- Do not leave devices plugged in overnight or when you park your vehicle for extended periods.

## LOCATING THE POWER OUTLET

Power outlets may be in the following locations:

- On the lower instrument panel.
- Inside the center console.
- On the front of the center console.
- On the rear of the center console.
- On the passenger side floor panel.
- 3rd row on the quarter trim panels.

## Auxiliary Power Access

The set of wires located in the auxiliary power access makes aftermarket customization easier with a prewired 12V circuit. The circuit is individually fused for 12V connection of electrical accessories.



# Wireless Accessory Charger (If Equipped)

## WHAT IS THE WIRELESS ACCESSORY CHARGER

The wireless accessory charger allows you to charge one compatible Qi wireless charging device on the charging area.

## WIRELESS ACCESSORY CHARGER PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Wireless charging devices can affect the operation of implanted medical devices, including cardiac pacemakers. If you have any implanted medical devices, we recommend that you consult with your physician.

Tests on this equipment show that it complies with part 18 of the FCC Rules.

- This equipment generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and may cause harmful interference to radio communications. There is no guarantee that the interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, please consult the dealer.
- This product is not end-user serviceable.



**WARNING:** Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. The term "IC:" before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

This device complies with Industry Canada licence-exempt RSS standard(s).

Operation is subject to:

- This device may not cause interference.
- This device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

Keep the charging area clean and remove foreign objects prior to charging a device.

Do not place items with a magnetic strip or radio-frequency identification chip, for example passports, parking tickets, transportation passes or credit cards, near the charging area when charging a device. Damage may occur to the magnetic strip or radio-frequency identification chip.

Do not place metal objects, for example remote controls, coins and candy wrappers, on or near the charging area when charging a device. Metal objects may heat up and degrade the charging performance, in addition to causing interruptions in charging.

**Note:** *During charging, the device and the charger could heat up, this is normal. If the battery gets hotter than usual, the device may stop charging.*

## LOCATING THE WIRELESS ACCESSORY CHARGER



The charging area is on the center console or in the media bin below the instrument panel.

## CHARGING A WIRELESS DEVICE

Place the device on the center of the charging surface with the charging side down. The charging stops after your device reaches a full charge.

## Wireless Accessory Charger (If Equipped)

You can use the charger when the vehicle is in accessory mode, when the vehicle is running, or when SYNC is on.



Displays on the status bar when wireless charging is in progress.

**Note:** *The charging performance may be affected if your device is in a case. It may be necessary to remove the case to wirelessly charge your device.*

**Note:** *Software and firmware updates may affect device compatibility, including the use of unofficial software or firmware. You should verify charging functionality with your specific devices in-vehicle.*

## WIRELESS ACCESSORY CHARGER – TROUBLESHOOTING

### WIRELESS ACCESSORY CHARGER – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Behavior	Description
Wireless Charger Active	Message on screen display or pop-up window.	This message appears when wireless charging begins.
Phone misaligned or object between phone and charger detected. Correct the condition to resume charging.	Pop-up window.	The system stops charging your device if the system detects the phone is misaligned, or a foreign metal object is on the charging surface.

## Storage (If Equipped)

### CUP HOLDERS

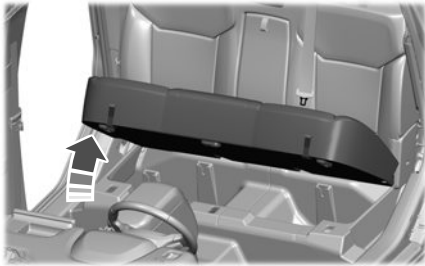
#### CUP HOLDER PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Use caution when stowing items or hot drinks in the cup holders. Items could become loose or spill during hard braking, acceleration or crashes. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

### UNDER SEAT STORAGE

#### LOCATING THE UNDER SEAT STORAGE COMPARTMENT



Lift the front of the rear seat cushion.

### GLASSES HOLDER

#### LOCATING THE GLASSES HOLDER

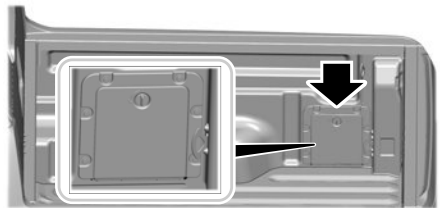
(If Equipped)



The glasses holder is in the overhead console. Press near the rear edge of the door to open.

### PICKUP BED STORAGE (IF EQUIPPED)

#### LOCATING THE PICKUP BED STORAGE

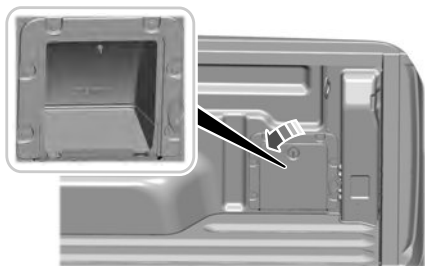


### OPENING THE PICKUP BED STORAGE

To open the pickup bed storage, turn the latch.

## Storage (If Equipped)

---



# Starting and Stopping the Engine

## STARTING AND STOPPING THE ENGINE – PRECAUTIONS

**WARNING:** Extended idling at high engine speeds can produce very high temperatures in the engine and exhaust system, creating the risk of fire or other damage.

**WARNING:** Do not park, idle or drive your vehicle on dry grass or other dry ground cover. The emission system heats up the engine compartment and exhaust system, creating the risk of fire.

**WARNING:** Do not start the engine in a closed garage or in other enclosed areas. Exhaust fumes are toxic. Always open the garage door before you start the engine. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** Do not use starting fluid, for example ether, in the air intake system. Such fluid could cause immediate explosive damage to the engine and possible personal injury.

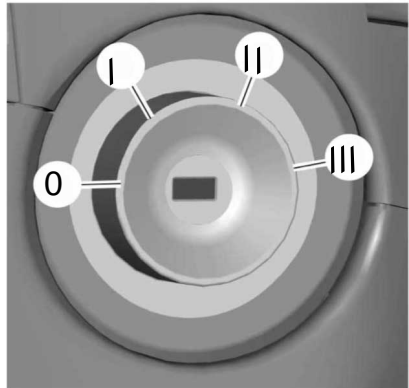
**WARNING:** Exhaust leaks may result in entry of harmful and potentially lethal fumes into the passenger compartment. If you smell exhaust fumes inside your vehicle, have your vehicle inspected immediately. Do not drive if you smell exhaust fumes.

The powertrain control system meets all Canadian interference-causing equipment standard requirements regulating the impulse electrical field or radio noise.

If you stop your vehicle and leave the engine idling for long periods, we recommend that you do one of the following:

- Open the windows at least 1 in (2.5 cm).
- Set your climate control to outside air.

## IGNITION SWITCH (IF EQUIPPED)



### Switching the Ignition Off

Turn the key to position **0**.

### Switching the Ignition to Accessory Mode

Turn the key to position **I**. Electrical accessories, for example the radio, operate without the engine running.

### Switching the Ignition On

Turn the key to position **II**. All electrical circuits and accessories are operational and the warning lamps and indicators illuminate.

# Starting and Stopping the Engine

## Starting the Engine

Turn the key to position **III**. Release the key when the engine starts.

## PUSH BUTTON IGNITION SWITCH (IF EQUIPPED)



## Switching the Ignition Off

When the ignition is on or in accessory mode, press the push button ignition switch once without your foot on the brake pedal.

## Switching the Ignition to Accessory Mode

When the ignition is off, press the push button ignition switch once without your foot on the brake pedal.

All electrical circuits and accessories are operational and the warning lamps and indicators illuminate.

**Note:** Your vehicle has a battery saver feature that shuts your vehicle off when it detects a certain amount of battery drain, or after approximately 30 minutes of inactivity in accessory mode.

## Starting the Engine

With the transmission in park (P), press the brake pedal and press the push button ignition switch. An indicator light on the button illuminates when the ignition is on and when the engine starts.

**Note:** The system may not function if the passive key is close to metal objects or electronic devices, for example keys or a cell phone.

**Note:** A valid key must be inside your vehicle to switch the ignition on and start the engine.

## STARTING THE ENGINE

### STARTING A GASOLINE ENGINE - VEHICLES WITHOUT: PUSH BUTTON START

Before starting your vehicle, check the following:

- Make sure that the headlamps and electrical accessories are off.
  - Make sure that the parking brake is on.
  - Make sure that the transmission is in park (P).
1. Fully press the brake pedal.

**Note:** Do not touch the accelerator pedal.



2. Turn the key to position **III**.

**Note:** The engine may continue cranking for up to 15 seconds or until it starts.

**Note:** The engine takes longer to start at lower temperatures. It may crank for several seconds when very cold.



# Starting and Stopping the Engine

## STARTING A GASOLINE ENGINE - VEHICLES WITH: PUSH BUTTON START

Before starting your vehicle, check the following:

- Make sure that the headlamps and electrical accessories are off.
- Make sure that the parking brake is on.
- Make sure that the transmission is in park (P).

1. Fully press the brake pedal.

**Note:** Do not touch the accelerator pedal.



2. Press the push button ignition switch.

**Note:** The engine may continue cranking for up to 15 seconds or until it starts.

**Note:** The engine takes longer to start at lower temperatures. It may crank for several seconds when very cold.

## STARTING A HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE SYSTEM - VEHICLES WITHOUT: PUSH BUTTON START

Before starting your vehicle, check the following:

- Make sure that the headlamps and electrical accessories are off.
- Make sure that the parking brake is on.
- Make sure that the transmission is in park (P).

1. Fully press the brake pedal.

**Note:** Do not touch the accelerator pedal.



2. Turn the key to position III.

**Note:** The green ready indicator illuminates letting you know that your vehicle is ready for driving. Since your vehicle is equipped with a silent key start, the engine may not start when your vehicle starts.

When the engine starts for the first time on your drive, the idle speed increases, this helps to warm up the engine. If the engine idle speed does not slow down, have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer.

## STARTING A HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE SYSTEM - VEHICLES WITH: PUSH BUTTON START

Before starting your vehicle, check the following:

- Make sure the headlamps and electrical accessories are off.
- Make sure the parking brake is on.
- Make sure the transmission is in park (P).

**Note:** Do not touch the accelerator pedal.

1. Fully press the brake pedal.



2. Press the push button ignition switch.

**Note:** The green ready indicator illuminates letting you know that your vehicle is ready for driving. Since your vehicle is equipped with a silent key start, the engine may not start when your vehicle starts.

# Starting and Stopping the Engine

When the engine starts for the first time on your drive, the idle speed increases, this helps to warm up the engine. If the engine idle speed does not slow down, have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer.

The system does not function if:

- The passive key frequencies are jammed.
- The key battery has no charge.

## RESTARTING THE ENGINE AFTER STOPPING IT

The system allows you to start the engine within 10 seconds of switching it off, even if it does not detect a valid passive key.

Within 10 seconds of switching the engine off, fully press the brake pedal and press the push button ignition switch. After 10 seconds, you can no longer start the engine if the system does not detect a valid passive key.

When you start the engine, it remains running until you press the push button ignition switch, even if your vehicle does not detect a valid passive key. If you open and close a door when the engine is running, the system searches for a valid passive key.

## ENGINE BLOCK HEATER (IF EQUIPPED)

### ENGINE BLOCK HEATER PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Failure to follow engine block heater instructions could result in property damage or serious personal injury.



**WARNING:** Do not use your heater with ungrounded electrical systems or two-pronged adapters. There is a risk of electrical shock.



**WARNING:** Do not fully close the hood, or allow it to drop under its own weight when using the engine block heater. This could damage the power cable and may cause an electrical short resulting in fire, injury and property damage.

We recommend that you do the following for a safe and correct operation:

- Use a 16-gauge outdoor extension cord that is product certified by Underwriter's Laboratory (UL) or Canadian Standards Association (CSA). This extension cord must be suitable for use outdoors, in cold temperatures, and be clearly marked Suitable for Use with Outdoor Appliances. Do not use an indoor extension cord outdoors. This could result in an electric shock or become a fire hazard.
- Use as short an extension cord as possible.
- Do not use multiple extension cords.
- Make sure that when in operation, the extension cord plug and engine block heater cord plug connections are free and clear of water. This could cause an electric shock or fire.
- If the engine block heater cord is under the hood, do not remove the wiring from its original location. Do not close the hood on the extension wiring.
- Park your vehicle in a clean area, clear of combustible materials.
- Firmly connect the engine block heater cord and the extension cord.

# Starting and Stopping the Engine

- Check the extension cord for heat anywhere when the system has been operating for approximately 30 minutes.
- Unplug and properly stow the system before starting and driving your vehicle. The protective cover seals the terminals of the engine block heater cord plug when not in use.
- Check the engine block heater system for proper operation before winter.

## HOW DOES THE ENGINE BLOCK HEATER WORK

The engine block heater warms the engine coolant. This allows the climate control system to quickly respond. The equipment includes a heater element installed in the engine block and a wire harness. You can connect the system to a grounded 220-240 volt AC electrical source.

**Note:** *The engine block heater is most effective when outdoor temperatures are below 0°F (-18°C).*

## USING THE ENGINE BLOCK HEATER

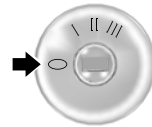
Make sure the receptacle terminals are clean and dry prior to use. Clean them with a dry cloth if necessary.

The heater uses 0.4 to 1.0 kilowatt-hours of energy per hour of use. The system does not have a thermostat. It achieves maximum temperature after approximately three hours of operation. Using the engine block heater longer than three hours does not improve system performance and unnecessarily uses electricity.

## STOPPING THE ENGINE

### STOPPING THE ENGINE WHEN YOUR VEHICLE IS STATIONARY - VEHICLES WITHOUT: PUSH BUTTON START

1. Shift into park (P).
2. Apply the parking brake.
3. Wait until the engine reaches idle speed.



4. Turn the key to position 0.

### STOPPING THE ENGINE WHEN YOUR VEHICLE IS STATIONARY - VEHICLES WITH: PUSH BUTTON START

1. Shift into park (P).
2. Apply the parking brake.
3. Wait until the engine reaches idle speed.



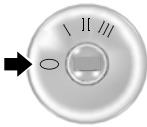
4. Press the push button ignition switch.

# Starting and Stopping the Engine

## STOPPING THE ENGINE WHEN YOUR VEHICLE IS MOVING - VEHICLES WITHOUT: PUSH BUTTON START



**WARNING:** Switching off the engine when your vehicle is still moving results in a significant decrease in braking assistance. Higher effort is required to apply the brakes and to stop your vehicle. A significant decrease in steering assistance could also occur. The steering does not lock, but higher effort could be required to steer your vehicle. When you switch the ignition off, some electrical circuits, for example airbags, also turn off. If you unintentionally switch the ignition off, shift into neutral (N) and restart the engine.



1. Turn the key to position **0**.
2. Shift into neutral and use the brakes to bring your vehicle to a safe stop.
3. Shift into park (P).
4. Apply the parking brake.

## STOPPING THE ENGINE WHEN YOUR VEHICLE IS MOVING - VEHICLES WITH: PUSH BUTTON START



**WARNING:** Switching off the engine when your vehicle is still moving results in a significant decrease in braking assistance. Higher effort is required to apply the brakes and to stop your vehicle. A significant decrease in

steering assistance could also occur. The steering does not lock, but higher effort could be required to steer your vehicle. When you switch the ignition off, some electrical circuits, for example airbags, also turn off. If you unintentionally switch the ignition off, shift into neutral (N) and restart the engine.



1. Press and hold the push button ignition switch until the engine stops, or press it three times within two seconds.
2. Shift into neutral and use the brakes to bring your vehicle to a safe stop.
3. Shift into park (P).
4. Apply the parking brake.

## AUTOMATIC ENGINE STOP (IF EQUIPPED)

### WHAT IS AUTOMATIC ENGINE STOP

Automatic engine stop is a feature that switches the engine off if it has been idling for an extended period to help you save fuel.

# Starting and Stopping the Engine

## HOW DOES AUTOMATIC ENGINE STOP WORK

Automatic engine stop turns the engine off. The ignition also turns off in order to save battery power. Before the engine shuts down, a message appears in the information display showing a timer counting down. If you do not intervene within 30 seconds, the engine shuts down. Another message appears in the information display to inform you that the engine has shut down in order to save fuel. Start your vehicle as you normally do.

## SWITCHING AUTOMATIC ENGINE STOP ON AND OFF

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select **Settings**.
2. Select **Vehicle Settings**.
3. Switch **30min Max Idle** on or off.

**Note:** *You cannot permanently switch off the automatic shutdown. If you switch it off, it turns on each time you switch the ignition on.*

## OVERRIDING AUTOMATIC ENGINE STOP

You can stop the engine shutdown, or reset the timer, at any point before the 30-second countdown has expired by doing any of the following:

- Pressing the brake pedal or accelerator pedal.
- Pressing the **OK** or **RESET** button during the countdown.

**Note:** *You cannot permanently switch off the automatic engine shutdown feature. When you switch it off temporarily, it turns on at the next ignition cycle.*

## STARTING AND STOPPING THE ENGINE – TROUBLESHOOTING

### STARTING AND STOPPING THE ENGINE – WARNING LAMPS

#### Malfunction Indicator Lamp



If it illuminates when the engine is running, the on-board diagnostics system is detecting a malfunction of the vehicle emission control system.

If it flashes, engine misfire could be occurring. Increased exhaust gas temperatures could damage the catalytic converter or other vehicle components. Avoid heavy acceleration and deceleration, and have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

#### Powertrain Warning Lamp



If it illuminates when the engine is running, this indicates a powertrain or four-wheel drive fault. If it flashes when you are driving, immediately reduce the vehicle speed. Avoid heavy acceleration and deceleration, and have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

If both lamps illuminate when the engine is running, stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Continuing to drive your vehicle could cause reduced power or the engine to stop. Switch the ignition off and attempt to restart the engine. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

# Starting and Stopping the Engine

---

## STARTING AND STOPPING THE ENGINE – INFORMATION MESSAGES

<b>Message</b>	<b>Action</b>
Cranking Time Exceeded	Displays if you exceed the starting time limit. You cannot attempt to start the engine for 15 minutes. If you cannot start the engine after 15 minutes passes, have your vehicle immediately checked.
Starting System Fault	Displays if you are unable to start your vehicle with a correctly coded key. The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
No Key Detected	Displays if the system does not detect a valid passive key.

# Starting and Stopping the Engine

## STARTING AND STOPPING THE ENGINE – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS - VEHICLES WITHOUT: PUSH BUTTON START

### Why is the engine idle speed high when I am starting the engine?

The speed at which the engine idles immediately after starting is optimized to minimize vehicle emissions and maximize cabin comfort and fuel economy.

### Why does the engine not crank?

You can only attempt to start the engine for a limited amount of time before the starting system temporarily disables. If you exceed the starting time limit, a message may appear and you cannot attempt to start the engine for at least 15 minutes.

### Why do I experience different driving characteristics?

If you disconnect the battery, your vehicle may exhibit some unusual driving characteristics for approximately 5 mi (8 km) after you reconnect it. This is because the engine management system must realign itself with the engine. You can disregard any unusual driving characteristics during this period.

### Why can I not start the engine?

If you cannot start the engine after 3 attempts, wait 10 seconds and do the following:

1. Fully press the brake pedal or the clutch pedal.

**Note:** Make sure that the parking brake is applied.

**Note:** Make sure that the transmission is in park (P) or neutral (N).

2. Fully press the accelerator pedal and hold it there.



3. Turn the key to position III and wait until the engine stops cranking.
4. Release the accelerator pedal.
5. Turn the key to position III.

## STARTING AND STOPPING THE ENGINE – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS - VEHICLES WITH: PUSH BUTTON START

### Why is the engine idle speed high when I am starting the engine?

The speed at which the engine idles immediately after starting is optimized to minimize vehicle emissions and maximize cabin comfort and fuel economy.

### Why does the engine not crank?

You can only attempt to start the engine for a limited amount of time before the starting system temporarily disables. If you exceed the starting time limit, a message may appear and you cannot attempt to start the engine for at least 15 minutes.

### Why do I experience different driving characteristics?

If you disconnect the battery, your vehicle may exhibit some unusual driving characteristics for approximately 5 mi (8 km) after you reconnect it. This is because the engine management system must realign itself with the engine. You can disregard any unusual driving characteristics during this period.

# Starting and Stopping the Engine

---

## Why can I not start the engine?

If you cannot start the engine after 3 attempts, wait 10 seconds and do the following:

1. Fully press the brake pedal or the clutch pedal.

**Note:** Make sure that the parking brake is applied.

**Note:** Make sure that the transmission is in park (P) or neutral (N).

2. Fully press the accelerator pedal and hold it there.
3. Press the push button ignition switch.

**Note:** The engine cranks for a short period of time and then it stops.

4. Release the accelerator pedal.



5. Press the push button ignition switch.

## Why does the system not detect a passive key?

If the system does not detect a passive key and you are unable to start the engine, insert the passive key into the backup position and press the push button ignition switch to start the engine.



# Hybrid Electric Vehicle Information - Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV)

---

## WHAT IS A HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE

A hybrid vehicle has an electric motor and a high voltage battery combined with a gasoline engine.

## HOW DOES A HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE WORK

The hybrid vehicle combines electric and gasoline propulsion to provide optimal performance and improved efficiency.

## HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE DRIVING CHARACTERISTICS

The gasoline engine starts and stops to provide power when required and to save fuel when not needed. When coasting at low speeds, coming to a stop or standing, the gas engine normally shuts down and your vehicle operates in electric-only mode.

Conditions that may cause the gasoline engine to start or remain running include:

- Considerable vehicle acceleration.
- Driving uphill.
- The high voltage battery charge level is low.
- Heating or cooling the vehicle interior in high or low outside temperatures.
- The gasoline engine is below normal operating temperature.
- Towing a trailer.
- Certain selectable drive modes could cause the engine to run. See **Selecting a Drive Mode** (page 226).

Your hybrid vehicle also comes with standard hydraulic braking and regenerative braking. Regenerative braking is performed by your transmission and captures brake energy and stores it in the high voltage battery.

You could also notice that your engine continues to run instead of shutting off during extended downhill driving. The engine stays on during this engine braking but is not using any fuel.

You could also hear a slight whine or whistle when operating your vehicle. This is the normal operation of the electric motor in the hybrid system.

## HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE INDICATORS

**READY** When you start your vehicle, a green READY indicator light appears in the instrument cluster letting you know that your vehicle is ready for driving.

The engine may not start because your vehicle has a silent key start feature. This fuel saving feature allows your vehicle to be ready to drive without requiring the gas engine to be running.

The indicator remains on when your vehicle is on, whether the engine is running or not, to indicate your vehicle is capable of movement using the electric motor, gas engine or both.

Typically, the engine does not start unless the vehicle is cold, a climate control change is requested or you press the accelerator pedal.

# Hybrid Electric Vehicle Information - Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV)

## HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE INFORMATION – TROUBLESHOOTING

### HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE INFORMATION – WARNING LAMPS



It illuminates if your vehicle has an electrical component fault or failure that causes your vehicle to shutdown or enter a limited operating mode. A message may appear in the instrument cluster display.

### HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE INFORMATION – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
Stop Safely Now	Displays when a malfunction occurs in the high voltage electric system. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

### HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE INFORMATION – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

#### How long is the high voltage battery system designed to last?

The high voltage battery system is designed to last the life of your vehicle.

#### Does the high voltage battery require maintenance?

The high voltage battery does not require maintenance.

#### What should I do if the vehicle runs out of fuel and the high voltage battery is out of charge?

Refuel and start your vehicle normally. The engine will recharge the high voltage battery.

#### Why does the engine sometimes start at key-on?

The vehicle's computer will determine if an engine start is required at key-on. It starts the engine when necessary for cabin heating, windshield defrost, or if the outside temperature is low.

#### Can I put E15 or E85 in my vehicle, and how will it affect my fuel economy?

Your hybrid vehicle can use E15 (15% ethanol, 85% gasoline) fuel, but you may notice slightly reduced fuel economy because ethanol contains less energy per gallon than gasoline. Your hybrid vehicle is not designed to use E85 (85% ethanol).

#### Why does it take a long time before the engine shuts down?

There are several reasons the engine stays on for an extended amount of time when you first start it. One common reason is to make sure that the emissions components are warm enough to minimize tailpipe emission. As the climate gets cooler, the engine-on time is extended.

#### Why does my engine stay on when it is extremely cold outside?

In order to make sure that the climate control system can begin heating the cabin or defrosting the windshield as soon as a driver requests it, the engine coolant temperature has to be kept sufficiently hot. Keeping the engine on is required to maintain the correct coolant temperature.

# Auto-Start-Stop - Gasoline

## WHAT IS AUTO-START-STOP

The system helps reduce fuel consumption by stopping and restarting the engine when your vehicle has stopped. The engine restarts when you release the brake pedal.

In some situations, your vehicle could restart before you release the brake pedal, for example:

- To maintain interior comfort.
- To recharge the battery.

## AUTO-START-STOP PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Apply the parking brake, shift into park (P), switch the ignition off and remove the key before you leave your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Apply the parking brake, shift into park (P), switch the ignition off and remove the key before you open the hood or have any service or repair work completed. If you do not switch the ignition off, the engine could restart at any time. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

## SWITCHING AUTO-START-STOP ON AND OFF

The system turns on when you switch the ignition on.



Press the button to switch the system off.

**Note:** *OFF* illuminates in the switch.

**Note:** *Deactivating the system using the button lasts only one key cycle.*

Press the button again to switch the system back on.

**Note:** *The system turns off if it detects a malfunction. If the system malfunctions, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.*

## STOPPING THE ENGINE

Stop your vehicle, keep your foot on the brake pedal and the transmission in drive (D).

**Note:** *Power assist steering turns off when the engine stops.*

## RESTARTING THE ENGINE

Release the brake pedal or press the accelerator pedal.

A message appears in the information display if the system requires you to take action.

## AUTO-START-STOP INDICATORS



**WARNING:** The system may require the engine to automatically restart when the auto-start-stop indicator illuminates green or flashes amber. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



The Auto-Start-Stop indicator illuminates green when the engine stops. It flashes amber and a message appears when you need to take action.

# Auto-Start-Stop - Gasoline



The Auto-Start-Stop indicator illuminates gray with a strikethrough when the system is not available.

**Note:** You can display the reason why the system is not available in the information display.

## AUTO-START-STOP – TROUBLESHOOTING

### AUTO-START-STOP – INFORMATION MESSAGES

A message appears in the information display if the system requires you to take action.

Message	Condition	Action
Auto StartStop Press Brake to Start Engine	The system needs to restart the engine but requires your confirmation.	Press the brake pedal to restart the engine.
Auto StartStop Press a Pedal to Start Engine	The system needs to restart the engine but requires your confirmation.	Press the brake pedal or the accelerator pedal to restart the engine.

# Auto-Start-Stop - Gasoline

---

## **AUTO-START-STOP – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS**

### **Why does the engine not always stop when I expect it to?**

The system is designed to work in a way that complements other vehicle systems, allowing them to operate at optimum performance.

The system does not stop the engine if:

- The driver door is open.
- Your vehicle is at high altitude.
- The heated windshield is on.
- The engine is warming up.
- The outside temperature is too low or too high.
- The battery charge is low.
- The battery temperature is outside the optimal operating range.
- The engine is required to run to maintain interior climate and reduce fogging.

### **Why does the engine sometimes restart when I do not expect it to?**

The system is designed to work in a way that complements other vehicle systems, allowing them to operate at optimum performance.

The system restarts the engine if:

- You switch the heated windshield on.
- You switch maximum defrost on.
- Your vehicle starts to roll downhill in neutral.
- The engine is required to run to maintain adequate brake system assistance.
- The engine is required to run to maintain interior climate and reduce fogging.

### **Can I permanently switch the system off?**

No. The system plays an important role in reducing the fuel consumption and the CO<sub>2</sub> emissions.

### **Will the frequent engine starts cause parts to wear out?**

Your vehicle has an enhanced battery and starter motor that are designed for the increased number of engine starts.

# Fuel and Refueling

## FUEL AND REFUELING PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Do not overfill the fuel tank. The pressure in an overfilled tank may cause leakage and lead to fuel spray and fire.



**WARNING:** The fuel system may be under pressure. If you hear a hissing sound near the fuel filler inlet, do not refuel until the sound stops. Otherwise, fuel may spray out, which could cause serious personal injury.



**WARNING:** Fuels can cause serious injury or death if misused or mishandled.



**WARNING:** Fuel may contain benzene, which is a cancer-causing agent.



**WARNING:** When refueling always shut the engine off and never allow sparks or open flames near the fuel tank filler valve. Never smoke or use a cell phone while refueling. Fuel vapor is extremely hazardous under certain conditions. Avoid inhaling excess fumes.



**WARNING:** Read and follow all the instructions on the pump island.

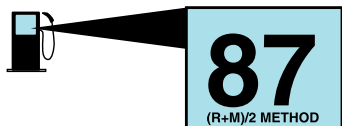
Follow these guidelines when refueling:

- Extinguish all smoking materials and any open flames before refueling your vehicle.
- Switch the engine off before refueling.
- Automotive fuels can be harmful or fatal if swallowed. Fuel is highly toxic and if swallowed can cause death or permanent injury. If fuel is swallowed immediately call a physician, even if no symptoms are immediately apparent. The toxic effects of fuel may not be apparent for hours.
- Avoid inhaling fuel vapors. Inhaling fuel vapor can lead to eye and respiratory tract irritation. In severe cases, excessive or prolonged breathing of fuel vapor can cause serious illness and permanent injury.
- Avoid getting fuel in your eyes. If you splash fuel in your eyes, immediately remove contact lenses, if worn, flush with water for 15 minutes and seek medical attention. Failure to seek proper medical attention could lead to permanent injury.
- Fuels can be harmful if absorbed through the skin. If you splash fuel on your skin, clothing or both, promptly remove contaminated clothing and thoroughly wash your skin with soap and water. Repeated or prolonged skin contact causes skin irritation.
- Be particularly careful if you are taking Antabuse or other forms of Disulfiram for the treatment of alcoholism. Breathing fuel vapors could cause an adverse reaction, serious personal injury or sickness. Immediately call a physician if you experience any adverse reactions.

# Fuel and Refueling

## FUEL QUALITY

### SELECTING THE CORRECT FUEL



Your vehicle operates on regular unleaded gasoline with a minimum pump (R+M)/2 octane rating of 87.

Some fuel stations, particularly those in high altitude areas, offer fuels posted as regular unleaded gasoline with an octane rating below 87. The use of these fuels could result in engine damage that will not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.

For best overall vehicle and engine performance, premium fuel with an octane rating of 91 or higher is recommended. The performance gained by using premium fuel is most noticeable in hot weather as well as other conditions, for example when towing a trailer. See **Towing a Trailer** (page 263).

Do not be concerned if the engine sometimes knocks lightly. However, if the engine knocks heavily while using fuel with the recommended octane rating, contact an authorized dealer to prevent any engine damage.

We recommend Top Tier detergent gasolines, where available to help minimize engine deposits and maintain optimal vehicle and engine performance.

For additional information, visit [www.toptiergas.com](http://www.toptiergas.com).

**Note:** Use of any fuel for which the vehicle was not designed can impair the emission control system, cause loss of vehicle performance, and cause damage to the engine which may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.

Do not use:

- Diesel fuel.
- Fuels containing kerosene or paraffin.
- Fuel containing more than 15% ethanol or E85 fuel.
- Fuels containing methanol.
- Fuels containing metallic-based additives, including manganese-based compounds.
- Fuels containing the octane booster additive, methylcyclopentadienyl manganese tricarbonyl (MMT).
- Leaded fuel, using leaded fuel is prohibited by law.

The use of fuels with metallic compounds such as methylcyclopentadienyl manganese tricarbonyl, which is a manganese-based fuel additive, will impair engine performance and affect the emission control system.

## LOCATING THE FUEL FILLER FUNNEL

The fuel filler funnel is behind the right-hand side rear seat with the vehicle jack.

# Fuel and Refueling

## RUNNING OUT OF FUEL

### FILLING A PORTABLE FUEL CONTAINER

**WARNING:** Flow of fuel through a fuel pump nozzle can produce static electricity. This can cause a fire if you are filling an ungrounded fuel container.

Use the following guidelines to avoid electrostatic charge build-up, which can produce a spark, when filling an ungrounded fuel container:

- Only use an approved fuel container to transfer fuel to your vehicle. Place the container on the ground when filling it.
- Do not fill a fuel container when it is inside your vehicle (including the cargo area).
- Keep the fuel pump nozzle in contact with the fuel container when filling it.
- Do not use a device that holds the fuel pump nozzle lever in the fill position.

### ADDING FUEL FROM A PORTABLE FUEL CONTAINER

**WARNING:** Do not insert the nozzle of a fuel container or an aftermarket funnel into the fuel filler neck. This may damage the fuel system filler neck or its seal and cause fuel to run onto the ground.

**WARNING:** Do not pry open the fuel tank filler valve. This could damage the fuel system. Failure to follow this instruction could result in fire, personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** Do not dispose of fuel in the household refuse or the public sewage system. Use an authorized waste disposal facility.

When refueling the vehicle fuel tank from a fuel container, use the fuel filler funnel included with your vehicle. See **Locating the Fuel Filler Funnel** (page 172).

**Note:** Do not use aftermarket funnels as they may not work with the capless fuel system and can damage it.

When refueling the vehicle fuel tank from a fuel container, do the following:

1. Fully open the fuel filler door.



2. Fully insert the fuel filler funnel into the fuel filler inlet.
3. Add fuel to your vehicle from the fuel container.
4. Remove the fuel filler funnel.
5. Fully close the fuel filler door.
6. Clean the fuel filler funnel and place it back in your vehicle or correctly dispose of it.



# Fuel and Refueling

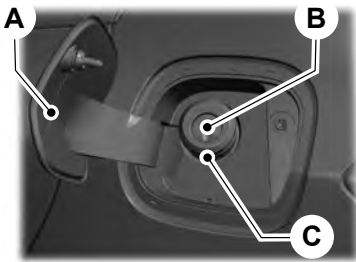
**Note:** If your vehicle runs out of fuel add a minimum of 1.3 gal (5 L) of fuel to restart the engine.

**Note:** You may need to switch the ignition from off to on several times after refueling to allow the fuel system to pump the fuel from the tank to the engine. When restarting, cranking time takes a few seconds longer than normal.

**Note:** Extra funnels can be purchased from an authorized dealer if you choose to dispose of the funnel.

## REFUELING

### REFUELING SYSTEM OVERVIEW



- A Fuel filler door.
- B Fuel tank filler valve.
- C Fuel tank filler pipe.

## REFUELING YOUR VEHICLE - EXCLUDING: HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (HEV)

**WARNING:** When refueling always shut the engine off and never allow sparks or open flames near the fuel tank filler valve. Never smoke or use a cell phone while refueling. Fuel vapor is extremely hazardous under certain conditions. Avoid inhaling excess fumes.

**WARNING:** The fuel system may be under pressure. If you hear a hissing sound near the fuel filler inlet, do not refuel until the sound stops. Otherwise, fuel may spray out, which could cause serious personal injury.

**WARNING:** Do not pry open the fuel tank filler valve. This could damage the fuel system. Failure to follow this instruction could result in fire, personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** Do not remove the fuel pump nozzle from its fully inserted position when refueling.

**WARNING:** Stop refueling when the fuel pump nozzle automatically shuts off for the first time. Failure to follow this will fill the expansion space in the fuel tank and could lead to fuel overflowing.

**WARNING:** Do not overfill the fuel tank. The pressure in an overfilled tank may cause leakage and lead to fuel spray and fire.

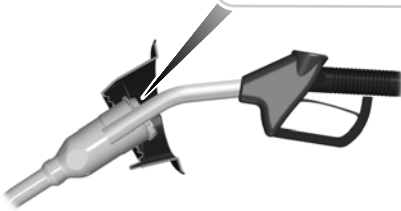
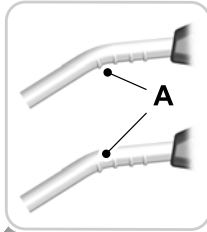
**WARNING:** Wait at least five seconds before removing the fuel pump nozzle to allow any residual fuel to drain into the fuel tank.

# Fuel and Refueling

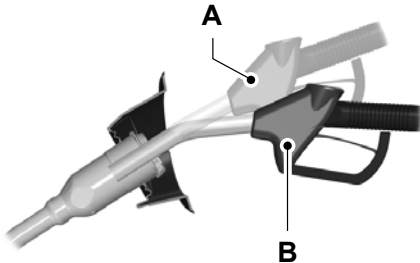


**WARNING:** Read and follow all the instructions on the pump island.

1. Fully open the fuel filler door.
2. Select the correct fuel pump nozzle for your vehicle.

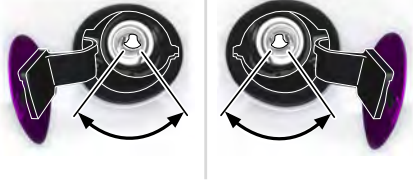


3. Insert the fuel pump nozzle up to the first notch on the nozzle A. Keep the fuel pump nozzle resting on the fuel tank filler pipe.

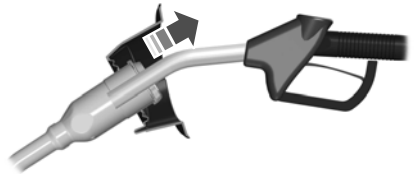


E139203

4. Hold the fuel pump nozzle in position B when refueling. Holding the fuel pump nozzle in position A can affect the flow of fuel and shut off the fuel pump nozzle before the fuel tank is full.



5. Operate the fuel pump nozzle within the area shown.



6. When the nozzle shuts off, wait at least 5 seconds, then slightly raise the fuel pump nozzle and slowly remove it.
7. Fully close the fuel filler door.

Do not attempt to start the engine if you have filled the fuel tank with incorrect fuel. Incorrect fuel use could cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty. Have your vehicle immediately checked.

# Fuel and Refueling

## REFUELING YOUR VEHICLE - HYBRIDELECTRIC VEHICLE (HEV)

**WARNING:** When refueling always shut the engine off and never allow sparks or open flames near the fuel tank filler valve. Never smoke or use a cell phone while refueling. Fuel vapor is extremely hazardous under certain conditions. Avoid inhaling excess fumes.

**WARNING:** The fuel system may be under pressure. If you hear a hissing sound near the fuel filler inlet, do not refuel until the sound stops. Otherwise, fuel may spray out, which could cause serious personal injury.

**WARNING:** Do not pry open the fuel tank filler valve. This could damage the fuel system. Failure to follow this instruction could result in fire, personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** Do not remove the fuel pump nozzle from its fully inserted position when refueling.

**WARNING:** Stop refueling when the fuel pump nozzle automatically shuts off for the first time. Failure to follow this will fill the expansion space in the fuel tank and could lead to fuel overflowing.

**WARNING:** Do not overfill the fuel tank. The pressure in an overfilled tank may cause leakage and lead to fuel spray and fire.

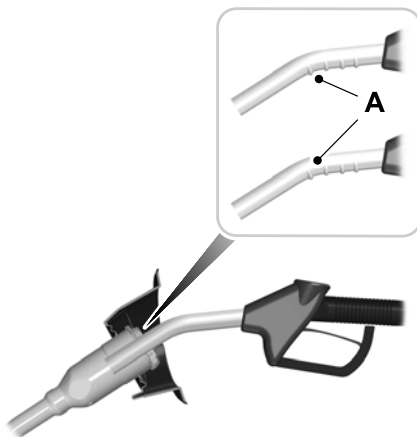
**WARNING:** Wait at least five seconds before removing the fuel pump nozzle to allow any residual fuel to drain into the fuel tank.

**WARNING:** Read and follow all the instructions on the pump island.

1. When you stop your vehicle, shift into park (P) and switch the ignition off.

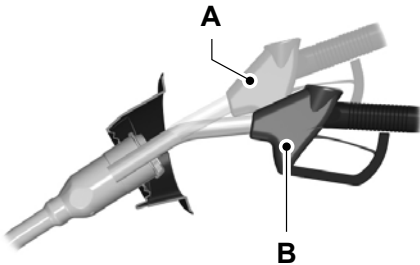


2. Press the button on the left side of the instrument panel next to the headlamp switch to open the fuel filler door. The fuel filler door can take up to 15 seconds to open before you can insert a fuel filler nozzle.



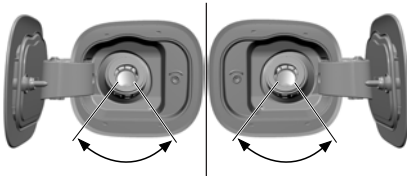
# Fuel and Refueling

3. Insert the fuel pump nozzle up to the first notch on the nozzle A. Keep it resting on the cover of the fuel tank filler pipe opening.

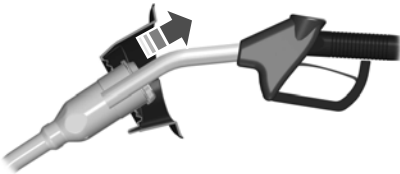


E139203

4. Hold the fuel pump nozzle in position B when refueling. Holding the fuel pump nozzle in position A can affect the flow of fuel and shut off the fuel pump nozzle before the fuel tank is full.



5. Operate the fuel pump nozzle within the area shown.



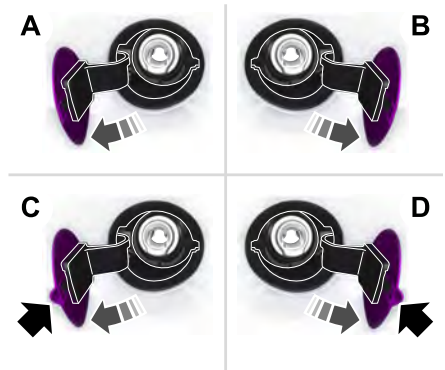
6. When the nozzle shuts off, wait at least 5 seconds, then slightly raise the fuel pump nozzle and slowly remove it.
7. Fully close the fuel filler door.

Complete the refueling process within 20 minutes. If 20 minutes elapses, press the button on the left side of the instrument panel again. Fuel pump nozzle automatic shut off could occur if you do not press the button on the left side instrument panel.

Do not attempt to start the engine if you have filled the fuel tank with incorrect fuel. Incorrect fuel use could cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty. Have your vehicle immediately checked.

## MANUALLY OPENING THE FUEL FILLER DOOR - EXCLUDING: HYBRIDELECTRIC VEHICLE (HEV)

Your vehicle does not have a fuel tank filler cap.



- A Left-hand side. To open the fuel filler door, press the center rear edge of the fuel filler door and then release.
- B Right-hand side. To open the fuel filler door, press the center rear edge of the fuel filler door and then release.

# Fuel and Refueling

- C Left-hand side. Pull the rear of the fuel filler door to open it.
- D Right-hand side. Pull the rear of the fuel filler door to open it.

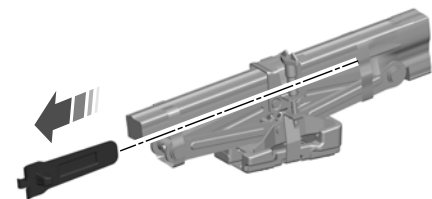
- 2. Insert the emergency opening tool in the position shown and gently pry the fuel door open.

**Note:** Do not press the fuel filler door release button if the emergency opening tool has been used.

## MANUALLY OPENING THE FUEL FILLER DOOR - HYBRID/ELECTRIC VEHICLE (HEV)

**Note:** The transmission must be in park (P) or neutral (N).

To manually open the fuel door do the following:



- 1. Retrieve the emergency opening tool.

**Note:** The emergency opening tool is with the jack and tool bag. See **Changing a Flat Tire** (page 346).

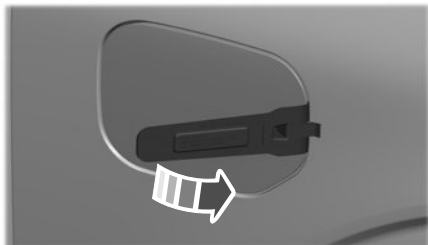


Using the emergency opening tool can cause the tappet to temporarily dislodge from the fuel filler door and remain attached to the fuel filler door opening. If you press the fuel filler door release button after using the emergency opening tool, locate the tappet and reinsert it into the fuel door.

## FUEL TANK CAPACITY

### Advertised Capacity

The advertised capacity is the maximum amount of fuel that you can add to the fuel tank when the fuel gauge indicates empty.



# Fuel and Refueling

In addition, the fuel tank contains an empty reserve. The empty reserve is an unspecified amount of fuel that remains in the fuel tank when the fuel gauge indicates empty.

**Note:** *The amount of fuel in the empty reserve varies and should not be relied upon to increase driving range.*

## FUEL AND REFUELING – TROUBLESHOOTING

### FUEL AND REFUELING – WARNING LAMPS



If it illuminates when you are driving, refuel as soon as possible.

## FUEL AND REFUELING – INFORMATION MESSAGES - EXCLUDING: HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (HEV)

Message	Action
Fuel Level Low	An early reminder of a low fuel condition.
Check Fuel Fill Inlet	The fuel fill inlet may not be properly closed.
Fuel door ajar Close fully to avoid ""Check Engine"" light	A reminder to close the fuel door. Failure to follow this instruction can cause the check engine light to illuminate.
Refuel Error See Manual	There is an error in attempting to refill your vehicle.

# Fuel and Refueling

## FUELANDREFUELING – INFORMATION MESSAGES - HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (HEV)

Message	Action
Fuel Level Low	An early reminder of a low fuel condition.
Check Fuel Fill Inlet	The fuel fill inlet may not be properly closed.
Please wait for fuel door to open	The information message appears while the fuel system is depressurizing with the fuel filler door closed. Wait for the fuel system to depressurize and for the fuel filler door to unlatch.
Fuel Door Open	The information message appears when the fuel system has depressurized and opened the fuel filler door. Fully open the fuel filler door to refuel and fully close the fuel filler door when refueling is complete.
Fuel door ajar Close fully to avoid "Check Engine" light	Your vehicle is equipped with a sealed fuel system that requires the fuel filler door to be fully closed after refueling. This warning message appears when the fuel filler door is ajar. Please fully close the fuel filler door to avoid a "Check Engine" Light. If you see this message and a "Check Engine" lamp illuminates, please fully close the fuel filler door. The "Check Engine" Light should clear within five seconds. If the "Check Engine" light persists, please see your dealer.
Refuel Error See Manual	The information message appears when the fuel system fails to depressurize, or the fuel filler door fails to open. You could have to use the fuel filler door manual override lever when opening the fuel door.

# Catalytic Converter

## WHAT IS THE CATALYTIC CONVERTER

The catalytic converter is part of your vehicle's emissions system and filters harmful pollutants from the exhaust gas.

## CATALYTIC CONVERTER PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Do not park, idle or drive your vehicle on dry grass or other dry ground cover. The emission system heats up the engine compartment and exhaust system, creating the risk of fire.



**WARNING:** The normal operating temperature of the exhaust system is very high. Never work around or attempt to repair any part of the exhaust system until it has cooled. Use special care when working around the catalytic converter. The catalytic converter heats up to a very high temperature after only a short period of engine operation and stays hot after the engine is switched off.

To avoid damaging the catalytic converter:

- Do not crank the engine for more than 10 seconds at a time.
- Do not run the engine with a spark plug lead disconnected.
- Do not push-start or tow-start your vehicle. Use booster cables. See **Jump Starting Precautions** (page 280).
- Use the correct fuel. See **Fuel and Refueling** (page 171).
- Do not switch the ignition off when your vehicle is moving.
- Avoid running out of fuel.
- Have the items listed in scheduled maintenance information performed according to the specified schedule.

**Note:** Do not make any unauthorized changes to your vehicle or engine. By law, vehicle owners and anyone who manufactures, repairs, or services a fleet of vehicles are not permitted to intentionally remove an emission control device or prevent it from working.

## CATALYTIC CONVERTER – TROUBLESHOOTING

### CATALYTIC CONVERTER – WARNING LAMPS

Your vehicle has an on-board diagnostics system that monitors the emission control system. If any of the following warning lamps illuminate, this may indicate that the on-board diagnostics system has detected an emission control system malfunction.



Continuing to drive your vehicle may cause reduced power or the engine to stop. Failure to respond to a warning lamp may cause damage that your vehicle Warranty may not cover. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.



# High Voltage Battery

---

## WHAT IS THE HIGH VOLTAGE BATTERY

The high voltage battery is a highly sophisticated lithium ion battery system, used to store electrified energy to power the vehicle.

## HIGH VOLTAGE BATTERY PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** This battery pack should only be serviced by an authorized electric vehicle technician. Improper handling can result in personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Apply the parking brake, shift into park (P), switch the ignition off and remove the key before you open the hood or have any service or repair work completed. If you do not switch the ignition off, the engine could restart at any time. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Do not touch the electronic ignition system parts after you have switched the ignition on or when the engine is running. The system operates at high voltage. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

Your vehicle consists of various high-voltage components and wiring. All of the high-voltage power flows through specific wiring assemblies labeled as such or covered with a solid orange convolute, or orange striped tape, or both. Do not come in contact with these components.

**Note:** *Keep your hands and clothing clear of the radiator cooling fan.*

# Automatic Transmission

## AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** When your vehicle is stationary, keep the brake pedal fully pressed when shifting gears. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury, death or property damage.



**WARNING:** Do not apply the brake pedal and accelerator pedal simultaneously. Applying both pedals simultaneously for more than a few seconds will limit power, which may result in difficulty maintaining speed in traffic and could lead to serious injury.



**WARNING:** Apply the parking brake, shift into park (P), switch the vehicle off and remove the key or remote control before you leave your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

**Note:** You may not be able to shift out of park (P) unless the intelligent access key is inside your vehicle.

## AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION POSITIONS

### PARK (P)



**WARNING:** Move the transmission selector lever to park (P) only when your vehicle is stationary.

This position locks the driveline and prevents the wheels from turning.

The electric parking brake could apply if:

- You shift to park (P) on a slope.
- You shift to park (P) without the brake pedal fully pressed.

**Note:** A tone sounds if you attempt to exit your vehicle without the transmission in park (P).

**Note:** You can start your vehicle in this position.

**Note:** You may not be able to shift out of park (P) if the vehicle battery has no charge. See **Crash and Breakdown Information** (page 278).

**Note:** You may not be able to shift out of park (P) if your vehicle blows a fuse. See **Fuses** (page 290).

**Note:** You may not be able to shift out of park (P) unless the key or remote control is inside your vehicle.

**Note:** Your vehicle could shift into park (P) if you attempt to exit your vehicle without the transmission in park (P). See **How Does Automatic Return to Park (P) Work** (page 186).

**Note:** A tone could sound when you select park (P).

### REVERSE (R)



**WARNING:** Move the transmission selector lever to reverse (R) only when your vehicle is stationary and the engine is at idle speed.

This position allows your vehicle to move backward. Come to a complete stop before shifting into and out of reverse (R).

# Automatic Transmission

## NEUTRAL (N)



**WARNING:** In neutral (N) your vehicle is free to roll.

This position allows your vehicle to roll free. Hold the brake pedal down when in this position.

**Note:** You can start your vehicle in this position.

## DRIVE (D)

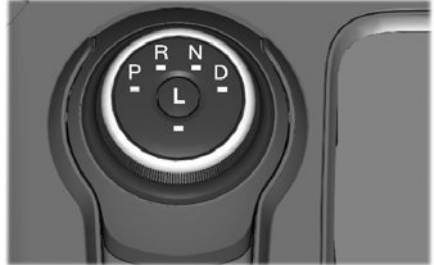
This position, drive (D), is the normal driving position, and allows your vehicle to move forward.

## LOW (L)

This mode is for driving on steep slopes. The transmission will hold low gear for maximum torque driving uphill and maximum engine braking driving downhill. You can enter this mode at any vehicle speed.

**Note:** Prolonged use of this mode could lower fuel economy. With your vehicle in drive (D), press the L button to enter this mode.

## SHIFTING YOUR VEHICLE INTO GEAR



E224178

Your vehicle has an electronic transmission selector. The transmission selector is on the center console. The gears are selected by rotating the transmission selector to **PRNDL**.

- Park (P)
- Reverse (R)
- Neutral (N)
- Drive (D)
- Low (L)

Putting your vehicle in gear:

1. Fully press down the brake pedal.
2. Rotate the transmission selector to the position you want and release.
3. The transmission position you select illuminates.
4. Release the brake pedal and your transmission remains in the selected gear.

## AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION POSITION INDICATORS

The instrument cluster displays the current position.

# Automatic Transmission



**Note:** The position could illuminate on the transmission selector.

## TEMPORARY NEUTRAL MODE

### WHAT IS TEMPORARY NEUTRAL MODE

This mode keeps your vehicle in neutral (N) when you switch your vehicle off. Use this mode if you exit your vehicle or switch your vehicle off at an automatic car wash.

**Note:** Do not tow your vehicle in this mode.

**Note:** Automatic return to park (P) is delayed when your vehicle is in this mode. See **What Is Automatic Return to Park (P)** (page 185).

### TEMPORARY NEUTRAL MODE LIMITATIONS

Your vehicle could shift to park (P) after 30 minutes, or when the vehicle battery charge level is low. Prolonged use of this mode can cause the vehicle battery to run out of charge.

Do not tow your vehicle in this mode. Failure to follow these instructions could result in vehicle damage not covered by the vehicle warranty.

### ENTERING TEMPORARY NEUTRAL MODE

1. Power your vehicle on.

2. Bring your vehicle to a complete stop.
3. Press and hold the brake pedal.
4. Shift into neutral (N).

**Note:** An instructional message appears.

5. Press the low (L) button.

**Note:** A confirmation message appears when your vehicle enters the mode.

6. Release the brake pedal.

**Note:** Your vehicle is free to roll.

7. Switch your vehicle off.

**Note:** Do not tow your vehicle in this mode.

**Note:** The neutral (N) indicator on the transmission selector may flash in this mode.

### EXITING TEMPORARY NEUTRAL MODE

1. Press the brake pedal.
2. Shift into park (P), or power your vehicle on and shift into drive (D) or reverse (R).

## AUTOMATIC RETURN TO PARK (P)

### WHAT IS AUTOMATIC RETURN TO PARK (P)

Your vehicle shifts into park (P) if you attempt to exit your vehicle without the transmission in park (P).

# Automatic Transmission

## HOW DOES AUTOMATIC RETURN TO PARK (P) WORK

Your vehicle shifts into park (P) when your vehicle is stationary and any of the following occur:

- You switch the vehicle off.
- You open the driver door with your seatbelt unlatched.
- You unlatch the driver seatbelt when the driver door is open.

**Note:** Do not use automatic return to park (P) when your vehicle is moving, except in an emergency. See **Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Moving** (page 161).

## AUTOMATIC RETURN TO PARK (P) LIMITATIONS

Automatic return to park may not work if the door ajar switch is malfunctioning.

See an authorized dealer if any of the following occur:

- Door ajar indicator does not illuminate with the driver door open.
- Door ajar indicator illuminates with the driver door closed.
- Transmission not in park message appears with the driver door closed, after you shift out of park (P).

## GRADE ASSIST - HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (HEV)

### WHAT IS GRADE ASSIST

Provides additional grade braking with a combination of engine motoring and high-voltage battery charging to help maintain vehicle speed when descending a grade.

## MANUAL PARK RELEASE - GASOLINE (IF EQUIPPED)

### WHAT IS MANUAL PARK RELEASE

Manual park release is used to move your transmission from the park (P) position in the event of an electrical malfunction or emergency.

### MANUAL PARK RELEASE PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** When doing this procedure, you need to take the transmission out of park (P) which means your vehicle can roll freely. To avoid unwanted vehicle movement, always fully apply the parking brake prior to doing this procedure. Use wheel chocks if appropriate.



**WARNING:** If the parking brake is fully released, but the brake warning lamp remains illuminated, the brakes may not be working properly. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.



**WARNING:** Do not drive your vehicle until you verify that the stoplamps are working.

### USING MANUAL PARK RELEASE

#### Activating the Manual Park Release Cable

1. Apply the parking brake. See **Electric Parking Brake** (page 194).

**Note:** If the vehicle battery is dead, for example, no electrical power available, you could need an external power source to apply the parking brake.

# Automatic Transmission

2. Remove the access cover with a tool or key by prying the panel in the upper corner.



3. Locate the manual park release tether in the center console.
4. Switch the ignition on but do not start your vehicle.

**Note:** Do not activate the override lever until you are in the driver seat.

**Note:** Do not activate the manual park release with the engine started.

5. Once in the driver seat, fully apply the brake pedal and hold. Do not release. Pull the tether straight rearward until engaged. If done correctly, a message appears in the instrument cluster.

**Note:** There is an audible click when you pull the tether back in the locked position.

6. With your foot still fully applied on the brake pedal, disengage the parking brake. See **Electric Parking Brake** (page 194).

**Note:** Your vehicle is now out of the park (P) position and is free to roll.

7. Your vehicle remains in neutral (N) for emergency towing purposes.

8. Once it is safe to do so and there is no risk that your vehicle will roll, disconnect the negative battery cable from the battery.

## Returning Your Vehicle to Normal Mode



1. Once it is safe to do so, reconnect the negative battery cable to the battery.
2. Apply the parking brake. See **Electric Parking Brake** (page 194).

**Note:** If the vehicle battery is dead, for example, no electrical power available, you could need an external power source to apply the parking brake.

3. Once in the driver seat, fully apply the brake pedal and hold, do not release. Press the white, manual park release button, and the manual park release lever returns to its rested position. Confirm that your vehicle is in the park (P) position and that the instrument cluster indicates park (P).

**Note:** If the instrument cluster is not displaying the park (P) position or the instrument cluster displays an error message, apply the parking brake before exiting your vehicle. Contact an authorized dealer for service.

# Automatic Transmission

4. Reinstall the access cover.

## AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION AUDIBLE WARNINGS

### Transmission Not In Park (P) Audible Warning

Sounds if you open the driver door before shifting into park (P).

## AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION – TROUBLESHOOTING

### AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Description
30min Neutral mode enabled. Not a tow mode	Displays to confirm that your vehicle has entered 30min neutral mode.
30min Neutral mode enabled. Not a tow mode. Press brake to unlock shifter	Displays to confirm that your vehicle has entered 30min neutral mode. Press brake to unlock shifter.
To stay in Neutral when exiting vehicle select L button	Displays when you shift into neutral (N).
To stay in Neutral when exiting vehicle select M button	Displays when you shift into neutral (N).
Park Brake Not Applied	The electric parking brake is not fully applied.

Message	Description
Transmission Not in Park	A reminder to shift into park. In addition, this message is typically after reconnecting or recharging the battery until you cycle the ignition to the on mode.
SHIFT SYS FAULT Apply Park Brake Before Exiting the Vehicle	Displays when there is a system fault and the park brake needs to be depressed before exiting the vehicle. See your authorized dealer.
Transmission Malfunction Service Now	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

## All-Wheel Drive (If Equipped)

---


### HOW DOES ALL-WHEEL DRIVE WORK - EXCLUDING: FX4 OFF ROAD

Your all-wheel drive vehicle is not intended for off-road use. The AWD feature gives your vehicle some limited off-road capabilities in which driving surfaces are relatively level, obstruction-free and otherwise similar to normal on-road driving conditions. Operating your vehicle in conditions other than those, could subject the vehicle to excess stress which might result in damage which is not covered under your warranty.

### HOW DOES ALL-WHEEL DRIVE WORK - FX4 OFF ROAD

All-wheel drive uses all four wheels to power the vehicle. This increases traction, enabling you to drive over terrain and road conditions that a conventional two-wheel drive vehicle cannot. The AWD system turns on when needed and does not require input from you.

### ALL-WHEEL DRIVE PRECAUTIONS

 **WARNING:** Do not become overconfident in the ability of all-wheel drive vehicles. Although an all-wheel drive vehicle may accelerate better than a two-wheel drive vehicle in low traction situations, it won't stop any faster than two-wheel drive vehicles. Always drive at a safe speed.

### ALL-WHEEL DRIVE LIMITATIONS

Using different size tires other than the provided spare could cause system damage or disable the all-wheel drive system.



## All-Wheel Drive (If Equipped)

---

### ALL-WHEEL DRIVE – TROUBLESHOOTING

#### ALL-WHEEL DRIVE – INFORMATION MESSAGES

<b>Message</b>	<b>Action</b>
AWD Temporarily Disabled	The all-wheel drive system temporarily turns off to protect itself from overheating.
AWD Restored	The all-wheel drive system will resume normal function and clear this message after driving a short distance with the road tire re-installed or after the system cools.
AWD OFF	The all-wheel drive system temporarily turns off to protect itself from overheating or if you are using the temporary spare tire.
AWD Malfunction Service Required	The all-wheel drive system is not operating properly. If the warning stays on or continues to come on, contact an authorized dealer.

# Brakes

## BRAKE PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Driving your vehicle with the warning lamp on is dangerous. A significant decrease in braking performance may occur. It may take you longer to stop your vehicle. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. Driving extended distances with the parking brake engaged can cause brake failure and the risk of personal injury.

Wet brakes result in reduced braking efficiency. Gently press the brake pedal a few times when driving from a car wash or standing water to dry the brakes.

## ANTI-LOCK BRAKING SYSTEM

### ANTI-LOCK BRAKING SYSTEM LIMITATIONS

The anti-lock braking system does not eliminate the risk of crash when:

- You drive too closely to the vehicle in front of you.
- Your vehicle is hydroplaning.
- You take corners too fast.
- The road surface is poor.

**Note:** *If the system activates, the brake pedal could pulse and travel further. Maintain pressure on the brake pedal.*

### ANTI-LOCK BRAKING SYSTEM INDICATORS

This system helps you maintain steering control during emergency stops by keeping the brakes from locking.



If it illuminates when you are driving, this indicates a malfunction. Your vehicle continues to have normal braking without the anti-lock brake system function. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

It also momentarily illuminates when you switch the ignition on to confirm the lamp is functional. If it does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, or begins to flash at any time, have the system checked by an authorized dealer.



It illuminates when you engage the parking brake and the ignition is on.



If it illuminates when your vehicle is moving, make sure the parking brake is disengaged. If the parking brake is disengaged, this indicates low brake fluid level or a brake system fault. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

It also momentarily illuminates when you switch the ignition on to confirm the lamp is functional. If it does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, or begins to flash at any time, have the system checked by an authorized dealer.

## BRAKE OVER ACCELERATOR


In the event the accelerator pedal becomes stuck or entrapped, apply steady and firm pressure to the brake pedal to slow the vehicle and reduce engine power. If you experience this condition, apply the brakes and bring your vehicle to a safe stop. Move the transmission to park (P), switch the engine off and apply the parking brake. Inspect the accelerator pedal for any interference. If none are found and the condition persists, have your vehicle towed to the nearest authorized dealer.


# Brakes


## LOCATING THE BRAKE FLUID RESERVOIR


See **Under Hood Overview** (page 301).

## CHECKING THE BRAKE FLUID

 **WARNING:** Do not use any fluid other than the recommended brake fluid as this will reduce brake efficiency. Use of incorrect fluid could result in the loss of vehicle control, serious personal injury or death.

 **WARNING:** Only use brake fluid from a sealed container. Contamination with dirt, water, petroleum products or other materials may result in brake system damage or failure. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in the loss of vehicle control, serious personal injury or death.

 **WARNING:** Do not allow the fluid to touch your skin or eyes. If this happens, rinse the affected areas immediately with plenty of water and contact your physician.

 **WARNING:** The brake system could be affected if the brake fluid level is below the **MIN** mark or above the **MAX** mark on the brake fluid reservoir.



1. Park your vehicle on a level surface.
2. Look at the brake fluid reservoir to see where the brake fluid level is relative to the **MIN** and the **MAX** marks on the reservoir.

**Note:** To avoid fluid contamination, the reservoir cap must remain in place and fully tight, unless you are adding fluid.

Only use fluid that meets our specifications. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 355).

## BRAKE FLUID SPECIFICATION

See **Brake Fluid Specification** (page 367).

# Brakes

## BRAKES – TROUBLESHOOTING

### BRAKES – WARNING LAMPS



If the ABS indicator illuminates when you are driving, this indicates a malfunction. Your vehicle continues to have normal braking without the anti-lock braking system function. See an authorized dealer.

It also momentarily illuminates when you switch the ignition on to confirm the lamp is functional. If it does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, or begins to flash at any time, have the system checked by an authorized dealer.



The brake indicator momentarily illuminates when you switch the ignition on to confirm the lamp is functional. It may also illuminate when you apply the parking brake and the ignition is on. If it illuminates when your vehicle is moving, make sure the parking brake is disengaged. If the parking brake is disengaged, this indicates low brake fluid level or a brake system fault. See an authorized dealer.

## BRAKES – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

### Is brake dust on the wheels normal?

Brake dust could accumulate on the wheels, even under normal driving conditions. Some dust is inevitable as the brakes wear and does not contribute to brake noise. See **Cleaning Wheels** (page 320).

### Will wet driving conditions effect my braking abilities?

Wet brakes result in reduced braking efficiency. Gently press the brake pedal a few times when driving from a car wash or standing water to dry the brakes.

### Is brake noise considered normal?

Occasional brake noise is normal. If a metal-to-metal, continuous grinding or continuous squeal sound is present, the brake linings may be worn-out and an authorized dealer should check them. If the vehicle has continuous vibration or shudder in the steering wheel while braking, an authorized dealer should check your vehicle.

### When should you replace the brake fluid?

Brake fluid absorbs water over time which degrades the effectiveness of the brake fluid. Change the brake fluid at the specified intervals to prevent degraded braking performance. See **Normal Scheduled Maintenance** (page 439).

# Electric Parking Brake

## WHAT IS THE ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE

The electric parking brake is used to hold your vehicle on slopes and flat roads.

## APPLYING THE ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE



**WARNING:** Always fully apply the parking brake and make sure you shift into park (P). Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** If you drive extended distances with the parking brake applied, you could cause damage to the brake system.



**WARNING:** The electric parking brake does not operate if the vehicle battery has run out of charge.



The electronic parking brake switch is on the center console.

1. Pull the switch up.

The red warning lamp flashes during operation and illuminates when the parking brake is applied.

**Note:** You can apply the electric parking brake when the power is off.

**Note:** The electric parking brake could apply when you shift into park (P). See **Park (P)** (page 183).

## APPLYING THE ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE IN AN EMERGENCY

You can use the electric parking brake to slow or stop your vehicle in an emergency.

1. Pull the switch up and hold it.

The electric parking brake continues to slow your vehicle down unless you release the switch.

The red warning lamp illuminates, a tone sounds and the stoplamps turn on when you use the electric parking brake in an emergency.

**Note:** Do not apply the electric parking brake when your vehicle is moving, except in an emergency.

## MANUALLY RELEASING THE ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE

1. Switch the ignition on.
2. Press and hold the brake pedal.
3. Push the switch down.

The red warning lamp turns off.

## Pulling Away on a Hill When Towing a Trailer

1. Press and hold the brake pedal.
2. Pull the switch upward and hold it.
3. Shift into gear.
4. Press the accelerator pedal until engine has developed sufficient torque to prevent your vehicle from rolling down the hill.
5. Release the switch and pull away in a normal manner.

# Electric Parking Brake

## AUTOMATICALLY RELEASING THE ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE

1. Close the driver door.
2. Shift into gear.
3. Press the accelerator pedal and pull away in a normal manner.

## ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE AUDIBLE WARNING

Sounds when the parking brake is on and your vehicle is moving. If the warning tone continues after you have released the parking brake, this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

## RELEASING THE ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE IF THE VEHICLE BATTERY HAS RUN OUT OF CHARGE

See **Jump Starting Precautions** (page 280).

## ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE – TROUBLESHOOTING

### ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE – WARNING LAMPS

#### Brake System



It illuminates red when you apply the parking brake and your vehicle is on. If the lamp flashes when the parking brake has been released, this indicates the parking brake system requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

**Note:** *Lamps may vary depending on region.*

#### Electric Parking Brake



When the lamp illuminates yellow, it indicates a malfunction in the electric parking brake. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

# Electric Parking Brake

## ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE – INFORMATION MESSAGES

### Park Brake

<b>Message</b>	<b>Action</b>
Park Brake Engaged	The parking brake is set, if the vehicle is in gear and you drive your vehicle more than 3 mph (5 km/h). If the warning stays on after the parking brake is released, contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.
To Release: Press Brake and Switch	The electric parking brake is set and a manual release is attempted without the brake pedal being pressed.
Park Brake Use Switch to Release	The electric parking brake is set and an automatic release is attempted but cannot be performed. Perform a manual release.
Release Park Brake	The electric parking brake is set and your vehicle speed exceeds 3 mph (5 km/h). Release park brake before continued driving.
Park Brake Not Applied	The electric parking brake is not fully applied.
Park Brake Not Released	The electric parking brake is not fully released.
Park Brake Maintenance Mode	The electric parking brake system has been put into a special mode that is used to allow service of the rear brakes. Contact an authorized dealer.
Park Brake Limited Function Service Required	The electric park brake system has detected a condition that requires service. Some functionality may still be available. Contact your authorized dealer.
Park Brake Malfunction Service Now	The electric parking brake system has detected a condition that requires service. Contact your authorized dealer.
Park Brake System Overheated	Numerous park brake applies have overheated the system. Wait 2 minutes before attempting to apply again.

# Hill Start Assist

## WHAT IS HILL START ASSIST

Hill Start Assist makes it easier for you to pull away when your vehicle is on a slope without using the parking brake.

## HOW DOES HILL START ASSIST WORK

When the system activates, your vehicle remains stationary for a few seconds after you release the brake pedal. This gives you time to move your foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator pedal. The brakes release when the engine has developed sufficient torque to prevent your vehicle from rolling down the slope.

## HILL START ASSIST PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** The system does not replace the parking brake. When you leave your vehicle, always apply the parking brake.



**WARNING:** You must remain in your vehicle when the system turns on. At all times, you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system and intervening, if required. Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** The system will turn off if a malfunction is apparent. Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

## HILL START ASSIST – TROUBLESHOOTING

## HILL START ASSIST – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
Hill Start Assist Not Available	Displays when system is not available. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.



# Auto Hold

## HOW DOES AUTO HOLD WORK

Auto Hold applies the brakes to hold your vehicle after you stop it and release the brake pedal. This can help when waiting on a hill or in traffic.

## SWITCHING AUTO HOLD ON AND OFF



**WARNING:** The system does not replace the parking brake. When you leave your vehicle, always apply the parking brake.



**WARNING:** You must remain in your vehicle when the system turns on. At all times, you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system and intervening, if required. Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

Press the button on the center console to turn the system On and Off.

**Note:** You can only switch the system on after you close the driver door, and fasten your seatbelt.

**Note:** The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.

**Note:** Make sure you switch the system off before using an automatic car wash.

## USING AUTO HOLD

1. Bring your vehicle to a complete stop. The auto hold active indicator illuminates in the information display.
2. Release the brake pedal. The system holds your vehicle at a standstill. The auto hold active indicator remains illuminated in the information display.

3. Pull away in the normal manner. The system releases the brakes and the auto hold active indicator switches off.

**Note:** The system only activates if you apply enough brake pressure on the brake pedal.

**Note:** Under certain conditions, the system could apply the electric parking brake. The brake system warning lamp illuminates. The electric parking brake releases when you press the accelerator pedal. See **Automatically Releasing the Electric Parking Brake** (page 195).

**Note:** The system switches off if you shift into reverse (R) and press the brake pedal.

There could be actions that can cause the auto hold system not to work when the following occur:

- When you use active park assist.
- Your vehicle is in stay in neutral mode.
- The driver door is open.
- You have not fastened your seatbelt.
- You shift into reverse (R) before the system is active.

## AUTO HOLD INDICATORS



Illuminates when the system is active.



Illuminates when the system is on but cannot hold your vehicle at a standstill at this particular time.

# Traction Control

## HOW DOES TRACTION CONTROL WORK

If your vehicle begins to slide, the system applies the brakes to individual wheels and, when needed, reduces power at the same time. If the wheels spin when accelerating on slippery or loose surfaces, the system reduces power in order to increase traction.

## SWITCHING TRACTION CONTROL ON AND OFF



**WARNING:** Operating your vehicle with the traction control disabled could lead to an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.



The traction control system turns on each time you switch the ignition on.

The button for your traction control system is located on the center console.

Press and release the button to switch traction control off. The stability control system remains fully active.

When you switch traction control off, a message and an illuminated icon appear on the instrument cluster.

Press the switch again to turn the traction control system back on to normal operation.

If your vehicle is stuck in mud or snow, switching traction control off may be beneficial as this allows the wheels to spin.

Your vehicle may have MyKey restrictions regarding this feature. See **What is MyKey** (page 66).

## TRACTION CONTROL INDICATOR



## TRACTION CONTROL – TROUBLESHOOTING

### TRACTION CONTROL – WARNING LAMPS

#### System Messages



The traction control light temporarily illuminates on start-up and flashes when activated by a driving condition.

The traction control off light temporarily illuminates on start-up and stays on:

- When you switch the traction control system off.
- When you select an alternative stability control mode.
- If a problem occurs in the system.

# Traction Control

---

## TRACTION CONTROL – INFORMATION MESSAGES

### AdvanceTrac™ and Traction Control

<b>Message</b>	<b>Action</b>
Service AdvanceTrac	The system detects a condition that requires service. Contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.
AdvanceTrac Off	The status of the AdvanceTrac system after you switched it off.
AdvanceTrac On	The status of the AdvanceTrac system after you switched it on.
AdvanceTrac SPORT MODE	The status of the AdvanceTrac sport mode after you switched it on.
Traction Control Off	The status of the traction control system after you switched it off.
Traction Control On	The status of the traction control system after you switched it on.

# Stability Control

## HOW DOES STABILITY CONTROL WORK



**WARNING:** Vehicle modifications involving braking system, aftermarket roof racks, suspension, steering system, tire construction and wheel and tire size may change the handling characteristics of your vehicle and may adversely affect the performance of the electronic stability control system. In addition, installing any stereo loudspeakers may interfere with and adversely affect the electronic stability control system. Install any aftermarket stereo loudspeaker as far as possible from the front center console, the tunnel, and the front seats in order to minimize the risk of interfering with the electronic stability control sensors. Reducing the effectiveness of the electronic stability control system could lead to an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.



**WARNING:** Remember that even advanced technology cannot defy the laws of physics. It's always possible to lose control of a vehicle due to inappropriate driver input for the conditions. Aggressive driving on any road condition can cause you to lose control of your vehicle increasing the risk of personal injury or property damage. Activation of the electronic stability control system is an indication that at least some of the tires have exceeded their ability to grip the road; this could reduce the operator's ability to control the vehicle potentially resulting in a loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death. If your electronic stability control system activates, SLOW DOWN.

If a driving condition activates either the stability control or the traction control system you may experience the following conditions:

- The stability and traction control light flashes.
- Your vehicle slows down.
- Reduced engine power.

The stability control system has several features built into it to help you maintain control of your vehicle:

### Electronic Stability Control

Electronic stability control enhances your vehicle's ability to prevent skids or lateral slides by applying brakes to one or more of the wheels individually and, if necessary, reducing engine power.

### Roll Stability Control

Roll stability control enhances your vehicle's ability to prevent rollovers by detecting your vehicle's roll motion and the rate at which it changes by applying the brakes to one or more wheels individually.

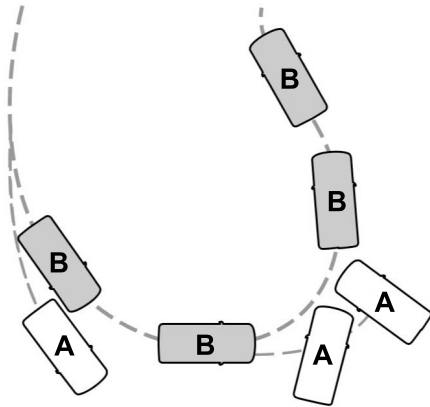
### Curve Control

Curve control enhances your vehicle's ability to follow the road when cornering severely or avoiding objects in the roadway. Curve control operates by reducing engine power and, if necessary, applying brakes to one or more of the wheels individually.

### Traction Control

Traction control enhances your vehicle's ability to maintain traction of the wheels by detecting and controlling wheel spin. See **How Does Traction Control Work** (page 199).

# Stability Control



- A Vehicle without stability control skidding off its intended route.
- B Vehicle with stability control maintaining control on a slippery surface.

## SWITCHING STABILITY CONTROL ON AND OFF

The system turns on each time you switch the ignition on.

When you shift the transmission into reverse (R), the systems are disabled.

You can switch the traction control system off or on independently. See **Switching Traction Control On and Off** (page 199).

## STABILITY CONTROL INDICATOR



The system turns on each time you switch the ignition on. You can switch off the traction control portion of the system independently. See **How Does Traction Control Work** (page 199).

## STABILITY CONTROL – TROUBLESHOOTING

### STABILITY CONTROL – WARNING LAMPS

#### Stability Control



It flashes when the system is active. If it remains illuminated or does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, this indicates a system error. During a system error the system switches off. Have the system checked by an authorized dealer immediately.

#### Stability Control Off



Illuminates when you switch the system off. It goes out when you switch the system back on or when you switch the ignition off.

# Hill Descent Control (If Equipped)

## WHAT IS HILL DESCENT CONTROL

Hill descent control allows the driver to set and maintain vehicle speed while descending steep slopes in various surface conditions.

## HOW DOES HILL DESCENT CONTROL WORK

Hill descent control can maintain vehicle speeds on downhill slopes between 2–20 mph (3–32 km/h). Above 20 mph (32 km/h), the system remains on but the descent speed cannot be set or maintained.

**Note:** *The system does not function below 2 mph (3 km/h).*

The system requires a cool down interval after a period of sustained use. Hill descent control provides a warning in the message center and a tone sounds when the system is about to disengage for cooling. At this time, manually apply the brakes as needed to maintain descent speed.

**Note:** *The amount of time that the system can remain active before cooling varies with conditions.*

## HILL DESCENT CONTROL PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** The system does not control speed in low traction conditions or extremely steep slopes. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



**WARNING:** Hill descent control cannot control descent in all surface conditions and circumstances, such as ice or extremely steep grades. Hill descent control is a driver assist system and cannot substitute for good judgment by the driver. Failure to do so may result in loss of vehicle control, crash or serious injury.



**WARNING:** The system does not replace the parking brake. When you leave your vehicle, always apply the parking brake and shift the transmission into park (P) for automatic transmission or first gear for manual transmission.

## SWITCHING HILL DESCENT CONTROL ON AND OFF



Press the button on the center console. A light illuminates and a tone sounds when the system is active.

## SETTING THE HILL DESCENT SPEED

To increase or decrease the descent speed, press the accelerator or brake pedal, or use the SET + and SET - buttons on the steering wheel. Once you reach the preferred speed remove your feet from the pedals.

## HILL DESCENT CONTROL INDICATOR



Illuminates when you switch hill descent control on.

# Hill Descent Control (If Equipped)

## HILL DESCENT CONTROL – TROUBLESHOOTING

### HILL DESCENT CONTROL – INFORMATION MESSAGES

<b>Message</b>	<b>Action</b>
For Hill Descent Reduce Speed XX MPH/km/h or Less	Your vehicle speed requirement for off-road mode entry has not been met.
For Hill Descent Select Gear	You need to select a transmission gear for hill descent mode.
Hill Descent Driver Resume Control	Hill descent control mode is deactivated and you must resume control.
Hill Descent Control Fault	A hill descent system fault is present.
Hill Descent Control Off System Cooling	The hill descent system is cooling due to overuse.
Hill Descent Control not available with Cruise Control Active	The hill descent system cannot activate while Cruise Control is actively controlling speed.

# Steering

## ELECTRIC POWER STEERING

### HOW DOES ELECTRIC POWER STEERING WORK

#### Adaptive Learning

Adaptive learning helps correct road irregularities and improves overall handling and steering. The system assists the brake system to help operate advanced stability control and accident avoidance systems.

If your vehicle loses electrical power or detects a concern when you are driving, the system switches off and you retain normal steering function. Additionally, whenever you disconnect the battery or install a new battery, drive your vehicle a short distance before the system relearns the strategy and reactivates all systems.

#### Steering Tips

If the steering wanders or pulls, check for:

- An improperly inflated tire.
- Uneven tire wear.
- Loose or worn suspension components.
- Improper vehicle alignment.

**Note:** *A high crown in the road or high crosswinds could also make the steering wander or pull.*

## ELECTRIC POWER STEERING PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** The electric power steering system has diagnostic checks that continuously monitor the system. If a fault is detected, a message displays in the information display. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Switch the vehicle off. After at least 10 seconds, switch the vehicle on and watch the information display for a steering system warning message. If a steering system warning message returns, have the system checked as soon as possible.



**WARNING:** If the system detects an error, you may not feel a difference in the steering, however a serious condition may exist. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. Failure to do so may result in loss of steering control.

Adapt your speed and driving behavior according to reduced steering assist.

Extreme continuous steering may increase the effort to steer. This occurs to prevent internal overheating and damage to the steering system. If this occurs, you will not lose the ability to steer your vehicle manually nor will it cause damage to the system. Normal steering and driving allows the system to cool down and steering assist returns to normal.

**Note:** *There is no fluid reservoir to check or fill.*



# Steering

---

## STEERING – TROUBLESHOOTING

### STEERING – INFORMATION MESSAGES

<b>Message</b>	<b>Action</b>
Steering Fault Service Now	The power steering system has detected a condition that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Steering Loss Stop Safely	The power steering system is not working. Stop your vehicle in a safe place. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Steering Assist Fault Service Required	The power steering system has detected a condition that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Steering Lock Malfunction Service Now	The steering system has detected a condition that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

# Parking Aids (If Equipped)

## PARKING AID PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** To help avoid personal injury, always use caution when in reverse (R) and when using the sensing system.



**WARNING:** The system may not detect objects with surfaces that absorb reflection. Always drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in a crash.



**WARNING:** Traffic control systems, fluorescent lamps, inclement weather, air brakes, external motors and fans may affect the correct operation of the sensing system. This may cause reduced performance or false alerts.



**WARNING:** The system may not detect small or moving objects, particularly those close to the ground.



**WARNING:** The parking aid system can only assist you to detect objects when your vehicle is moving at parking speeds. To help avoid personal injury you must take care when using the parking aid system.



**WARNING:** The system may not function if the sensor is blocked.



**WARNING:** In cold and severe weather conditions the system may not function. Rain, snow and spray can all limit sensor performance.



**WARNING:** If damage occurs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

**Note:** *If your vehicle sustains damage leaving the sensors misaligned, this will cause inaccurate measurements or false alerts.*

When you connect a trailer to your vehicle, the rear parking aid detects the trailer and provides an alert. Disable the parking aid when you connect a trailer to prevent the alert.

**Note:** *Certain add-on devices installed around the bumper or fascia may create false alerts, for example, large trailer hitches, bike or surfboard racks, license plate brackets, bumper covers or any other device that could block the normal detection zone of the parking aid system. Aftermarket spare tires or spare tire covers mounted to the rear tailgate could cause false alerts from the park aid system. Remove the add-on device to prevent false alerts.*

**Note:** *Keep the sensors free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt. If the sensors are covered, the system's accuracy can be affected.*

Do not clean the sensors with sharp objects.

**Note:** *When using a programmed MyKey you cannot switch this off. See **MyKey™** (page 66).*

## REAR PARKING AID

### WHAT IS THE REAR PARKING AID

Rear parking sensors detect objects behind your vehicle when in reverse (R).

### REAR PARKING AID LIMITATIONS

There is a decreased coverage area at the outer corners.

When using a programmed MyKey, you cannot switch the rear parking aid off.

## Parking Aids (If Equipped)

The rear parking aid sensors are active when your vehicle is in reverse (R) and the vehicle speed is less than 5 mph (8 km/h).

The sensor coverage area is up to 71 in (180 cm) from the rear bumper.

The rear parking aid detects large objects when you shift into reverse (R) and any of the following occur:

- Your vehicle is moving backward at a low speed.
- Your vehicle is stationary but an object is approaching the rear of your vehicle at a low speed.
- Your vehicle is moving backward at a low speed and an object is moving towards your vehicle, for example another vehicle at a low speed.

### LOCATING THE REAR PARKING AID SENSORS



The rear parking aid sensors are in the rear bumper.

### REAR PARKING AID AUDIBLE WARNINGS

A warning tone sounds when your vehicle approaches an object. As your vehicle moves closer to an object, the rate of the tone increases. The warning tone continuously sounds when an object is 12 in (30 cm) or less from the rear bumper.

If your vehicle remains stationary for a few seconds, the audible warning turns off. If your vehicle moves backward the tone sounds again.

**Note:** *When the parking aid system sounds a tone, the audio system could reduce the set volume.*

### PARKING AIDS – TROUBLESHOOTING

#### PARKING AIDS – INFORMATION MESSAGES

If a fault is present in the parking aids, a warning message appears in the instrument cluster or the information and entertainment display.

## Parking Aids (If Equipped)

---

<b>Message</b>	<b>Action</b>
Check Front Park Aid	The system detects a condition that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Check Rear Park Aid	The system detects a condition that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Front Park Aid On Off	Displays the park aid status.
Rear Park Aid On Off	Displays the park aid status.

# Rear View Camera

## WHAT IS THE REAR VIEW CAMERA

The rear view camera provides a video image of the area behind your vehicle when the transmission is in reverse (R).

## REAR VIEW CAMERA PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** The rear view camera system is a reverse aid supplement device that still requires the driver to use it in conjunction with the interior and exterior mirrors for maximum coverage.



**WARNING:** Objects that are close to either corner of the bumper or under the bumper, might not be seen on the screen due to the limited coverage of the camera system.



**WARNING:** Reverse your vehicle slowly. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Use caution when the rear cargo door is ajar. If the rear cargo door is ajar, the camera will be out of position and the video image could be incorrect. All guide lines disappear when the rear cargo door is ajar. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



**WARNING:** Use caution when turning camera features on or off when the transmission is not in park (P). Make sure your vehicle is not moving.

**Note:** When towing, the camera only sees what you are towing. This might not provide adequate coverage and you might not see some objects. In some vehicles, the guide lines may disappear when you connect the trailer tow connector.

## LOCATING THE REAR VIEW CAMERA

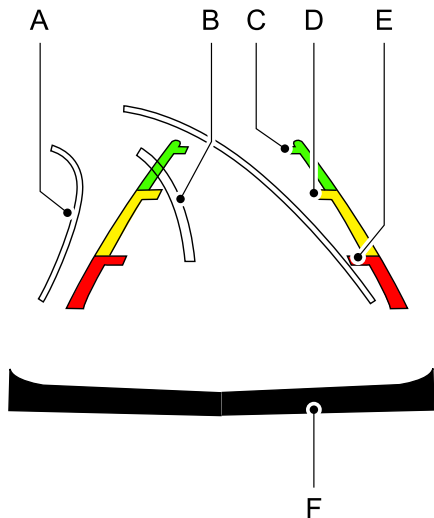
The rear view camera is on the tailgate. It provides a video image of the area behind your vehicle.

## REAR VIEW CAMERA GUIDE LINES

**Note:** Active guide lines and fixed guide lines are only available when the transmission is in reverse (R).

**Note:** The centerline is only available if the active or fixed guide lines are on.

# Rear View Camera



- A. Active guide lines.
- B. Centerline.
- C. Fixed guide line: Green zone.
- D. Fixed guide line: Yellow zone.
- E. Fixed guide line: Red zone.
- F. Rear bumper.

Active guide lines only show with fixed guide lines. To use active guide lines, turn the steering wheel to point the guide lines toward an intended path. If the steering wheel position changes while reversing, your vehicle might deviate from the intended path.

The fixed and active guide lines fade in and out depending on the steering wheel position. The active guide lines do not display when the steering wheel position is straight.


Use caution while reversing. Objects in the red zone are closest to your vehicle and objects in the green zone are farther away. Objects get closer to your vehicle as they move from the green zone to the yellow or red zones. Use the side view mirrors and rear view mirror to get better coverage on both sides and rear of your vehicle.

## REAR VIEW CAMERA OBJECT DISTANCE INDICATORS

The system provides an image of your vehicle and the sensor zones. The zones highlight green, yellow, and red when the parking aid sensors detect an object in the coverage area.

## REAR VIEW CAMERA SETTINGS

### ZOOMING THE REAR VIEW CAMERA IN AND OUT

**WARNING:** When manual zoom is on, the full area behind your vehicle may not show. Be aware of your surroundings when using the manual zoom feature.

Selectable settings for this feature are zoom in (+) and zoom out (-). Press the symbol on the camera screen to change the view. The default setting is zoom off.

This allows you to get a closer view of an object behind your vehicle. The zoomed image keeps the bumper in the image to provide a reference. The zoom is only active while the transmission is in reverse (R).

**Note:** Manual zoom is only available when the transmission is in reverse (R).

**Note:** Only the centerline shows when you enable manual zoom.

# Rear View Camera

---

## **SWITCHING REAR VIEW CAMERA DELAY ON AND OFF**

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Press **Rear View Camera**.
4. Switch **Rear View Camera Delay** on or off.

When shifting the transmission out of reverse (R) and into any gear other than park (P), the camera image remains in the display until:

- Your vehicle speed reaches approximately 5 mph (8 km/h).
- You shift your vehicle into park (P).

# Cruise Control (If Equipped)

## WHAT IS CRUISE CONTROL

Cruise control lets you maintain a set speed without keeping your foot on the accelerator pedal.

### Requirements

Use cruise control when the vehicle speed is greater than 20 mph (30 km/h).

## SWITCHING CRUISE CONTROL ON AND OFF



**WARNING:** Do not use cruise control on winding roads, in heavy traffic or when the road surface is slippery. This could result in loss of vehicle control, serious injury or death.

The cruise controls are on the steering wheel.

### Switching Cruise Control On



Press the button to put the system in standby mode.

### Switching Cruise Control Off



Press the button when in standby mode or switch the ignition off.

**Note:** When you switch cruise control off the set speed clears.

## SETTING THE CRUISE CONTROL SPEED



**WARNING:** When you are going downhill, your vehicle speed could increase above the set speed. The system does not apply the brakes.

Drive to the speed you prefer.

**SET+**

Press the toggle button upward or downward to set the current speed.

**SET-**

Take your foot off the accelerator pedal.

**Note:** The indicator changes color in the information display.

## Changing the Set Speed

**SET+**

Press and release the toggle button upward to increase the set speed in small increments.

Press and hold the toggle button upward to accelerate. Release the button when you have reached your preferred speed.

**SET-**

Press and release the toggle button downward to decrease the set speed in small increments.

Press and hold the toggle button downward to decelerate. Release the button when you have reached your preferred speed.

**Note:** If you accelerate by pressing the accelerator pedal, the set speed does not change. When you release the accelerator pedal, your vehicle returns to the speed that you previously set.



# Cruise Control (If Equipped)

---

## CANCELING THE SET SPEED



Press the button, or tap the brake pedal to cancel the set speed.

**Note:** *The system remembers the set speed.*

**Note:** *The system cancels if the vehicle speed drops below 10 mph (16 km/h) under the set speed when driving uphill.*

## RESUMING THE SET SPEED



Press the button.

## CRUISE CONTROL INDICATORS



Illuminates when you switch the system on.

# Adaptive Cruise Control (If Equipped)

## HOW DOES ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL WITH STOP AND GO WORK

Adaptive cruise control with stop and go uses radar and camera sensors to maintain a set gap between your vehicle and the vehicle in front of you while following it to a complete stop. Stop and go can also be set to follow a vehicle directly in front of you and adjust the set speed, while you are at a complete stop.

## ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Do not use adaptive cruise control on winding roads, in heavy traffic or when the road surface is slippery. This could result in loss of vehicle control, serious injury or death.



**WARNING:** Pay close attention to changing road conditions such as entering or leaving a highway, on roads with intersections or roundabouts, roads without visible lanes of travel, roads that are winding, slippery, unpaved, or steep slopes.



**WARNING:** The system is not a crash warning or avoidance system.



**WARNING:** Do not use the system when towing a trailer that has aftermarket electronic trailer brake controls. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Do not use tire sizes other than those recommended because this can affect the normal operation of the system. Failure to do so may result in a loss of vehicle control, which could result in serious injury.



**WARNING:** Do not use the system with a snow plow blade installed.



**WARNING:** Do not use the system in poor visibility, for example fog, heavy rain, spray or snow.

## When Following a Vehicle



**WARNING:** When following a vehicle that is braking, your vehicle does not always decelerate quickly enough to avoid a crash without driver intervention. Apply the brakes when necessary. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

## Hilly Condition Usage

You should select a lower gear when the system is active in situations such as prolonged downhill driving on steep slopes, for example in mountainous areas.

# Adaptive Cruise Control (If Equipped)

## ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL LIMITATIONS

### Sensor Limitations

**WARNING:** On rare occasions, detection issues can occur due to the road infrastructures, for example bridges, tunnels and safety barriers. In these cases, the system may brake late or unexpectedly. At all times, you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system and intervening, if required.

**WARNING:** If the system malfunctions, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

**WARNING:** Large contrasts in outside lighting can limit sensor performance.

**WARNING:** The system only warns of vehicles detected by the radar sensor. In some cases there may be no warning or a delayed warning. Apply the brakes when necessary. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** The system may not detect stationary or slow moving vehicles below 6 mph (10 km/h).

**WARNING:** The system does not detect pedestrians or objects in the road.

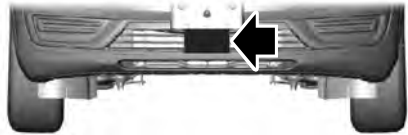
**WARNING:** The system does not detect oncoming vehicles in the same lane.

**WARNING:** The system may not operate properly if the sensor is blocked. Keep the windshield free from obstruction.

**WARNING:** The sensor may incorrectly track lane markings as other structures or objects. This can result in a false or missed warning.



The camera is mounted on the windshield behind the interior mirror.



The radar sensor is in the lower grille.

**Note:** You cannot see the sensor. It is behind a fascia panel.

**Note:** Keep the front of your vehicle free of dirt, metal badges or objects. Vehicle front protectors, aftermarket lights, additional paint or plastic coatings could also degrade sensor performance.

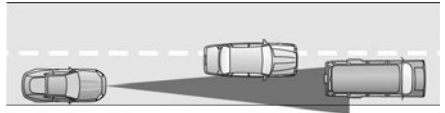
# Adaptive Cruise Control (If Equipped)

A message displays if something obstructs the camera or the sensor. When something blocks the sensor, the system cannot detect a vehicle ahead and does not function. See **Adaptive Cruise Control – Information Messages** (page 223).

The radar sensor has a limited field of view. It may not detect vehicles at all or detect a vehicle later than expected in some situations. The lead vehicle image does not illuminate if the system does not detect a vehicle in front of you.

## Detection issues can occur:

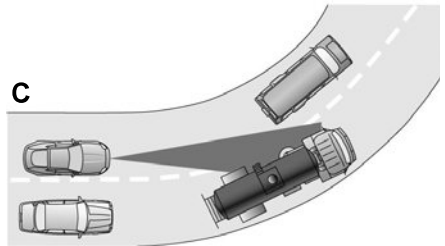
**A**



**B**



**C**



- A When driving on a different line than the vehicle in front.
- B With vehicles that edge into your lane. The system can only detect these vehicles once they move fully into your lane.
- C There may be issues with the detection of vehicles in front when driving into and coming out of a bend or curve in the road.

In these cases, the system may brake late or unexpectedly.

If something hits the front end of your vehicle or damage occurs, the radar-sensing zone may change. This could cause missed or false vehicle detection.

# Adaptive Cruise Control (If Equipped)

Optimal system performance requires a clear view of the road by the windshield-mounted camera.

Optimal performance may not occur if:

- The camera is blocked.
- There is poor visibility or lighting conditions.
- There are bad weather conditions.

## SWITCHING ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL ON AND OFF

The cruise controls are on the steering wheel. See **What Is Cruise Control** (page 213).

### Switching Adaptive Cruise Control On



Press the button to set the system in standby mode.

The indicator, current gap setting and set speed appear in the information display.

### Switching Adaptive Cruise Control Off



Press the button when the system is in standby mode, or switch the ignition off.

**Note:** You erase the set speed when you switch the system off.

## ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL AUTOMATIC CANCELLATION

The system may cancel if:

- The tires lose traction.
- You apply the parking brake.

The system may cancel and set the parking brake if:

- You unbuckle the seatbelt and open the driver door after you stop your vehicle.
- Your vehicle is at a stop continuously for more than three minutes.

The system may deactivate or prevent activating when requested if:

- The vehicle has a blocked sensor.
- The brake temperature is too high.
- There is a failure in the system or a related system.

## SETTING THE ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL SPEED

Drive to the speed you prefer.



Press the toggle button upward or downward to set the current speed.



Take your foot off the accelerator pedal.

The indicator, current gap setting and set speed appear in the instrument cluster display.



A vehicle image illuminates if there is a vehicle detected in front of you.

# Adaptive Cruise Control (If Equipped)

**Note:** When the system is active, the speedometer may vary slightly from the set speed displayed in the instrument cluster display.

## Setting the Adaptive Cruise Speed from a Complete Stop

**SET+**

Press the toggle button upward or downward while keeping the brake pedal fully pressed.

**SET-**

The set speed adjusts to 20 mph (30 km/h).

The indicator, current gap setting and set speed appear in the instrument cluster display.

**Note:** To activate adaptive cruise control from a complete stop, stop your vehicle behind another vehicle.

**Note:** Your vehicle must be stopped behind another vehicle to activate adaptive cruise control from a complete stop.

## Manually Changing the Set Speed

**SET+**

Press and release the toggle button upward to increase the set speed in small increments.

Press and hold the toggle button upward to increase the set speed in large increments. Release the button once the set speed is equal to the speed you prefer.

**SET-**

Press and release the toggle button downward to decrease the set speed in small increments.

Press and hold the toggle button downward to decrease the set speed in large increments. Release the button once the set speed is equal to the speed you prefer.

You can also press the accelerator or brake pedal until you reach the speed you prefer. Press the toggle button upward or downward to select the current speed as the set speed.

The system may apply the brakes to slow the vehicle to the new set speed. The set speed continuously displays in the information display when the system is active.

## SETTING THE ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL GAP



Press the button to cycle through the four gap settings.



The selected gap appears in the instrument cluster display as shown by the bars in the image.

**Note:** The gap setting is time dependent and therefore, the distance adjusts with your vehicle speed.

**Note:** It is your responsibility to select a gap appropriate to the driving conditions.

# Adaptive Cruise Control (If Equipped)

## Adaptive Cruise Control Gap Settings

Graphic Display, Bars Indicated Between Vehicles	Gap Distance	Dynamic Behavior
1	Closest.	Sport.
2	Close.	Normal.
3	Medium.	Normal.
4	Far.	Comfort.

Each time you switch the system on, it selects the last chosen gap setting.

### Following a Vehicle

When a vehicle ahead of you enters the same lane or a slower vehicle is ahead in the same lane, the vehicle speed adjusts to maintain the gap setting.

**Note:** *When you are following a vehicle and you switch on the turn signal, adaptive cruise control may provide a small, temporary acceleration to help you pass.*

Your vehicle maintains a consistent gap from the vehicle ahead until:

- The vehicle in front of you accelerates to a speed above the set speed.
- The vehicle in front of you moves out of the lane you are in.
- You set a new gap distance.

The system applies the brakes to slow down your vehicle to maintain a safe gap distance from the vehicle in front of you. The system only applies limited braking. You can override the system by applying the brakes.

**Note:** *The brakes may emit noise when applied by the system.*

If the system determines that its maximum braking level is not sufficient, an audible warning sounds, a message appears in the instrument cluster display and an indicator flashes when the system continues to brake. Immediately apply the brakes manually.

## CANCELING THE SET SPEED



Press the button or tap the brake pedal.

The set speed does not erase.

## RESUMING THE SET SPEED



Press the button.

Your vehicle speed returns to the previously set speed and gap setting. The set speed displays continuously in the information display when the system is active.

**Note:** *Only use resume if you are aware of the set speed and intend to return to it.*

## Resuming the Set Speed from a Complete Stop

If your vehicle follows a vehicle to a complete stop and remains stationary for less than three seconds, your vehicle accelerates from a stationary position to follow the vehicle ahead.



If your vehicle follows a vehicle to a complete stop and remains stationary for more than three seconds, press and release the button or press the accelerator pedal to follow the vehicle ahead.

# Adaptive Cruise Control (If Equipped)

## OVERRIDING THE SET SPEED



**WARNING:** If you override the system by pressing the accelerator pedal, it does not automatically apply the brakes to maintain a gap from any vehicle ahead.

When you press the accelerator pedal, you override the set speed and gap distance.

Use the accelerator pedal to intentionally exceed the set speed limit.

When you override the system, the green indicator illuminates and the vehicle icon does not appear in the instrument cluster display.

The system resumes operation when you release the accelerator pedal. The vehicle speed decreases to the set speed, or a lower speed if following a slower vehicle.

## ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL INDICATORS



Illuminates when you switch adaptive cruise control on. The color of the indicator changes to indicate the system status.

White indicates the system is on but inactive.

Green indicates that you set the speed and the system is active.

## SWITCHING FROM ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL TO CRUISE CONTROL



**WARNING:** Normal cruise control will not brake when your vehicle is approaching slower vehicles. Always be aware of which mode you have selected and apply the brakes when necessary.

Use the instrument cluster display to select the following:

1. Select **Settings**.
2. Select **Driver Assistance**.
3. Select **Cruise Control**.
4. Select **Normal**.



The cruise control indicator replaces the adaptive cruise control indicator if you select normal cruise control. The gap setting does not display, and the system does not respond to lead vehicles. Automatic braking remains active to maintain set speed. The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.

## LANE CENTERING

### HOW DOES LANE CENTERING WORK

Adaptive cruise control with lane centering uses radar and camera sensors to help keep your vehicle in the lane by applying continuous assistance steering torque input toward the lane center on highways.

**Note:** *The adaptive cruise control gap setting operates normally.*



# Adaptive Cruise Control (If Equipped)

## LANE CENTERING PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Do not use the system when towing a trailer. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Do not use the system if any changes or modifications to the steering wheel have been made. Any changes or modifications to the steering wheel could affect the functionality or performance of the system. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

Adaptive cruise control precautions apply to lane centering unless stated otherwise or contradicted by a lane centering precaution. See **Adaptive Cruise Control Precautions** (page 215).

## LANE CENTERING REQUIREMENTS

You must keep your hands on the steering wheel at all times.

The system only activates when all of the following occur:

- You have adaptive cruise control with stop and go on.
- Lane centering assist is enabled in your information and entertainment screen. See **Switching Lane Centering On and Off** (page 222).
- You have your hands on the steering wheel.
- The system detects both lane markings.

**Note:** *If it does not detect valid lane markings, the system stays inactive until valid markings are available.*

## LANE CENTERING LIMITATIONS

Adaptive cruise control limitations apply to lane centering unless stated otherwise or contradicted by a lane centering limitation. See **Adaptive Cruise Control Limitations** (page 216).

Lane Centering may not correctly operate in any of the following conditions:

- Your vehicle is not centered in the lane.
- The lane is too narrow or wide.
- The system does not detect at least one lane marking or when lanes merge or split.
- Limited steering torque input is applied.
- Areas under construction or new infrastructure.
- When modifications to the steering system have been made.
- When using a spare tire.
- In high wind conditions.

**Note:** *The driving assistance torque is limited and may not be sufficient for all driving situations such as driving through tight curves or driving through curves at high speeds.*

**Note:** *In exceptional conditions, the system may deviate from the center line.*

## SWITCHING LANE CENTERING ON AND OFF

You must keep your hands on the steering wheel at all times.

The controls are on the steering wheel.



Press the button.

The indicator appears in the information display. When the system is on, the color of the indicator changes to indicate the system status.

# Adaptive Cruise Control (If Equipped)

You can override the system at any time by steering your vehicle.

**Note:** *The correct requirements must be met before you can switch the system on. See **Lane Centering Requirements** (page 222).*

## LANE CENTERING ALERTS

You must keep your hands on the steering wheel at all times.

When the system is active and detects no steering activity for a period of time, the system alerts you to put your hands on the steering wheel. If you do not react to the warnings the system cancels and slows your vehicle down to idle speeds while maintaining steering control.

The system also alerts you if your vehicle crosses lane markings without detected steering activity.

**Note:** *The system may detect a light grip or touch on the steering wheel as hands-off driving.*

## LANE CENTERING AUTOMATIC CANCELLATION

When an external condition cancels the system, for example, no lane markings available, a tone sounds and a message appears in the instrument cluster display.

**RES** If your vehicle starts to slow down, you must provide steering input to the wheel and press and release the button to regain full system performance.

Automatic cancellation can also occur if:

- The lane becomes too wide or too narrow.
- The system cannot detect valid lane markings.
- Lane markings cross over one another.

**Note:** *The system disables until the next key cycle if your vehicle slows down due to driver inactivity twice within a key cycle.*

## LANE CENTERING INDICATORS



Illuminates when you switch lane centering on. The color of the indicator changes to indicate the system status.

Gray indicates the system is on but inactive.

Green indicates the system is active and applying steering torque assistance input to keep your vehicle in the center of the lane.

Amber with an audible tone and then gray indicates a system automatic cancellation.

## ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL – TROUBLESHOOTING

### ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL – INFORMATION MESSAGES - VEHICLES WITH: ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL WITH LANE CENTERING

**Note:** *Depending on your vehicle options and instrument cluster type, not all messages display or are available.*

**Note:** *The system could abbreviate or shorten certain messages depending upon which cluster type you have.*

## Adaptive Cruise Control (If Equipped)

---

<b>Message</b>	<b>Action</b>
Keep Hands on Steering Wheel	Make sure you return your hands to the steering wheel and provide steering input.
Lane Centering Assist Not Available	Lane centering assist conditions exist preventing the system from being available.
For Lane Centering Assist to work Turn On Adaptive Cruise	Adaptive cruise control must be on before lane centering can be switched on.

## Adaptive Cruise Control (If Equipped)

### ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL – INFORMATION MESSAGES - VEHICLES WITH: STOP AND GO

**Note:** Depending on your vehicle options and instrument cluster type, not all messages display or are available.

**Note:** The system could abbreviate or shorten certain messages depending upon which cluster type you have.

Message	Action
Adaptive Cruise Malfunction	A malfunction is preventing the adaptive cruise from engaging.
Front Sensor Not Aligned	Contact an authorized dealer to have the radar checked for proper coverage and operation.
Adaptive Cruise Not Available	Conditions exist preventing the system from being available.
Adaptive Cruise Not Available Sensor Blocked See Manual	You have a blocked radar because of poor radar visibility due to inclement weather or ice, mud, or water in front of the radar. You can typically clean the sensor to resolve this. Due to the nature of radar technology, it is possible to get a blockage warning with no actual block. This happens, for example, when driving in sparse rural or desert environments. A false blocked condition either self clears, or clears after you restart your vehicle.
Normal Cruise Active Adaptive Braking Off	You have selected normal cruise control. The system does not brake or react to traffic.
Adaptive Cruise - Driver Resume Control	Displays when the adaptive cruise control is going to cancel and you must take control.
Adaptive Cruise Speed Too Low to Activate	Displays when the vehicle speed is too slow to activate the adaptive cruise control and there is no lead vehicle in range.

# Drive Mode Control

## WHAT IS DRIVE MODE CONTROL

Your vehicle has various drive modes that you can select for different driving conditions. Depending on the drive mode that you select, the system adjusts various vehicle settings.

## HOW DOES DRIVE MODE CONTROL WORK

Selectable drive modes change various electronic and mechanical settings within your vehicle to tailor its performance and driving characteristics to on-road or off-road driving conditions. Steering feel and effort, traction control, stability control, chassis control, powertrain response, transmission shift points and four-wheel driveline settings alter to a pre-determined setting depending upon the drive mode that you select.

**Note:** Your vehicle has diagnostic checks that continuously monitor all systems for proper operation. If a drive mode is unavailable due to a system fault, your vehicle defaults to normal mode.

## SELECTING A DRIVE MODE



To select drive modes, use the console mounted control.

**Note:** Drive mode changes may not be available when the ignition is off.

**Note:** Button icon shown may vary from your vehicle.

**Note:** Selected drive mode displays in the instrument cluster display.

## DRIVE MODES

### ECO (If Equipped)



For efficient driving. This mode helps deliver maximum fuel efficiency and helps to increase driving range.

### MUD/RUTS (If Equipped)



For off-road driving. This mode enhances vehicle performance to traverse muddy, rutted or uneven terrains. Lower gears hold longer in mud/ruts mode to maintain momentum in soft conditions. Mud/ruts mode optimizes braking for off-road conditions, allowing quick path corrections and minimized stopping distance when on deformable surfaces.

**Note:** This mode may help get your vehicle unstuck from deep snow or sand.

**Note:** Using mud/ruts mode on dry, hard surfaces could produce some vibration, driveline bind up, and potential excessive tire and vehicle wear.

# Drive Mode Control

## NORMAL



For everyday driving. This mode is a perfect balance of excitement, comfort and convenience. This is the default mode after each ignition cycle.

## SAND (If Equipped)



For off-road driving. Sand mode is for off-road driving on soft, dry sand or deep conditions. Lower gears hold longer in sand mode to maintain momentum in soft conditions. Sand mode optimizes braking for off-road conditions, allowing quick path corrections and minimized stopping distance when on deformable surfaces.

**Note:** *Using sand mode on dry, hard surfaces could produce some vibration, driveline bind up, potential excessive tire wear and vehicle wear.*

**Note:** *Do not use on firm, slippery surfaces, such as paved roads covered with snow or ice or driving on packed snow. For slippery, firm surfaces use slippery mode.*

## SLIPPERY



For less than ideal road conditions such as snow or ice covered roads. You can use this mode for crossing terrain where loose, wet or slippery materials covers a firm surface. Slippery mode lowers throttle response and optimizes shifting for slippery surfaces.

## SPORT (If Equipped)



For sporty driving with improved performance handling and response. This mode increases throttle response and provides a sportier steering feel. The powertrain system provides improved gear holding, helping your vehicle accelerate faster.

## TOW/HAUL



For improved transmission operation when towing a trailer or a heavy load. This mode moves upshifts to higher engine speeds to reduce the frequency of transmission shifting. This mode also provides engine braking in all forward gears, which slows your vehicle and assists you in controlling your vehicle when descending a slope. The amount of downshift braking provided varies based on the amount you press the brake pedal.

The system tunes the steering and suspension to enhance driving comfort when towing or carrying heavy loads.

## DRIVE MODE CONTROL – TROUBLESHOOTING

### DRIVE MODE CONTROL – WARNING LAMPS



Some drive modes reduce traction and stability control performance and the indicator illuminates in the instrument cluster.

# Drive Mode Control

---

## DRIVE MODE CONTROL – INFORMATION MESSAGES

<b>Message</b>	<b>Action</b>
Drive Mode Not Available	You have selected a mode that is not available. The system reverts to normal mode.

# Drive Mode Control

---

## **DRIVE MODE CONTROL – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS**

### **Why did the system default to normal mode?**

If a mode is unavailable due to a system fault, it defaults to normal mode and the driveline settings remain the same as prior to the system fault.



# Lane Keeping System (If Equipped)

## WHAT IS THE LANE KEEPING SYSTEM

The lane keeping system alerts you by providing temporary steering assistance or steering wheel vibration when it detects an unintended lane departure.

## HOW DOES THE LANE KEEPING SYSTEM WORK

The lane keeping system uses a forward looking camera mounted on the windshield to monitor vehicle movement within the travel lane.

When the camera detects a drift out of the travel lane, the lane keeping system alerts the driver by vibrating the steering wheel, or aids the driver by providing a small steering input to move the vehicle back into the travel lane.

The driver can select one of three modes:

- Alert (If Equipped)
- Aid
- Alert + Aid

## LANE KEEPING SYSTEM PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** The system will not operate if the sensor cannot track the road lane markings.



**WARNING:** The sensor may incorrectly track lane markings as other structures or objects. This can result in a false or missed warning.



**WARNING:** In cold and severe weather conditions the system may not function. Rain, snow and spray can all limit sensor performance.



**WARNING:** The system may not operate properly if the sensor is blocked. Keep the windshield free from obstruction.



**WARNING:** If damage occurs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.



**WARNING:** The system may not correctly operate if your vehicle is fitted with a suspension kit not approved by us.



**WARNING:** Large contrasts in outside lighting can limit sensor performance.

## LANE KEEPING SYSTEM LIMITATIONS

The lane keeping system only operates when the vehicle speed is greater than 40 mph (64 km/h).

The system works when the camera can detect at least one lane marking.

The lane keeping system may not correctly operate in any of the following conditions:

- The lane keeping system does not detect at least one lane marking.
- You switch the turn signal on.

## Lane Keeping System (If Equipped)

- You apply direct steering, accelerate fast or brake hard.
- The vehicle speed is less than 40 mph (64 km/h).
- The anti-lock brake, stability control or traction control system activates.
- The lane is too narrow.
- Something is obscuring the camera or it is unable to detect the lane markings due to environment, traffic or vehicle conditions.

The lane keeping system may not correct lane positioning in any of the following conditions:

- High winds.
- Uneven road surfaces.
- Heavy or uneven loads.
- Incorrect tire pressure.

### SWITCHING THE LANE KEEPING SYSTEM ON AND OFF



To activate the system, press the button on the turn signal lever.

To deactivate the system, press the button again.

**Note:** When switching the system on or off a message appears in the information and entertainment display to show the status.

**Note:** The system stores the on or off setting until manually changed, unless it detects a MyKey™. If the system detects a MyKey™, it defaults to the last setting for that MyKey™.

**Note:** If the system detects a MyKey™, pressing the button does not affect the on or off status of the system. You can only change the mode and intensity settings.

### SWITCHING THE LANE KEEPING SYSTEM MODE

The lane keeping system has different settings that you can view or adjust using the information display.

The system stores the last known selection for each of these settings. You do not need to readjust your settings each time you switch on the system.

To change the lane keeping system mode, use the instrument cluster display:

1. Select **Settings**.
2. Select **Driver Assistance**.
3. Select **Lane-Keeping System**.
4. Select **Mode**.
5. Select a mode.

**Note:** The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle. If the system detects a MyKey™, it defaults to the last setting for that MyKey™.

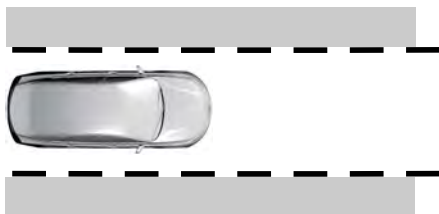
### ALERT MODE

#### WHAT IS ALERT MODE

Alert mode vibrates the steering wheel when it detects an unintended lane departure.

# Lane Keeping System (If Equipped)

## HOW DOES ALERT MODE WORK



When in alert mode, the lane keeping system alerts you by vibrating the steering wheel. The intensity of the vibration is set through the lane keeping system menu.

## ADJUSTING THE STEERING WHEEL VIBRATION INTENSITY

To change the steering wheel vibration intensity, use the instrument cluster display:

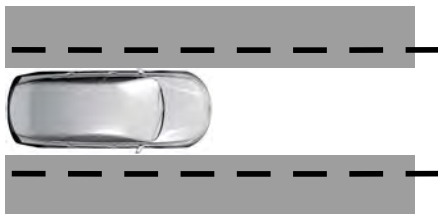
1. Select **Settings**.
2. Select **Driver Assistance**.
3. Select **Lane-Keeping System**.
4. Select **Intensity**.
5. Select an intensity setting.

## AID MODE

### WHAT IS AID MODE

Aid mode provides temporary steering assistance toward the center of the lane.

## HOW DOES AID MODE WORK



The lane keeping system aids you when an unintentional lane departure occurs. The system provides a small steering input to move the vehicle towards the center of the lane.

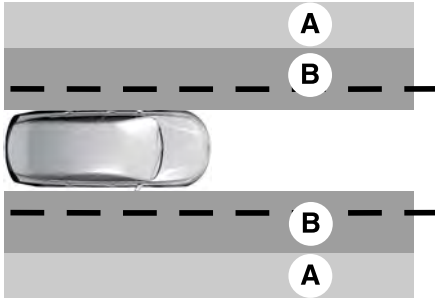
## ALERT AND AID MODE

### WHAT IS ALERT AND AID MODE

Alert and aid mode uses multiple features to keep you in your lane. The system first provides a small steering input to bring your vehicle back towards the center of the lane. If your vehicle moves too far out of the center of the lane the system alerts you with vibration in the steering wheel.

# Lane Keeping System (If Equipped)

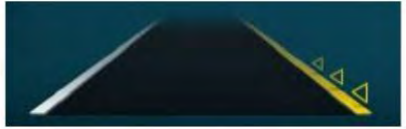
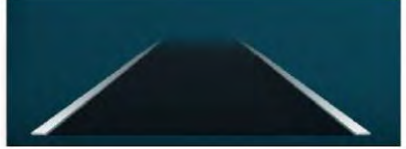
## HOW DOES ALERT AND AID MODE WORK



- A Alert.
- B Aid.

The lane keeping system detects a lane departure and provides aid when the vehicles enters **B** and applies the additional alert warning if **A** is entered.

## LANE KEEPING SYSTEM INDICATORS



If you switch the lane keeping system on, a graphic with lane markings appears in the instrument cluster display.

When you switch the system off, the lane marking graphics do not display.

**Note:** *The overhead vehicle graphic may still display if adaptive cruise control is enabled.*

While the lane keeping system is on, the color of the lane markings change to indicate the system status.

Gray	White	Yellow	Red
Indicates that the system is temporarily unavailable to provide a warning or intervention on the indicated side.	Indicates that the system is available or ready to provide a warning or intervention on the indicated side.	Indicates that the system is providing or has just provided a lane keeping aid intervention.	Indicates that the system is providing or has just provided a lane keeping alert warning.

# Lane Keeping System (If Equipped)

## LANE KEEPING SYSTEM – TROUBLESHOOTING

### LANE KEEPING SYSTEM – INFORMATION MESSAGES

<b>Message</b>	<b>Action</b>
Lane Keeping Sys. Malfunction Service Required	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Front Camera Temporarily Not Available	The system has detected a condition that has caused the system to be temporarily unavailable.
Front Camera Low Visibility Clean Screen	The system has detected a condition that requires you to clean the windshield in order for it to operate properly.
Front Camera Malfunction Service Required	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Keep Hands on Steering Wheel	The system requests that you keep your hands on the steering wheel.

# Lane Keeping System (If Equipped)

## LANE KEEPING SYSTEM – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

<b>Why is the feature not available (lane markings are gray) when I can see the lane markings on the road?</b>
Your vehicle speed is less than 40 mph (65 km/h).
The sun is shining directly into the camera lens.
A quick intentional lane change has occurred.
Your vehicle stays too close to the lane markings for an extended interval of time.
Driving at high speeds in curves.
The last alert warning or aid intervention occurred a short time ago.
Ambiguous lane markings, for example, in construction zones.
Rapid transition from light to dark, or from dark to light.
Sudden offset in lane markings.
ABS or AdvanceTrac™ is active.
There is a camera blockage due to dirt, grime, fog, frost or water on the windshield.
You are driving too close to the vehicle in front of you.
Transitioning between no lane markings to lane markings, or vice versa.
There is standing water on the road.
Faint lane markings, for example, partial yellow lane markings on concrete roads.
Lane width is too narrow or too wide.
You have not calibrated the camera after a windshield replacement.
Driving on tight or on uneven roads.

## Lane Keeping System (If Equipped)

---

**Why does the vehicle not come back toward the middle of the lane, as expected, in the Aid, or Aid + Alert mode?**

High cross winds are present.

There is a large road crown.

Rough roads, grooves or shoulder drop-offs.

Heavy, uneven loading of the vehicle or improper tire inflation pressure.

You changed the tires or modified the suspension.

# Blind Spot Information System (If Equipped)

## WHAT IS BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM

Blind spot information system detects vehicles that may have entered the blind spot zone.

## HOW DOES BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM WORK

Blind spot information system uses sensors on both sides of your vehicle, detecting rearward from the exterior mirrors to approximately 13 ft (4 m) beyond the rear bumper. The detection area extends to approximately 59 ft (18 m) beyond the rear bumper when the vehicle speed is greater than 30 mph (48 km/h) to alert you of faster approaching vehicles.



## BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Do not use the blind spot information system as a replacement for using the interior and exterior mirrors or looking over your shoulder before changing lanes. The blind spot information system is not a replacement for careful driving.



**WARNING:** The system may not operate properly during severe weather conditions, for example snow, ice, heavy rain and spray. Always drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in a crash.

**Note:** *Blind spot information system does not prevent contact with other vehicles. It does not detect parked vehicles, pedestrians, animals or other infrastructure.*

## BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM LIMITATIONS

Blind spot information system does not operate in park (P) or reverse (R).

The system may not alert you if a vehicle quickly passes through the detection zone.

## BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM REQUIREMENTS

Blind spot information system turns on when all the following occur:

- You start your vehicle.
- You shift into drive (D).
- The vehicle speed is greater than 6 mph (10 km/h).

## SWITCHING BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM ON AND OFF

To switch blind spot information system on or off, use the instrument cluster display:

1. Select **Settings**.
2. Select **Driver Assistance**.
3. Switch **Blind Spot** on or off.



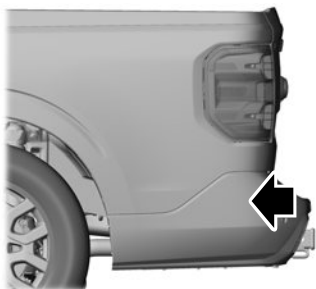
## Blind Spot Information System (If Equipped)

When you switch blind spot information system off, a warning lamp illuminates and a message displays. When you switch the system on or off, the alert indicators flash twice.

**Note:** The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.

To permanently switch the system off, contact an authorized dealer.

### LOCATING THE BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM SENSORS



The sensors are behind the rear bumper on both sides of your vehicle.

**Note:** Keep the sensors free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt.

**Note:** Do not cover the sensors with bumper stickers, repair compound or other objects.

**Note:** Blocked sensors may affect system accuracy.

**Note:** Bike and cargo racks could cause false alerts due to obstruction of the sensor. We recommend switching the feature off when using a bike or cargo rack.

If the sensors become blocked, a message may appear in the information display. The alert indicators remain illuminated but the system does not alert you.

### BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM INDICATORS



When blind spot information system detects a vehicle, an alert indicator illuminates in the exterior mirror on the side the approaching vehicle is coming from. If you turn the turn signal on for that side of your vehicle, the alert indicator flashes.

# Blind Spot Information System (If Equipped)

---

## BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM – TROUBLESHOOTING

### BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM – INFORMATION MESSAGES

<b>Message</b>	<b>Action</b>
Blind Spot System Fault	A fault with the system has occurred. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Blind Spot Not Available Sensor Blocked See Manual	Something is blocking the sensors. Clean the sensors.
Blind Spot Alert Deactivated Trailer Attached	The system automatically turns off and displays this message when you connect a trailer to the vehicle that does not have a trailer blind spot system or when you switch the trailer blind spot system off through the touchscreen.

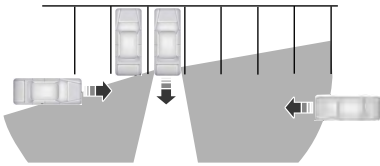
# Cross Traffic Alert (If Equipped)

## WHAT IS CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT

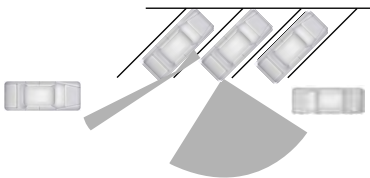
The system alerts you of vehicles approaching from the sides behind your vehicle when you shift into reverse (R).

## HOW DOES CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT WORK

Cross traffic alert detects vehicles that approach at a speed between 4–37 mph (6–60 km/h). Coverage decreases when the sensors are partially, mostly or fully obstructed.



The sensor on the left-hand side is only partially obstructed and zone coverage on the right-hand side is maximized.



Zone coverage also decreases when parking at narrow angles. The sensor on the left-hand side is mostly obstructed and zone coverage on that side is severely reduced.

**Note:** *Slowly reversing helps increase the coverage area and effectiveness.*

## CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT PRECAUTIONS

**WARNING:** Do not use the cross traffic alert system as a replacement for using the interior and exterior mirrors or looking over your shoulder before reversing out of a parking space. The cross traffic alert system is not a replacement for careful driving.

**WARNING:** The system may not operate properly during severe weather conditions, for example snow, ice, heavy rain and spray. Always drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in a crash.

## CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT LIMITATIONS

Cross traffic alert may not correctly operate when any of the following occur:

- Something is blocking the sensors.
- Adjacently parked vehicles or objects are obstructing the sensors.
- Vehicles approach at speeds less than 4 mph (6 km/h) or greater than 37 mph (60 km/h).
- Your vehicle speed is greater than 7 mph (12 km/h).
- You reverse out of an angled parking space.

## SWITCHING CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT ON AND OFF

To switch cross traffic alert on or off, use the instrument cluster display:

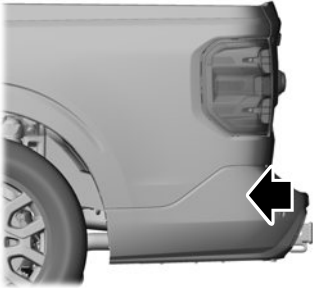
1. Select **Settings**.
2. Select **Driver Assistance**.

## Cross Traffic Alert (If Equipped)

3. Switch **Cross Traffic Alert** on or off.

**Note:** The system switches on every time you switch the ignition on. To permanently switch the system off, contact an authorized dealer.

### LOCATING THE CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT SENSORS



The sensors are behind the rear fascia panel.

**Note:** Keep the sensors free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt.

**Note:** Do not cover the sensors with bumper stickers, repair compound or other objects.

**Note:** Bike and cargo racks could cause false alerts due to obstruction of the sensor. We recommend switching the feature off when using a bike or cargo rack.

**Note:** Blocked sensors may affect system accuracy.

If something is blocking the sensors, a message may appear in the information display when you shift into reverse (R).

### CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT INDICATORS



When the cross traffic alert detects an approaching vehicle, a tone sounds, a warning lamp illuminates in the relevant exterior mirror and arrows appear in the information display to show which side the vehicle is approaching from.

If the system malfunctions, a warning lamp illuminates in the instrument cluster and a message appears in the information display. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

**Note:** If arrows do not display, a message appears in the information display.

**Note:** In some conditions, the system could alert you, even when there is nothing in the detection zone, for example a vehicle passing further away from your vehicle.

## Cross Traffic Alert (If Equipped)

---

### CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT – TROUBLESHOOTING

#### CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT – INFORMATION MESSAGES

<b>Message</b>	<b>Action</b>
Cross Traffic Alert	Displays instead of indication arrows when the system detects a vehicle. Check for approaching traffic.
Cross Traffic Not Available Sensor Blocked See Manual	Indicates blocked cross traffic alert system sensors. Clean the sensors. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Cross Traffic System Fault	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Cross Traffic Alert Deactivated Trailer Attached	Displays if you attach a trailer to your vehicle.

# Pre-Collision Assist

## WHAT IS PRE-COLLISION ASSIST

Pre-collision assist detects and warns of approaching hazards in the roadway. If your vehicle is rapidly approaching another stationary vehicle, a vehicle traveling in the same direction as yours, or a pedestrian within your driving path, the system provides multiple levels of assistance to help avoid a collision.

## HOW DOES PRE-COLLISION ASSIST WORK

The system warns the driver of potential hazards by providing three levels of assistance.



If your vehicle is rapidly approaching potential hazards, the system provides the following levels of functionality:

1. Alert.
2. Brake Support.
3. Automatic Emergency Braking.



**Alert:** When active, a flashing visual warning appears and an audible warning tone sounds.

**Brake Support:** The system is designed to help reduce the impact speed by preparing the brakes for rapid braking. The system does not automatically apply the brakes. If you press the brake pedal, the system could apply additional braking up to maximum braking force, even if you lightly press the brake pedal.

**Automatic Emergency Braking:** This may activate if the system determines that a collision is imminent.

**Note:** If you perceive pre-collision assist alerts as being too frequent or disturbing, you can reduce the alert sensitivity, although we recommend using the highest sensitivity setting where possible. Setting a lower sensitivity leads to fewer and later system warnings.

Each system has various levels of detection capabilities. See **Pre-Collision Assist Limitations** (page 244).

## PRE-COLLISION ASSIST PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** The system does not detect vehicles that are driving in a different direction, cyclists or animals. Apply the brakes when necessary. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** The system does not operate during hard acceleration or steering. Failure to take care may lead to a crash or personal injury.



**WARNING:** The system may fail or operate with reduced function during cold and severe weather conditions. Snow, ice, rain, spray and fog can adversely affect the system. Keep the front camera and radar free of snow and ice. Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

# Pre-Collision Assist



**WARNING:** Take additional care if your vehicle is heavily loaded or you are towing a trailer. These conditions could result in reduced performance of this system. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** The system cannot help prevent all crashes. Do not rely on this system to replace driver judgment and the need to maintain a safe distance and speed.



**WARNING:** In situations where the vehicle camera has limited detection capability, this may reduce system performance. These situations include but are not limited to direct or low sunlight, vehicles at night without tail lights, unconventional vehicle types, pedestrians with complex backgrounds, running pedestrians, partly obscured pedestrians, or pedestrians that the system cannot distinguish from a group. Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

## PRE-COLLISION ASSIST LIMITATIONS

Pre-collision assist depends on the detection ability of its camera and sensors. Any obstructions or damage to these areas can limit detection or prevent the system from functioning. See **Locating the Pre-Collision Assist Sensors** (page 245).

The system is active at speeds above 3 mph (5 km/h).

**Note:** *Brake support and automatic emergency braking are active at speeds up to 80 mph (130 km/h). If your vehicle has a radar sensor included with adaptive cruise control, then brake support and automatic emergency braking are active up to the maximum speed of the vehicle.*

## Pedestrian Detection Limitations

Pedestrian detection is active at speeds up to 50 mph (80 km/h).

Pedestrian detection operates optimally when detected hazards are clearly identifiable. System performance may reduce in situations where pedestrians are running, partly obscured, have a complex background, or cannot be distinguished from a group.

## SWITCHING PRE-COLLISION ASSIST ON AND OFF

You cannot switch the system off.

## Adjusting the Pre-Collision Assist Settings

You can adjust the following settings by using the touchscreen controls in the pre-collision assist menu:

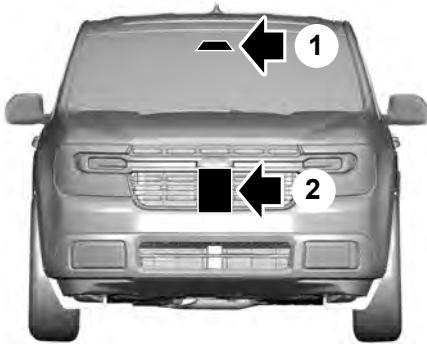
- Change alert and distance alert sensitivity to one of three possible settings.
- Switch distance indication and alert on or off.
- If required, switch automatic emergency braking on or off.
- If required, switch evasive steering assist on or off.

**Note:** *Automatic emergency braking and evasive steering automatically turns on every time you switch the ignition on.*

# Pre-Collision Assist

**Note:** If you switch automatic emergency braking off, evasive steering assist switches off.

## LOCATING THE PRE-COLLISION ASSIST SENSORS



1. Camera.
2. Radar sensor (if equipped).

If a message regarding a blocked sensor or camera appears in the information display, something is obstructing the radar signals or camera images. The radar sensor is behind the fascia cover in the center of the lower grille. With a blocked sensor or camera, the system may not function, or performance may reduce. See **Pre-Collision Assist – Information Messages** (page 248).

**Note:** Proper system operation requires a clear view of the road by the camera. Repair any windshield damage in the area of the camera's field of view.

**Note:** If something hits the front end of your vehicle or damage occurs and your vehicle has a radar sensor, the radar sensing zone could change. This could cause missed or false vehicle detections. Have your vehicle serviced to have the radar checked for proper coverage and operation.

**Note:** If your vehicle detects excessive heat at the camera or a potential misalignment condition, a message could display in the information display indicating temporary sensor unavailability. When operational conditions are correct, the message deactivates. For example, when the ambient temperature around the sensor decreases or the sensor recalibrates successfully.

## DISTANCE INDICATION (IF EQUIPPED)

### WHAT IS DISTANCE INDICATION

Distance indication displays the gap between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you.

**Note:** The graphic does not display if you switch on cruise control or adaptive cruise control.



# Pre-Collision Assist

---

<b>Vehicle Speed</b>	<b>System Sensitivity</b>	<b>Distance Indicator Color</b>	<b>Distance Gap</b>	<b>Time Gap</b>
62 mph (100 km/h).	Normal.	Gray.	Greater than 82 ft (25 m).	Greater than 0.9 seconds.
		Yellow.	56–82 ft (17–25 m).	0.6–0.9 seconds.
		Red.	Less than 56 ft (17 m).	Less than 0.6 seconds.

# Pre-Collision Assist

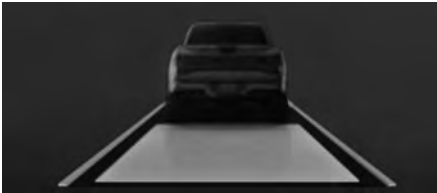
## SWITCHING DISTANCE INDICATION ON AND OFF

To switch the system on or off, use the instrument cluster display:

1. Select **Settings**.
2. Select **Driver Assistance**.
3. Select **Pre-Collision Assist**.
4. Switch **Distance indication** on or off.

## DISTANCE INDICATION INDICATOR

The indicator displays the time gap between your vehicle and vehicles traveling in the same direction ahead of you.



## DISTANCE ALERT (IF EQUIPPED)

### WHAT IS DISTANCE ALERT

The system alerts you with a warning lamp if the distance to the vehicle ahead is small.

**Note:** *The warning lamp does not illuminate if cruise control or adaptive cruise control is active.*

### ADJUSTING THE SENSITIVITY OF DISTANCE ALERT

To adjust the sensitivity of the system, use the instrument cluster display:

1. Select **Settings**.

2. Select **Driver Assistance**.
3. Select **Pre-Collision Assist**.
4. Select **Alert sensitivity**.
5. Select a setting.

## AUTOMATIC EMERGENCY BRAKING

### WHAT IS AUTOMATIC EMERGENCY BRAKING

Automatic emergency braking may activate if the system determines that a collision is imminent. The system may help reduce impact damage to avoid the crash completely.

Automatic emergency braking is only available up to certain speeds. See **Pre-Collision Assist Limitations** (page 244).

### SWITCHING AUTOMATIC EMERGENCY BRAKING ON AND OFF

To switch the system on or off, use the instrument cluster display:

1. Select **Settings**.
2. Select **Driver Assistance**.
3. Select **Pre-Collision Assist**.
4. Switch **Active braking** on or off.

## EVASIVE STEERING ASSIST (IF EQUIPPED)

### WHAT IS EVASIVE STEERING ASSIST

If your vehicle is rapidly approaching a road user, evasive steering assist helps you steer around the road user.

# Pre-Collision Assist

After you turn the steering wheel in an attempt to avoid a crash with the road user, the system applies additional steering torque to help you steer around the road user. After you pass the road user, the system applies steering torque when you turn the steering wheel to steer back into the lane. The system deactivates after you fully pass the road user.

**Note:** Road users are defined as another stationary vehicle in the same lane or a vehicle traveling in the same lane in the same direction as you. See **Pre-Collision Assist Precautions** (page 243).

## EVASIVE STEERING ASSIST LIMITATIONS

Evasive steering assist only activates when all the following occur:

- Automatic emergency braking and evasive steering assist are on.
- The system detects a road user ahead and starts to apply the brakes.
- You significantly turn the steering wheel to steer around a road user.

**Note:** Evasive steering assist does not automatically steer around a road user. If you do not turn the steering wheel, evasive steering assist does not activate.

**Note:** Evasive steering assist does not activate if the distance to the road user ahead is too small and the system cannot avoid a crash.

**Note:** Evasive steering does not activate with cyclists or pedestrians.

## SWITCHING EVASIVE STEERING ASSIST ON AND OFF

To switch the system on or off, use the instrument cluster display:

1. Select **Settings**.
2. Select **Driver Assistance**.
3. Select **Pre-Collision Assist**.
4. Switch **Evasive steering** on or off.

**Note:** If you switch automatic emergency braking off, evasive steering assist turns off.

**Note:** Automatic emergency braking and evasive steering assist turn on every time you switch the ignition on.

## PRE-COLLISION ASSIST – TROUBLESHOOTING

### PRE-COLLISION ASSIST – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
Pre-Collision Assist Not Available Sensor Blocked	You have a blocked sensor due to bad weather, ice, mud or water in front of the radar sensor. You can typically clean the sensor to resolve.
Pre-Collision Assist Not Available	A fault with the system has occurred. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

# Pre-Collision Assist

---

## **PRE-COLLISION ASSIST – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS**

### **Camera Troubleshooting**

#### **The windshield in front of the camera is dirty or obstructed.**

Clean the outside of the windshield in front of the camera.

#### **The windshield in front of the camera is clean, but the message remains in the instrument cluster display.**

Wait a short time. It could take several minutes for the camera to detect that there is no obstruction.

### **Radar Troubleshooting (If Equipped)**

#### **The surface of the radar in the grille is dirty or obstructed.**

Clean the grille surface in front of the radar or remove the object causing the obstruction.

#### **The surface of the radar in the grille is clean, but the message remains in the instrument cluster display.**

Wait a short time. It could take several minutes for the radar to detect that there is no obstruction.

#### **Heavy rain, spray or fog is interfering with the radar signals.**

The pre-collision assist system is temporarily disabled. Pre-collision assist reactivates a short time after the weather conditions improve.

#### **Swirling water or snow or ice on the surface of the road could interfere with the radar signals.**

The pre-collision assist system is temporarily disabled. Pre-collision assist reactivates a short time after the weather conditions improve.

#### **Radar is out of alignment due to a front end impact.**

Have your vehicle serviced to have the radar checked for proper coverage and operation.

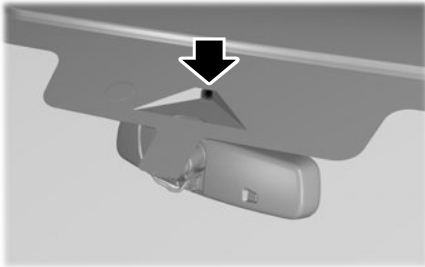
# Driver Alert

## WHAT IS DRIVER ALERT

Driver alert alerts you if it determines that you are becoming drowsy or if your driving deteriorates.

## HOW DOES DRIVER ALERT WORK

Driver Alert calculates your alertness level based on your driving behavior in relation to the lane markings and other factors through use of the front camera sensor behind the interior mirror.



## DRIVER ALERT PRECAUTIONS

**WARNING:** You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** Take regular rest breaks if you feel tired. Do not wait for the system to warn you.

**WARNING:** Certain driving styles may result in the system warning you even if you are not feeling tired.

**WARNING:** In cold and severe weather conditions the system may not function. Rain, snow and spray can all limit sensor performance.

**WARNING:** The system will not operate if the sensor cannot track the road lane markings.

**WARNING:** If damage occurs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

**WARNING:** The system may not correctly operate if your vehicle is fitted with a suspension kit not approved by us.

**WARNING:** The system may not operate properly if the sensor is blocked. Keep the windshield free from obstruction.

**Note:** If something is blocking the camera or damaged the windshield, Driver Alert may not function.

## DRIVER ALERT LIMITATIONS

Driver alert may not function correctly if:

- The sensor cannot track the road lane markings.
- Your vehicle's speed is less than approximately 40 mph (65 km/h).

# Driver Alert

## SWITCHING DRIVER ALERT ON AND OFF

To switch the system on or off, use the instrument cluster display:

1. Select **Settings**.
2. Select **Driver Assistance**.
3. Switch **Driver Alert** on or off.

**Note:** *The system remains on or off depending on how it was last set.*

## Resetting Driver Alert

You can reset the system by either:

- Switching the ignition off and on.
- Stopping the vehicle and then opening and closing the driver door.

## DRIVER ALERT – TROUBLESHOOTING

## DRIVER ALERT – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
Driver Alert Warning Rest Now	Stop and rest as soon as it is safe to do so.
Driver Alert Warning Rest Suggested	Take a rest soon.

## DRIVER ALERT INDICATORS

### System Warnings

The warning system has two stages:

1. A temporary warning is issued to advise you to take a rest. This message only appears for a short time.
2. If you do not rest and the system continues to detect that your driving deteriorates, it issues a further warning. This remains in the instrument cluster display until you cancel it.

**Note:** *The system does not warn you if the vehicle speed falls below approximately 40 mph (65 km/h).*

# Load Carrying

## LOAD CARRYING PRECAUTIONS

Keep your loaded vehicle weight within its design rating capability, with or without a trailer. Properly loading your vehicle provides maximum return of vehicle design performance. Before you load your vehicle, become familiar with the following terms for determining your vehicle's weight rating, with or without a trailer, from the vehicle's Tire and Loading Information label or Safety Compliance Certification label.

The gross combined weight must never exceed the Gross Combined Weight Rating.



**WARNING:** The appropriate loading capacity of your vehicle can be limited either by volume capacity (how much space is available) or by payload capacity (how much weight the vehicle should carry). Once you have reached the maximum payload of your vehicle, do not add more cargo, even if there is space available. Overloading or improperly loading your vehicle can contribute to loss of vehicle control and vehicle rollover.



**WARNING:** Exceeding the Safety Compliance Certification label vehicle weight limits can adversely affect the performance and handling of your vehicle, cause vehicle damage and can result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Do not use replacement tires with lower load carrying capacities than the original tires because they may lower your vehicle's GVWR and GAWR limitations. Replacement tires with a higher limit than the original tires do not increase the GVWR and GAWR limitations.



**WARNING:** Do not exceed the GVWR or the GAWR specified on the certification label.



**WARNING:** Exceeding any vehicle weight rating can adversely affect the performance and handling of your vehicle, cause vehicle damage and can result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** When loading the roof racks, we recommend you evenly distribute the load, as well as maintain a low center of gravity. Loaded vehicles, with higher centers of gravity, may

# Load Carrying

handle differently than unloaded vehicles. Take extra precautions, such as slower speeds and increased stopping distance, when driving a heavily loaded vehicle.

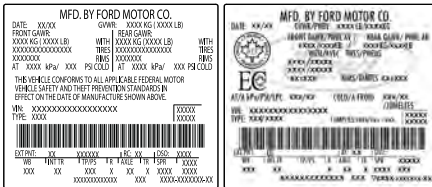
**Note:** *If your vehicle comes with bed rails, we recommend that you evenly distribute the load and do not exceed the total maximum load capacity of 150 lb (68 kg).*

## USING A SLIDE-IN CAMPER

We do not recommend using your pickup for carrying a slide-in camper.

## LOCATING THE SAFETY COMPLIANCE CERTIFICATION LABELS

### Safety Compliance Certification Label Example:



The Safety Compliance Certification label is located on the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver seating position.

## WHAT IS THE GROSS AXLE WEIGHT RATING

### GAWR (Gross Axle Weight Rating)

GAWR is the maximum allowable weight that a single axle (front or rear) can carry. These numbers are on the Safety Compliance Certification label.

## WHAT IS THE GROSS VEHICLE WEIGHT RATING

GVWR is the maximum allowable weight of the fully loaded vehicle. This includes all options, equipment, passengers and cargo. It appears on the Safety Compliance Certification label.

## WHAT IS THE GROSS COMBINED WEIGHT RATING

Gross Combined Weight Rating (GCWR) is the maximum allowable weight of the vehicle and the loaded trailer, including all cargo and passengers, that the vehicle can handle without risking damage. (Important: The towing vehicle's braking system is rated for operation at Gross Vehicle Weight Rating, not at Gross Combined Weight Rating.) Separate functional brakes should



## Load Carrying

---

be used for safe control of towed vehicles and for trailers where the Gross Combined Weight of the towing vehicle plus the trailer exceed the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating of the towing vehicle.

**Note:** For trailer towing information refer to the *RV and Trailer Towing Guide* available at an authorized dealer, or online at the website that follows.


<b>RV &amp; Trailer Towing Guide Online</b>	
Website	<a href="http://www.fleet.ford.com/towing-guides">www.fleet.ford.com/towing-guides</a>

# Load Carrying

## CALCULATING PAYLOAD

### Tire and Loading Label Information

#### Example:




**TIRE AND LOADING INFORMATION**

SEATING CAPACITY TOTAL: 5 FRONT: 2 REAR: 3

The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed **385 kg or 850 lbs.**

TIRE	SIZE	COLD TIRE PRESSURE	SEE OWNERS MANUAL FOR ADDITIONAL INFORMATION
FRONT	235/45R18 94V	235 KPA, 34 PSI	
REAR	235/45R18 94V	235 KPA, 34 PSI	
SPARE	NONE	NONE	



**TIRE AND LOADING INFORMATION**  
**RENSEIGNEMENTS SUR LES PNEUS ET LE CHARGEMENT**

SEATING CAPACITY TOTAL: 5 FRONT: 2 REAR: 3  
NOMBRE DE PLACES

The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed **396 kg or 875 lbs.**  
Le poids total des occupants et du chargement ne doit jamais dépasser

TIRE PNEU	SIZE DIMENSIONS	COLD TIRE PRESSURE PRESSION DES PNEUS A FROID	SEE OWNER'S MANUAL FOR ADDITIONAL INFORMATION  VOIR LE MANUEL DE L'USAGER POUR PLUS DE RENSEIGNEMENTS
FRONT AVANT	235/40R19 96V	255 KPA, 37 PSI	
REAR ARRIERE	235/40R19 96V	255 KPA, 37 PSI	
SPARE DE SECOURS	T125/80R16 97M	415 KPA, 60 PSI	

Payload is the combined weight of cargo and passengers that your vehicle is carrying. The maximum payload for your vehicle appears on the Tire and Loading label. The label is either on the B-pillar or the edge of the driver door. Vehicles exported outside the US and Canada may not have a tire and loading label. Look for "The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kg or XXX lb" for maximum payload. The payload listed on the Tire and Loading Information label

is the maximum payload for your vehicle as built by the assembly plant. If you install any additional equipment on your vehicle, you must determine the new payload. Subtract the weight of the equipment from the payload listed on the Tire and Loading label. When towing, trailer tongue weight or king pin weight is also part of payload.

## CALCULATING THE LOAD LIMIT

Steps for determining the correct load limit:

1. Locate the statement "The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kg or XXX lb." on your vehicle's placard.
2. Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.
3. Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from XXX kg or XXX lb.
4. The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity. For example, if the "XXX" amount equals 1,400 lb. and there will be five 150 lb. passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lb. (1400-750 (5 x 150) = 650 lb.)

# Load Carrying

---

- Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in Step 4.
- If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, load from your trailer will be transferred to your vehicle. Consult this manual to determine how this reduces the available cargo and luggage load capacity of your vehicle.

## Helpful examples for calculating the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity

Suppose your vehicle has a 1400-pound (635-kilogram) cargo and luggage capacity. You decide to go golfing. Is there enough load capacity to carry you, four of your friends and all the golf bags? You and four friends average 220 pounds (99 kilograms) each and the golf bags weigh approximately 30 pounds (13.5 kilograms) each. The calculation would be:  $1400 - (5 \times 220) - (5 \times 30) = 1400 - 1100 - 150 = 150$  pounds. Yes, you have enough load capacity in your vehicle to transport four friends and your golf bags. In metric units, the calculation would be:  $635 \text{ kilograms} - (5 \times 99 \text{ kilograms}) - (5 \times 13.5 \text{ kilograms}) = 635 - 495 - 67.5 = 72.5$  kilograms.

Suppose your vehicle has a 1400-pound (635-kilogram) cargo and luggage capacity. You and one of your friends decide to pick up cement from the local home improvement store to finish that patio you have been planning for the past two years. Measuring the inside of the vehicle with the rear seat folded down, you have room for twelve 100-pound (45-kilogram) bags of cement. Do you have enough load capacity to transport the cement to your home? If you and your friend each weigh 220 pounds (99 kilograms), the calculation would be:  $1400 - (2 \times 220) - (12 \times 100) = 1400 - 440 - 1200 = -240$  pounds. No, you do not have enough cargo capacity to carry that much weight. In metric units, the calculation would be:  $635 \text{ kilograms} - (2 \times 99 \text{ kilograms}) - (12 \times 45 \text{ kilograms}) = 635 - 198 - 540 = -103$  kilograms. You will need to reduce the load weight by at least 240 pounds (104 kilograms). If you remove three 100-pound (45-kilogram) cement bags, then the load calculation would be:  $1400 - (2 \times 220) - (9 \times 100) = 1400 - 440 - 900 = 60$  pounds. Now you have the load capacity to transport the cement and your friend home. In metric units, the calculation would be:  $635 \text{ kilograms} - (2 \times 99 \text{ kilograms}) - (9 \times 45 \text{ kilograms}) = 635 - 198 - 405 = 32$  kilograms.

## Load Carrying

---

The above calculations also assume that the loads are positioned in your vehicle in a manner that does not overload the front or the rear gross axle weight rating specified for your vehicle on the Safety Compliance Certification label.

# Pickup Bed

## PICKUP BED PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Do not allow people or animals in truck beds that have modifications, such as bed covers or slide-in campers, when the engine is running. Exhaust fumes are toxic. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** It is extremely dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a crash, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed. Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle that is not equipped with seats and seatbelts. Make sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and properly using a seatbelt. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

## PICKUP BED ANCHOR POINTS

### PICKUP BED ANCHOR POINT PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Always properly secure cargo to prevent shifting cargo or cargo falling from the vehicle. Failure to do so could result in compromised vehicle stability and serious personal injury to vehicle occupants or others.



**WARNING:** The appropriate loading capacity of your vehicle can be limited either by volume capacity (how much space is available) or by payload capacity (how much weight the vehicle should carry). Once you have reached

the maximum payload of your vehicle, do not add more cargo, even if there is space available. Overloading or improperly loading your vehicle can contribute to loss of vehicle control and vehicle rollover.



**WARNING:** It is extremely dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a crash, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed. Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle that is not equipped with seats and seatbelts. Make sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and properly using a seatbelt. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Do not use the load retaining fixtures for towing. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



**WARNING:** Do not exceed the maximum load rating of the load retaining fixtures. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



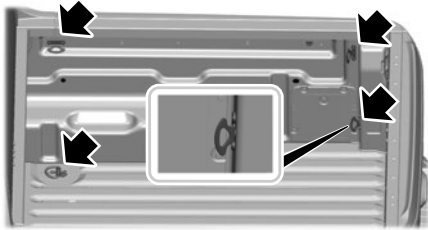
**WARNING:** Check the load retaining fixtures for damage before using them. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

## LOCATING THE PICKUP BED ANCHOR POINTS

### Pickup Bed Anchor Points

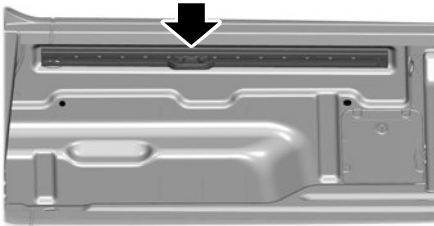
The pickup bed anchor points are in each corner of the pickup bed.

# Pickup Bed

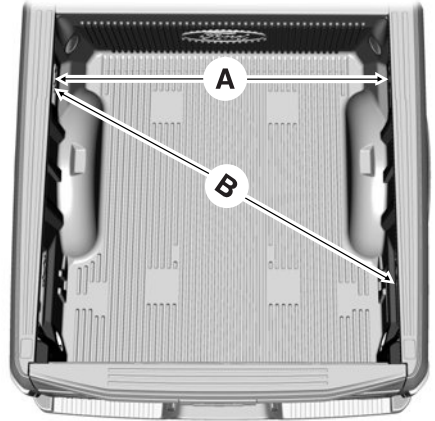


## Adjustable Bed Rail (if Equipped)

Sliding cleat tie-downs are on each side of the pickup bed.



## PICKUP BED ANCHOR POINT LOAD CAPACITIES



A	B
Maximum force between directly opposed cleats 276 lb (125 kg).	Maximum force between diagonally opposed cleats 600 lb (272 kg).

**Note:** You could damage the pickup bed walls if you overload the tie downs.

**Note:** Make sure that you properly balance and secure the cargo load. Failure to do this can cause cargo instability and damage to the box.

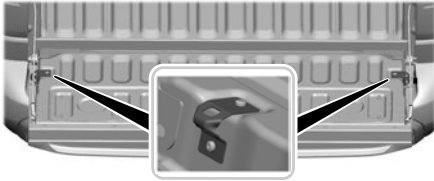
**Note:** Do not secure cargo with tie downs connected from the tie down brackets to the cargo box tie downs. This could cause the tailgate to detach.

# Pickup Bed

## TAILGATE ANCHOR POINTS

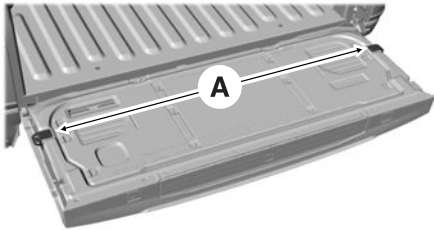
### LOCATING THE TAILGATE ANCHOR POINTS

The tailgate anchor points are located at each side of the tailgate.



**Note:** You could damage the tailgate if you overload the tie downs.

### TAILGATE ANCHOR POINT LOAD CAPACITIES



**A**

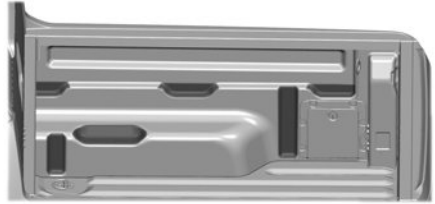
The maximum force between the tailgate anchor points 400 lb (181 kg).

**Note:** Do not secure cargo from a pickup bed anchor point to a tailgate anchor point. This could cause the tailgate to detach.

## PICKUP BED SLOTS

### LOCATING THE PICKUP BED SLOTS

Slots in the pickup bed provide location points for lumber to support various loads.



# Connecting a Trailer

## CONNECTING A TRAILER PRECAUTIONS

Do not tow a trailer until you drive your vehicle at least 1,000 mi (1,600 km).

Consult your local motor vehicle laws for towing a trailer.

See the instructions included with towing accessories for the proper installation and adjustment specifications.

Service your vehicle more frequently if you tow a trailer. See **Normal Scheduled Maintenance** (page 439).

If you use a rental trailer, follow the instructions the rental agency gives you.

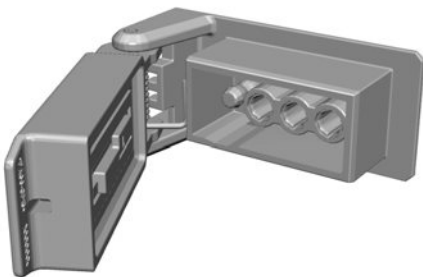
When attaching the trailer wiring connector to your vehicle, only use a proper fitting connector that works with the vehicle and trailer functions.

Account for the trailer coupler weight as part of your vehicle load when calculating the total vehicle weight.

Do not exceed the load limits. See **Calculating the Load Limit** (page 255).

## CONNECTING A TRAILER


### Trailer Towing Connector (If Equipped)



When attaching the trailer wiring connector to your vehicle, only use a proper fitting connector that works with the vehicle and trailer functions.

**Note:** *Install the waterproof protection cap back onto the trailer towing connector whenever it is not in use. This helps to prevent water damage and trailer towing connector malfunction.*

### Trailer Lamps

 **WARNING:** Never connect any trailer lamp wiring to the vehicle's tail lamp wiring; this may damage the electrical system resulting in fire. Contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible for assistance in proper trailer tow wiring installation. Additional electrical equipment may be required.

Trailer lamps are required on most towed vehicles. Make sure all running lights, brake lights, turn signals and hazard lights are working.

### Safety Chains

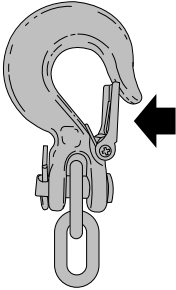
Install trailer safety chains to the trailer hitch as recommended by the manufacturer. Cross the chains under the trailer coupler and allow enough slack for turning tight corners. Do not allow the chains to drag on the ground.



## Connecting a Trailer

---


**Note:** Do not attach safety chains to the bumper. Connect the safety chains to the frame or hook retainers of the trailer hitch.





If the trailer safety chain hook has a latch, make sure to fully close the latch.


# Towing a Trailer


## TOWING A TRAILER PRECAUTIONS


 **WARNING:** Do not exceed the GVWR or the GAWR specified on the certification label.

 **WARNING:** Towing trailers beyond the maximum recommended gross trailer weight exceeds the limit of your vehicle and could result in engine damage, transmission damage, structural damage, loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover and personal injury.


 **WARNING:** Do not exceed the lowest rating capacity for your vehicle or trailer hitch. Overloading your vehicle or trailer hitch can impair your vehicle stability and handling. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.


 **WARNING:** Make sure that the vertical load on the tow ball is between the minimum and maximum recommended weight at all times. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

 **WARNING:** Do not cut, drill, weld or modify the trailer hitch. Modifying the trailer hitch could reduce the hitch rating.

 **WARNING:** The anti-lock brake system does not control the trailer brakes.

## TRAILER BRAKE PRECAUTIONS

 **WARNING:** Do not connect a trailer's hydraulic brake system directly to your vehicle's brake system. Your vehicle may not have enough braking power and your chances of having a collision greatly increase.

 **WARNING:** Do not tow a trailer fitted with electric trailer brakes unless your vehicle is fitted with a compatible aftermarket electronic trailer brake controller. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death. For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

Electric brakes and manual, automatic or surge-type trailer brakes are safe if you install them properly and adjust them to the manufacturer's specifications. The trailer brakes must meet local and federal regulations.

The rating for the tow vehicle's braking system operation is at the gross vehicle weight rating, not the gross combined weight rating.

# Towing a Trailer

---

Certain states require functioning trailer brakes for trailers over a specified weight. Be sure to check state regulations for this specified weight.

Ford Motor Company recommends separate functioning brake systems for trailers weighing more than 1,500 lb (680 kg) when loaded.

## TOWING A TRAILER LIMITATIONS

The vehicle's load capacity designation is by weight, not by volume, so you cannot necessarily use all available space when loading a vehicle or trailer.

**Note:** *Your vehicle could have reduced performance when operating at high altitudes and when heavily loaded or towing a trailer. When driving at elevation, to match driving performance as perceived at sea level, reduce gross vehicle weight and gross combination weight by 2% per 1,000 ft (300 m) elevation.*

## LOADING YOUR TRAILER

To help minimize how trailer movement affects your vehicle when driving:

- Load the heaviest items closest to the trailer floor.
- Load the heaviest items centered between the left and right side trailer tires.

- Load the heaviest items above the trailer axles or just slightly forward toward the trailer tongue. Do not allow the final trailer tongue weight to go above or below 10-15% of the loaded trailer weight. The trailer tongue weight should never exceed 10% of the maximum towing capacity.
- Select a ball mount with the correct rise or drop. When both the loaded vehicle and trailer are connected, the trailer frame should be level, or slightly angled down toward your vehicle, when viewed from the side.

## TRAILER TOWING HINTS

Towing a trailer places an extra load on your vehicle's engine, transmission, axle, brakes, tires and suspension. Periodically inspect these components during and after any towing operation.

When driving with a trailer or payload, a slight takeoff vibration or shudder may be present due to the increased payload weight.

Your vehicle may have a temporary or conventional spare tire. A temporary spare tire is different in diameter or width, tread-type, or is from a different manufacturer than the road tires on your vehicle. Consult information on the tire label or Safety Compliance label for limitations when using.

# Towing a Trailer

---

When towing a trailer:

- Obey country specific regulations for towing a trailer.
- Do not drive faster than 70 mph (113 km/h) during the first 500 mi (800 km).
- Do not make full-throttle starts.
- Check your hitch, electrical connections and trailer wheel lug nuts thoroughly after you have traveled 50 mi (80 km).
- When stopped in congested or heavy traffic during hot weather, place the transmission in park (P) to aid engine and transmission cooling and to help A/C performance.
- Turn off the speed control with heavy loads or in hilly terrain. The speed control may turn off when you are towing on long, steep slopes.
- Shift to a lower gear when driving down a long or steep hill. Do not continuously apply the brakes, as they may overheat and become less effective.
- If your transmission has Grade Assist or Tow/Haul, use this feature when towing. This provides engine braking and helps eliminate excessive transmission shifting for optimum fuel economy and transmission cooling.
- Your vehicle has AdvanceTrac with roll stability control. When towing a trailer, additional loads could cause the AdvanceTrac system to engage during cornering maneuvers. Reduce cornering speeds to make sure that you can maintain control of the vehicle and trailer if the AdvanceTrac system engages.

- Allow more distance for stopping with a trailer attached. Anticipate stops and gradually brake.
- Avoid parking on a slope. However, if you must park on a slope, turn the steering wheel to point your vehicle tires away from traffic flow, set the parking brake, place the transmission in park (P) and place wheel chocks in front and back of the trailer wheels.

**Note:** *Chocks are not included with your vehicle.*

## LAUNCHING OR RETRIEVING A BOAT OR PERSONAL WATERCRAFT

When backing down a ramp during boat launching or retrieval:

- Do not allow the static water level to rise above the bottom edge of the rear bumper.
- Do not allow waves to break higher than 6 in (15 cm) above the bottom edge of the rear bumper.

Exceeding 6 in (15 cm) could allow water to enter vehicle components, causing internal damage to the components and affecting driveability, emissions and reliability.

**Note:** *Replace the rear axle lubricant anytime the rear axle has been submerged in water.*

**Note:** *Disconnect the trailer wiring connector before backing the trailer into the water.*

**Note:** *Reconnect the trailer wiring connector after removing the trailer from the water.*

# Towing a Trailer

---

## TOWING WEIGHTS AND DIMENSIONS

### RECOMMENDED TOWING WEIGHTS

<b>Market</b>	<b>Website</b>
United States of America	<a href="https://www.fleet.ford.com/towing-guides/">https://www.fleet.ford.com/towing-guides/</a>
Canada	<a href="https://www.fleet.ford.ca/towing-guides/">https://www.fleet.ford.ca/towing-guides/</a>

# Towing a Trailer

---

## WHAT IS THE MAXIMUM LOADED TRAILER WEIGHT

The maximum loaded trailer weight is the highest possible weight of a fully loaded trailer the vehicle can tow.

## CALCULATING THE MAXIMUM LOADED TRAILER WEIGHT FOR YOUR VEHICLE

1. Start with the gross combined weight rating for your vehicle model and axle ratio.
2. Subtract all of the following that apply to your vehicle:
  - Vehicle curb weight.
  - Hitch hardware weight, for example a draw bar, ball, locks or weight distributing hardware.
  - Driver weight.
  - Passenger weight.
  - Payload, cargo and luggage weight.
  - Aftermarket equipment weight.

This equals the maximum loaded trailer weight for this combination.

**Note:** *The trailer tongue load is considered part of the payload for your vehicle. Reduce the total payload by the final trailer tongue weight.*

**Note:** *Consult an authorized dealer to determine the maximum trailer weight allowed for your vehicle if you are not sure.*

# Integrated Trailer Brake Controller (If Equipped)

## WHAT IS THE INTEGRATED TRAILER BRAKE CONTROLLER

The trailer brake controller assists in smooth and effective trailer braking based on the towing vehicle's brake pressure.

## INTEGRATED TRAILER BRAKE CONTROLLER PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Use the integrated trailer brake controller to properly adjust the trailer brakes and check all connections before towing a trailer. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

- Only use the manual control lever for proper adjustment of the gain during trailer setup. Misuse, such as application during trailer sway, could cause instability of trailer or tow vehicle.
- Avoid towing in adverse weather conditions. The trailer brake controller does not provide anti-lock control of the trailer wheels. Trailer wheels can lock up on slippery surfaces, resulting in reduced stability of trailer and tow vehicle.
- The trailer brake controller is only a factory-installed or dealer-installed item. Ford is not responsible for warranty or performance of the controller due to misuse or customer installation.

**Note:** Do not attempt removal of the trailer brake controller without consulting the Workshop Manual. Damage to the unit may result.

## USING THE INTEGRATED TRAILER BRAKE CONTROLLER

1. Make sure the trailer brakes are in good working condition, functioning normally and properly adjusted. See your trailer dealer if necessary.

**Note:** An authorized dealer can diagnose the trailer brake controller to determine exactly which trailer fault has occurred. Your vehicle warranty does not cover issues with your trailer.

2. Hook up the trailer and make the electrical connections according to the trailer manufacturer's instructions.

**Note:** Select default mode if the trailer has surge brakes, or no brakes at all. The system has no effect on the braking performance of the trailer in either of these cases.

**Note:** If a trailer is connected by a four-pin connector, the trailer braking function will not be supported.

3. When you plug in a trailer with electric or electric-over-hydraulic brakes, a message confirming connection appears in the information display.
4. Use the gain adjustment to find the desired starting point. A gain setting of 6.0 is a good starting point for heavier loads.

**Note:** Use the following steps to adjust the gain setting whenever road, weather and trailer, or vehicle loading conditions, change from when you initially set the gain.

5. In a traffic-free environment, tow the trailer on a dry, level surface and squeeze the manual control lever completely.

## Integrated Trailer Brake Controller (If Equipped)

- If the trailer wheels lock up, indicated by squealing tires, reduce the gain setting. If the trailer wheels turn freely, increase the gain setting. Repeat Steps 5 and 6 until the gain setting is at a point just below trailer wheel lock-up. If towing a heavier trailer, trailer wheel lock-up may not be attainable even with the maximum gain setting of 10.

**Note:** Only perform this procedure at speeds of approximately 20–25 mph (30–40 km/h).

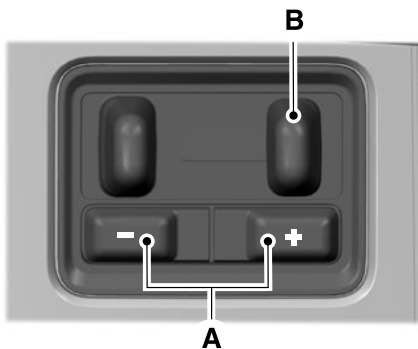
**Note:** The trailer brake controller reduces output at vehicle speeds below 11 mph (18 km/h) so that trailer and vehicle braking is not jerky or harsh. This feature is only available when applying the brakes using your vehicle's brake pedal, not the controller.

**Note:** Your vehicle's brake system and the trailer brake system work independently of each other. Changing the gain setting on the controller does not affect the operation of your vehicle's brakes whether you attach a trailer or not.

**Note:** With the proper electrical connection, pressing your vehicle brake pedal or using the manual control lever illuminates both trailer and vehicle brake lamps.

**Note:** When you switch the engine off, the controller output is disabled and the display and module shut down. The controller module and display turn on when you switch the ignition on.

### Adjusting the Trailer Brake Gain



- A Increase or decrease the amount of gain in set increments.
- B Slide the control to engage the trailer brakes.

**Note:** Adjust gain setting before using the trailer brake controller for the first time.

**Note:** The gain should be set to provide the maximum trailer braking assistance while making sure the trailer wheels do not lock when using the brakes. Locked trailer wheels may lead to trailer instability.

**Note:** Setting adjustments are saved when a trailer profile is selected.

### ADJUSTING THE INTEGRATED TRAILER BRAKE CONTROLLER MODE

Select the correct integrated trailer brake controller mode option using the instrument cluster display.

**Note:** Trailer brake gain settings are saved to the active trailer profile.



# Integrated Trailer Brake Controller (If Equipped)

## Selecting the Trailer Brake Type

Use the instrument cluster display controls on the steering wheel to select the correct setting for your trailer.

**Note:** Select **Default Electric/Surge/None** if the trailer has electric, surge or no brakes.

## Selecting the Trailer Brake Effort

Select the correct setting for your trailer.

**Note:** Select a different setting if your trailer's brakes require more initial voltage, or you prefer more aggressive trailer braking.

## INTEGRATED TRAILER BRAKE CONTROLLER – TROUBLESHOOTING

### INTEGRATED TRAILER BRAKE CONTROLLER – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Trailer Disconnected	The system detects the trailer wiring connection is disconnected, during a given ignition cycle.
Trailer Wiring Fault	The system detects an electrical fault in the trailer brake circuit. If this message appears without a trailer attached, see your authorized dealer. If a trailer is attached, inspect and repair the trailer wiring.
Trailer Brake Gain: {trailer gain value:#0.0}	Displays the current gain setting for the trailer brake.
Trailer Brake Gain: {trailer gain value:#0.0} No Trailer	Displays the current gain setting for the trailer brake when you do not have a trailer connected.

# Integrated Trailer Brake Controller (If Equipped)

---

## **INTEGRATED TRAILER BRAKE CONTROLLER – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS**

### **How do I determine if there is an issue with the wiring on my vehicle?**

A message displays accompanied by a single tone, when no trailer is connected. This indicates that the issue is between the trailer brake controller and the 7-pin connector at the bumper.

### **How do I determine if there is an issue with the wiring on my trailer?**

A message only displays with a trailer connected. Consult your trailer dealer for assistance.

# Trailer Sway Control

---

## HOW DOES TRAILER SWAY CONTROL WORK

The system applies the brakes to the individual wheels and reduces engine torque to aid vehicle stability.

If the trailer begins to sway, the stability control lamp flashes and the message **Trailer Sway Reduce Speed** appears in the information display.

Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Check the vertical weight on the tow ball and trailer load distribution.

## TRAILER SWAY CONTROL PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Turning off trailer sway control increases the risk of loss of vehicle control, serious injury or death. Ford does not recommend disabling this feature except in situations where speed reduction may be detrimental (such as hill climbing), the driver has significant trailer towing experience, and can control trailer sway and maintain safe operation.

**Note:** *This feature only activates when significant trailer sway occurs.*

**Note:** *This feature does not prevent trailer sway, but reduces it once it begins.*

**Note:** *This feature cannot stop all trailers from swaying.*

**Note:** *In some cases, if vehicle speed is too high, the system may activate multiple times, gradually reducing vehicle speed.*

## SWITCHING TRAILER SWAY CONTROL ON AND OFF

1. Using the instrument cluster display controls on the steering wheel, select **Settings**.
2. Switch **Trailer Sway Control** on or off.

The system turns on each time you start your vehicle.

# Driving Hints

## COLD WEATHER PRECAUTIONS

The functional operation of some components and systems can be affected at temperatures below approximately -13°F (-25°C).

## DRIVING ON SNOW AND ICE



**WARNING:** If you are driving in slippery conditions that require tire chains or cables, then it is critical that you drive cautiously. Keep speeds down, allow for longer stopping distances and avoid aggressive steering to reduce the chances of a loss of vehicle control which can lead to serious injury or death. If the rear end of your vehicle slides while cornering, steer in the direction of the slide until you regain control of your vehicle.

On ice and snow, you should drive more slowly than usual. Your vehicle has a four wheel anti-lock brake system, do not pump the brake pedal. See **Anti-Lock Braking System Limitations** (page 191).

## BREAKING-IN

Your vehicle requires a break-in period. For the first 1,000 mi (1,600 km), avoid driving at high speeds, heavy braking, aggressive shifting or using your vehicle to tow. During this time, your vehicle may exhibit some unusual driving characteristics.

## DRIVING ECONOMICALLY

The following helps to improve fuel consumption:

- Drive smoothly, accelerate gently and anticipate the road ahead to avoid heavy braking.
- Regularly check your tire pressures and make sure that they are inflated to the correct pressure.
- Follow the recommended maintenance schedule and carry out the recommended checks.
- Plan your journey and check the traffic before you set off. It is more efficient to combine errands into a single trip whenever possible.
- Avoid idling the engine in cold weather or for extended periods. Start the engine only when you are ready to set off.
- Do not carry unnecessary weight in your vehicle as extra weight wastes fuel.
- Do not add unnecessary accessories to the exterior of your vehicle, for example running boards. If you use a roof rack, remember to fold it down or remove it when not in use.
- Do not shift into neutral when you are braking or when your vehicle is slowing down.
- Shut all windows when driving at high speeds.
- Switch off all electric systems when not in use, for example air conditioning. Make sure that you unplug any accessories from the auxiliary power points when not in use.

# Driving Hints

## DRIVING IN SPECIAL CONDITIONS

### EMERGENCY MANEUVERS

In an unavoidable emergency where you must make a sudden sharp maneuver, turn the steering wheel only as rapidly and as far as required to avoid the emergency. Apply smooth pressure to the accelerator pedal or brake pedal as needed. Avoid abrupt steering, acceleration and braking changes. Abrupt changes could increase the risk of vehicle roll over, loss of vehicle control and personal injury. If possible, use any available road surfaces to bring your vehicle under control.

### DRIVING THROUGH MUD AND WATER

#### Mud

Be cautious of sudden changes in vehicle speed or direction when you are driving in mud. Even all-wheel drive and four-wheel drive vehicles can lose traction in mud. If your vehicle slides, steer in the direction of the slide until you regain control of your vehicle. After driving through mud, clean off residue stuck to rotating driveshafts and tires. Excess residue can cause an imbalance that could damage drive components.

**Note:** *If your vehicle gets stuck in mud, it could be rocked out by shifting between forward and reverse gears, stopping between shifts in a steady pattern. Press lightly on the accelerator in each gear.*

**Note:** *Do not rock your vehicle if the engine is not at normal operating temperature, as damage to the transmission could occur.*

**Note:** *Do not rock your vehicle for more than a minute, as damage to the transmission and tires could occur or the engine could overheat.*

#### Water

If you must drive through deep water, drive slowly. The water could limit traction or brake capability. See **Driving Through Shallow Water** (page 275).

When driving through water, determine the depth and avoid water higher than the center of the wheel.

Once through water, always try the brakes. Wet brakes do not stop your vehicle as quickly as dry brakes. Apply light pressure to the brake pedal while slowly moving the vehicle to dry the brakes.

**Note:** *Driving through deep water could cause damage to the transmission. If the front or rear axle is submerged in water, have the axle lubricant and power transfer unit lubricant checked and changed if necessary.*

### DRIVING ON HILLY OR SLOPING TERRAIN



**WARNING:** Extreme care should be used when steering the vehicle in reverse down a slope so as not to cause the vehicle to swerve out of control.

Although natural obstacles could make it necessary to travel diagonally up or down a hill or steep incline, you should try to drive straight up or straight down.

# Driving Hints

---

**Note:** *Avoid turning on steep slopes or hills. A danger lies in losing traction, slipping sideways and possible vehicle roll over. Whenever driving on a hill, determine beforehand the route you can use. Do not drive over the crest of a hill without seeing what conditions are on the other side. Do not drive in reverse over a hill without the aid of an observer.*

Apply just enough power to the wheels to climb the hill. Too much power causes the tires to slip, spin or lose traction, and you could lose control of your vehicle. When descending a steep hill, do not descend the hill in neutral. Avoid sudden hard braking to keep the front wheels rolling and to maintain your vehicle's steering.

**Note:** *Your vehicle has anti-lock brakes, apply the brakes steadily. Do not pump the brakes.*

**Note:** *If your vehicle gets stuck driving on hilly or sloping terrain, it could be rocked out by shifting between forward and reverse gears, stopping between shifts in a steady pattern. Press lightly on the accelerator in each gear.*

**Note:** *Do not rock your vehicle if the engine is not at normal operating temperature, as damage to the transmission could occur.*

**Note:** *Do not rock your vehicle for more than a minute, as damage to the transmission and tires could occur or the engine could overheat.*

## DRIVING IN SAND


When driving over sand, try to keep all four wheels on the most solid area of the trail. Steadily drive through the terrain. Apply the accelerator slowly and avoid excessive wheel slip. Do not drive your vehicle in deep sand for an extended period of time. This could overheat the system. A message appears in the instrument cluster display.

**Note:** *If your vehicle gets stuck driving on hilly or sloping terrain, it could be rocked out by shifting between forward and reverse gears, stopping between shifts in a steady pattern. Press lightly on the accelerator in each gear.*

**Note:** *Do not rock your vehicle if the engine is not at normal operating temperature, as damage to the transmission could occur.*

**Note:** *Do not rock your vehicle for more than a minute, as damage to the transmission and tires could occur or the engine could overheat.*

## DRIVING THROUGH SHALLOW WATER



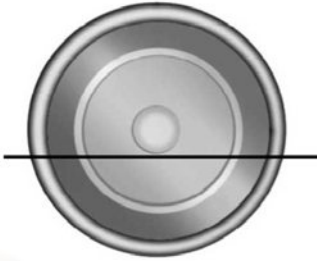
**WARNING:** Do not attempt to cross a deep or flowing body of water. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

**Note:** *Driving through standing water can cause vehicle damage.*

**Note:** *Engine damage can occur if water enters the air filter.*

Before driving through standing water, check the depth. Never drive through water that is higher than the bottom of the wheel hubs.

# Driving Hints



When driving through standing water, drive very slowly and do not stop your vehicle. Your brake performance and traction could be limited. After driving through water and as soon as it is safe to do so:

- Lightly press the brake pedal to dry the brakes and to check that they work.
- Turn the steering wheel to check that the steering power assist works.

Check the function of the following:

- Horn
- Exterior lights

## FLOOR MATS

**WARNING:** Use a floor mat designed to fit the footwell of your vehicle that does not obstruct the pedal area. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** Pedals that cannot move freely can cause loss of vehicle control and increase the risk of serious personal injury.

**WARNING:** Secure the floor mat to both retention devices so that it cannot slip out of position and interfere with the pedals. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** Do not place additional floor mats or any other covering on top of the original floor mats. This could result in the floor mat interfering with the operation of the pedals. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

**WARNING:** Always make sure that objects cannot fall into the driver foot well while your vehicle is moving. Objects that are loose can become trapped under the pedals causing a loss of vehicle control.



To install floor mats that have eyelets, position the floor mat eyelet over the retention post and press down to lock in position. Repeat for all eyelets on the floor mat.

To remove the floor mats, reverse the installation procedure.

# Driving Hints

---

**Note:** *Regularly check the floor mats to make sure they are secure.*



# Crash and Breakdown Information

---

## ROADSIDE ASSISTANCE

### Vehicles Sold in the United States: Getting Roadside Assistance

To fully assist you should you have a vehicle concern, Ford Motor Company offers a complimentary roadside assistance program. This program is separate from the New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

The service is available:

- 24 hours a day, seven days a week.
- For the coverage period supplied with your vehicle.

Roadside Assistance covers:

- A flat tire change with a good spare (except vehicles supplied with a tire inflation kit).
- Battery jump start.
- Lock-out assistance (key replacement cost is the customer's responsibility).
- Fuel delivery — independent service contractors, if not prohibited by state, local or municipal law, shall deliver up to 2 gal (8 L) of gasoline or 5 gal (20 L) of diesel fuel to a disabled vehicle. Roadside assistance limits fuel delivery service to two no-charge occurrences within a 12-month period.
- Winch out — available within 100 ft (30 m) of a paved or county maintained road, no recoveries.

- Towing — independent service contractors, if not prohibited by state, local or municipal law, shall tow Ford eligible vehicles to an authorized dealer within 35 mi (56 km) of the disablement location or to the nearest authorized dealer. If a member requests a tow to an authorized dealer that is more than 35 mi (56 km) from the disablement location, the member shall be responsible for any mileage costs in excess of 35 mi (56 km).
- Roadside Assistance includes up to \$200 for a towed trailer if the disabled eligible vehicle requires service at the nearest authorized dealer. If the towing vehicle is operational but the trailer is not, then the trailer does not qualify for any roadside services.

### Vehicles Sold in the United States: Using Roadside Assistance

Complete the roadside assistance identification card and place it in your wallet for quick reference. This card is in the Owner's Manual kit.

United States vehicle customers who require Roadside Assistance, call 1-800-241-3673.

If you need to arrange roadside assistance for yourself, Ford Motor Company reimburses a reasonable amount for towing to the nearest dealership within 35 mi (56 km). To obtain reimbursement information, United States vehicle customers call 1-800-241-3673. Customers need to submit their original receipts.

# Crash and Breakdown Information

---

## Vehicles Sold in Canada: Getting Roadside Assistance

To fully assist you should you have a vehicle concern, Ford Motor Company of Canada, Limited offers a complimentary roadside assistance program. This program is eligible within Canada or the continental United States.

The service is available 24 hours a day, seven days a week.

This program is separate from the New Vehicle Limited Warranty, but the coverage is concurrent with the powertrain coverage period of your vehicle. Canadian roadside coverage and benefits may differ from the U.S. coverage.

If you require more information, please call us in Canada at 1-800-665-2006, or visit our website at [www.ford.ca](http://www.ford.ca).

## HIGH VOLTAGE BATTERY VEHICLE PRECAUTIONS - HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (HEV)

In the event of damage or fire involving an electric vehicle or hybrid-electric vehicle:

- Assume the high-voltage battery and associated components are energized and fully charged.
- Exposed electrical components, wires and high-voltage batteries present potential high-voltage shock hazards.
- Venting high-voltage battery vapors are potentially toxic and flammable.
- Physical damage to the vehicle or high-voltage battery could result in immediate or delayed release of toxic, flammable gases and fire.

Vehicle information and general safety practices include reviewing the owner's manual and becoming familiar with your vehicle's safety information and recommended safety practices.

## Crashes

A crash or impact significant enough to require an emergency response for conventional vehicles would also require the same response for an electric or hybrid-electric vehicle.

If Possible:

1. Move your vehicle to a safe, nearby location and remain on the scene.
2. Roll down the windows before you switch your vehicle off.
3. Place your vehicle in park (P), set the parking brake, switch off the vehicle, activate the hazard flashers and move your key(s) at least 16 ft (5 m) away from the vehicle.

Always:

- Call emergency assistance if needed and advise that an electric or hybrid-electric vehicle is involved.
- Avoid contact with leaking fluids and gases, and remain out of the way of oncoming traffic until emergency responders arrive.
- When emergency responders arrive, tell them that the vehicle involved is an electric vehicle or hybrid-electric vehicle.

## Fires

As with any vehicle, call emergency assistance immediately if you see sparks, smoke or flames coming from the vehicle. Remain a safe distance from the vehicle and try to stay clear of the smoke.

# Crash and Breakdown Information

1. Exit the vehicle immediately.
2. Advise emergency assistance that an electric or hybrid-electric vehicle is involved.
3. As with any vehicle fire, do not inhale smoke, vapors or gas from the vehicle, as they may be hazardous.

## Post-Incident

1. Do not store a severely damaged vehicle with a lithium-ion battery inside a structure or within 49 ft (15 m) of any structure or vehicle.
2. Make sure that passenger and luggage compartments remain ventilated.
3. Call emergency assistance if you observe leaking fluids, sparks, smoke or flames, or hear gurgling or bubbling from the high-voltage battery.

## SWITCHING THE HAZARD FLASHERS ON AND OFF



The hazard flasher button is on the instrument panel. Press the button to switch the hazard flashers on if your vehicle is creating a safety hazard for other road users.

When you switch the hazard flashers on, all front and rear direction indicators flash.

**Note:** *The hazard flashers operate when the ignition is in any position, or if the key is not in the ignition. The battery loses charge and could have insufficient power to restart your vehicle.*

Press the button again to switch them off.

## JUMP STARTING THE VEHICLE

### JUMP STARTING PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Batteries normally produce explosive gases which can cause personal injury. Therefore, do not allow flames, sparks or lighted substances to come near the battery. When working near the battery, always shield your face and protect your eyes. Always provide correct ventilation.



**WARNING:** Keep batteries out of reach of children. Batteries contain sulfuric acid. Avoid contact with skin, eyes or clothing. Shield your eyes when working near the battery to protect against possible splashing of acid solution. In case of acid contact with skin or eyes, flush immediately with water for a minimum of 15 minutes and get prompt medical attention. If acid is swallowed, call a physician immediately.



**WARNING:** Use only adequately sized cables with insulated clamps.



**WARNING:** Make sure that the cables are clear of any moving parts and fuel delivery system parts.



**WARNING:** Connect batteries with only the same nominal voltage.



**WARNING:** If the engine is running while the hood is open, stay clear of moving engine components. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

Do not attempt to push-start an automatic transmission vehicle. This could cause transmission damage.

# Crash and Breakdown Information

Do not disconnect the battery of the disabled vehicle. This could damage your vehicle's electrical system.

## PREPARING THE VEHICLE

Use only a 12 volt supply to start your vehicle.

Park the booster vehicle close to the hood of the disabled vehicle, making sure the two vehicles do not touch.

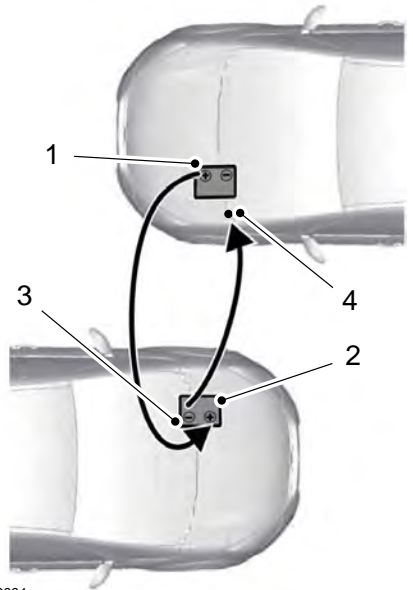
## JUMP STARTING THE VEHICLE - EXCLUDING: HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (HEV)

### Connecting the Jumper Cables



**WARNING:** Do not connect the negative jumper cable to any other part of your vehicle. Use the ground point.

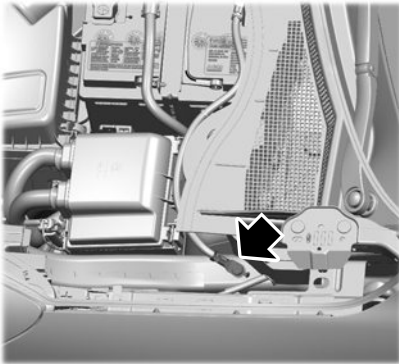
**Note:** If you are using a jump pack or booster box, follow the manufacturer's instructions.



E142664

1. Pull the red rubber boot backward. Connect the positive (+) jumper cable to the positive (+) terminal of the discharged battery.
2. Connect the other end of the positive (+) jumper cable to the positive (+) terminal of the booster vehicle battery.
3. Connect the negative (-) jumper cable to the negative (-) terminal of the booster vehicle battery.
4. Make the final connection of the negative (-) jumper cable to an exposed metal part of the disabled vehicle's engine, as shown in the following illustration, away from the battery and fuel injection system, or connect the negative (-) jumper cable to a ground connection point if available.

# Crash and Breakdown Information



## JUMP STARTING THE VEHICLE - HYBRIDELECTRIC VEHICLE (HEV)

### Connecting the Jumper Cables



**WARNING:** Do not connect the negative jumper cable to any other part of your vehicle. Use the ground point.

**Note:** Your vehicle has a 12-volt battery that has two pins accessible from under the hood. Your vehicle can be jumped the same way conventional vehicles can by using these pins. The following illustration shows the two connector pins used for jump starting your vehicle.

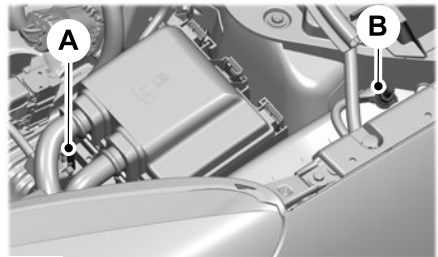
### Starting the Engine

1. Start the engine of the booster vehicle and moderately rev the engine, or gently press the accelerator to keep the engine speed between 2000 and 3000 RPM, as shown in your tachometer.
2. Start the engine of the disabled vehicle.
3. Once you start the disabled vehicle, run both vehicle engines for an additional three minutes before disconnecting the jumper cables.

### Removing the Jumper Cables

Remove the jumper cables in the reverse order that they were connected.

**Note:** Do not switch the headlamps on when disconnecting the cables. The peak voltage could blow the bulbs.

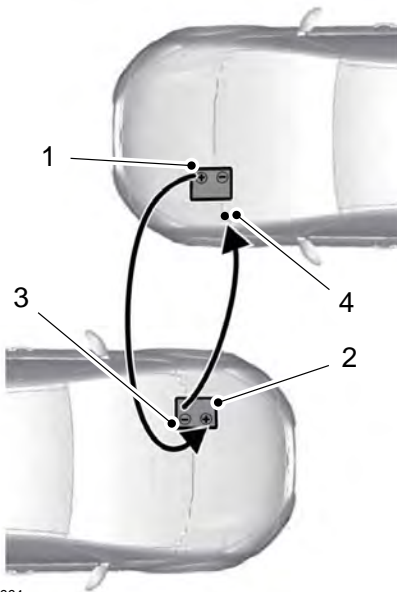


A Positive (+) pin.

B Negative (-) pin.

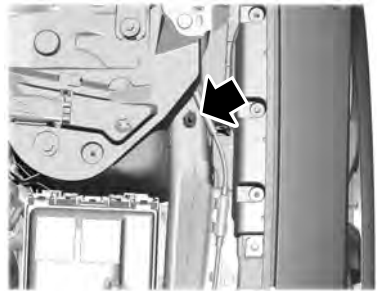
**Note:** If you are using a jump pack or booster box, follow the manufacturer's instructions.

# Crash and Breakdown Information



E142664

1. Pull the red rubber boot backward. Connect the positive (+) jumper cable to the positive (+) terminal of the discharged battery.
2. Connect the other end of the positive (+) jumper cable to the positive (+) terminal of the booster vehicle battery.
3. Connect the negative (-) jumper cable to the negative (-) terminal of the booster vehicle battery.
4. Make the final connection of the negative (-) jumper cable to the negative (-) jumper cable to an exposed metal part of the disabled vehicle's engine, as shown in the following illustration, away from the battery and fuel injection system, or connect the negative (-) jumper cable to a ground connection point if available.



## Starting the Engine

1. Start the engine of the booster vehicle and moderately rev the engine, or gently press the accelerator to keep the engine speed between 2000 and 3000 RPM, as shown in your tachometer.
2. Start the engine of the disabled vehicle.
3. Once you start the disabled vehicle, run both vehicle engines for an additional three minutes before disconnecting the jumper cables.

## Removing the Jumper Cables

Remove the jumper cables in the reverse order that they were connected.

**Note:** Do not switch the headlamps on when disconnecting the cables. The peak voltage could blow the bulbs.

## POST-CRASH ALERT SYSTEM

### WHAT IS THE POST-CRASH ALERT SYSTEM

The system helps draw attention to your vehicle in the event of a serious impact.

# Crash and Breakdown Information

## HOW DOES THE POST-CRASH ALERT SYSTEM WORK

The system is designed to turn the hazard flashers on and to intermittently sound the horn in the event of a serious impact that deploys an airbag or the seatbelt pretensioners.

## POST-CRASH ALERT SYSTEM LIMITATIONS

Depending on applicable laws in the country your vehicle was built for, the horn does not sound in the event of a serious impact.

## SWITCHING THE POST-CRASH ALERT SYSTEM OFF

Press the hazard flasher switch or the unlock button on the remote control to switch the system off.

**Note:** *The alert turns off when the vehicle battery runs out of charge.*

## AUTOMATIC CRASH SHUTOFF

### WHAT IS AUTOMATIC CRASH SHUTOFF

The automatic crash shutoff is designed to stop the fuel going to the engine in the event of a moderate or severe crash.

**Note:** *Not every impact causes a shutoff.*

## AUTOMATIC CRASH SHUTOFF PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** If your vehicle has been involved in a crash, have the fuel system checked. Failure to follow this instruction could result in fire, personal injury or death.

## RE-ENABLING YOUR VEHICLE

1. Switch the ignition off.
2. Attempt to start your vehicle.
3. Switch the ignition off.
4. Attempt to start your vehicle.

**Note:** *If your vehicle does not start after the third attempt, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.*

## RECOVERY TOWING

### ACCESSING THE FRONT TOWING POINT



**WARNING:** Using recovery hooks is dangerous and should only be done by a person familiar with proper vehicle recovery safety practices. Improper use of recovery hooks may cause hook failure or separation from the vehicle and could result in serious injury or death.



**WARNING:** Slowly remove the slack from the recovery strap prior to pulling. Failure to do so can introduce significantly higher loads which can cause the recovery hooks to break off, or the recovery strap to fail which can cause serious injury or death.

# Crash and Breakdown Information



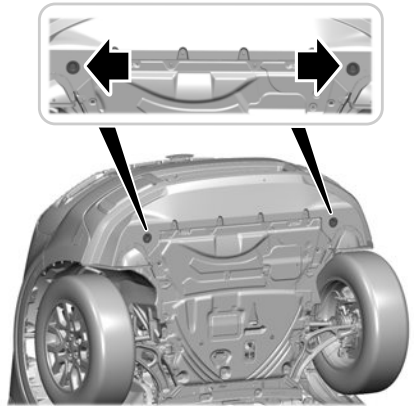
**WARNING:** Never link two straps together with a clevis pin. These heavy metal objects could become projectiles if the strap breaks and can cause serious injury or death.

**Note:** Do not apply a load to the winching holes or recovery hooks that is greater than the gross vehicle weight rating of your vehicle.

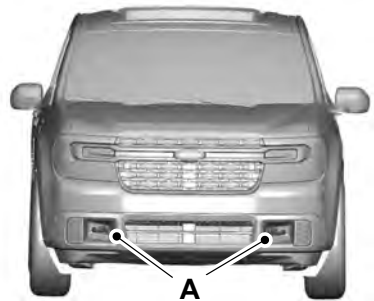
Before using winching holes or recovery hooks:

- Make sure all attaching points are secure and capable of withstanding the applied load.
- Do not use chains, cables or tow straps with metal hook ends.
- Only use recovery straps that have a minimum breaking strength two to three times the gross vehicle weight of the stuck vehicle.
- Make sure the recovery strap is in good condition and free of visible cuts, tears or damage.
- Use a damper device such as a tarp, heavy blanket or piece of carpet, and place it over the recovery strap to help absorb the energy in the event the strap breaks.
- Make sure the stuck vehicle is not loaded heavier than its gross vehicle weight rating specified on the certification label.
- Align the tow vehicle and stuck vehicle in a straight line, within 10 degrees.
- Keep bystanders to the sides of the vehicle, at a distance of at least twice the length of the recovery strap. This helps avoid injury from the hazard of a recovery hook or strap breaking, or a vehicle lurching into their path.

## Winching Holes



## Recovery Hooks (If Equipped)



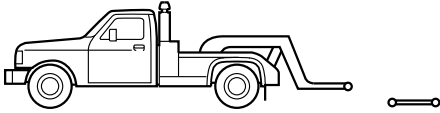
A Recovery hooks.



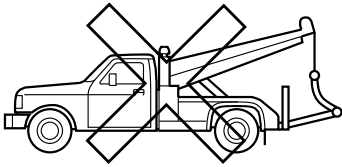
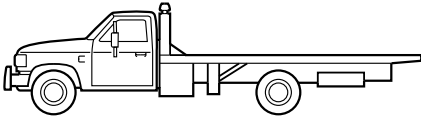
# Crash and Breakdown Information

---

## TRANSPORTING THE VEHICLE



All-wheel or four-wheel drive vehicles require that all wheels be off the ground using a wheel lift and dollies or flatbed equipment. This prevents damage to the transmission and drive system.



If you need to tow your vehicle, contact a professional towing service or your roadside assistance service provider.

Your manufacturer produces a towing manual for all authorized tow truck operators. Have your tow truck operator refer to this manual for proper hook-up and towing procedures.

We recommend the use of a wheel lift and dollies or flatbed equipment to tow your vehicle. Vehicle damage could occur if towed incorrectly, or by any other means.

Front-wheel and rear-wheel drive vehicles must have their designated drive wheels off the ground regardless of towing direction. Use tow dollies to prevent damage to the transmission.

# Towing Your Vehicle

## TOWING YOUR VEHICLE PRECAUTIONS

Use the following guidelines when towing your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in vehicle damage not covered by the vehicle warranty.

**Note:** *Make sure you properly secure your vehicle to the tow vehicle.*

**Note:** *If you are unsure of the vehicle's configuration, contact an authorized dealer.*

## RECREATIONALLY TOWING YOUR VEHICLE - GASOLINE, FWD

You cannot recreational tow your vehicle with all wheels on the ground because vehicle or transmission damage could occur. Place the front wheels on a two-wheel tow dolly. If you are using a tow dolly, follow the instructions specified by the equipment provider.

**Note:** *Release the parking brake before towing your vehicle. See **Manually Releasing the Electric Parking Brake** (page 194).*

## RECREATIONALLY TOWING YOUR VEHICLE - GASOLINE, AWD

You cannot recreational tow your vehicle with all wheels on the ground because vehicle or transmission damage could occur. You must recreational tow your vehicle with all four wheels off the ground, such as when using a car-hauling trailer. Otherwise, you cannot recreational tow your vehicle.

## RECREATIONALLY TOWING YOUR VEHICLE - HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (HEV)

Follow these guidelines if you have a need for recreational towing. An example of recreational towing is towing your vehicle behind a motorhome. These guidelines ensure that you do not damage the transmission.

**Note:** *Put your climate control system in recirculated air mode to prevent exhaust fumes from entering your vehicle. See **Climate Control** (page 126).*

You can tow your vehicle with all four wheels on the ground under the following conditions:

- You switch **Neutral Tow** on.
- Your vehicle is facing forward for towing in a forward direction.
- You release the parking brake.
- You do not exceed 70 mph (113 km/h).

### Switching Neutral Tow On

1. Switch your vehicle on in accessory mode.
2. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the information display main menu.
3. Select **Settings**.
4. Select **Neutral Tow**.
5. Follow the instructions on the information display.
6. Fully press the brake pedal.
7. Shift into neutral (N).
8. Switch the ignition off.

**Note:** *Switching neutral tow on requires battery power.*

**Note:** *If the parking brake is applied, a message appears in the information display.*

# Towing Your Vehicle

---

**Note:** If your vehicle has an ignition key, you cannot remove the key from the ignition when the transmission is in neutral (N) and your vehicle is off.

**Note:** Start the engine and allow it to run for a few minutes at the beginning of each day, and every six hours or fewer. With the engine running and your foot on the brake, shift into drive (D) and then into reverse (R) before shifting back into neutral (N). Before continuing to tow, switch neutral tow on.

## EMERGENCY TOWING - GASOLINE

If your vehicle becomes inoperable without access to wheel dollies or a vehicle transport trailer, it can be flat-towed with all wheels on the ground, regardless of the powertrain and transmission configuration, under the following conditions:

- Your vehicle is facing forward for towing in a forward direction.
- Use the manual park release procedure. See **Using Manual Park Release** (page 186). Failure to do so may result in damage to the transmission.
- Maximum speed is 35 mph (56 km/h).
- Maximum distance is 50 mi (80 km).

## EMERGENCY TOWING - HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (HEV)

If your vehicle becomes inoperable without access to wheel dollies or a vehicle transport trailer, it can be flat-towed with all wheels on the ground, regardless of the powertrain and transmission configuration, under the following conditions:

- Your vehicle is facing forward for towing in a forward direction.
- You switch **Neutral Tow** on.
- You release the parking brake.
- Maximum speed is 35 mph (55 km/h).
- Maximum distance is 50 mi (80 km).

### Switching Neutral Tow On

1. Switch your vehicle on in accessory mode.
2. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the instrument cluster display main menu.
3. Select **Settings**.
4. Select **Neutral Tow**.
5. Follow the instructions on the information display.
6. Fully press the brake pedal.
7. Shift into neutral (N).
8. Switch the ignition off.

**Note:** Failure to follow these instructions could result in damage to the transmission.

**Note:** Switching neutral tow on requires battery power.

**Note:** Put your climate control system in recirculated air mode to prevent exhaust fumes from entering your vehicle. See **Climate Control** (page 126).

# Towing Your Vehicle

---

## Switching Neutral Tow Off

1. Switch your vehicle on in accessory mode.
2. Fully press the brake pedal.
3. Shift into park (P).

## TOWING YOUR VEHICLE – TROUBLESHOOTING - HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (HEV)

### TOWING YOUR VEHICLE – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Description
Neutral Tow Engaged Turn Ignition Off for Towing	Reminder to switch off the ignition when in neutral tow.
Neutral tow engaged Depress Brake and Select Park to Exit Neutral Tow	Displays when neutral tow is active and you want to exit neutral tow.
Neutral Tow Remove Park Brake for Towing	Reminder to remove park brake when in neutral tow.
Neutral Tow Disengaged	Displays when the neutral tow is off.
Neutral Tow Enabled Leave Transmission in Neutral	Displays when neutral tow is on.

# Fuses

## FUSE PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Always disconnect the battery before servicing high current fuses.



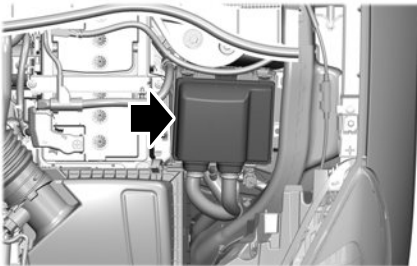
**WARNING:** To reduce risk of electrical shock, always replace the cover to the power distribution box before reconnecting the battery or refilling fluid reservoirs.



**WARNING:** Always replace a fuse with one that has the specified amperage rating. Using a fuse with a higher amperage rating can cause severe wire damage and could start a fire.

## UNDER HOOD FUSE BOX

### LOCATING THE UNDER HOOD FUSE BOX

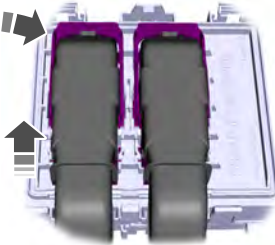


### ACCESSING THE UNDER HOOD FUSE BOX



1. Pull the latch toward you and remove the top cover.

2



3

E253689

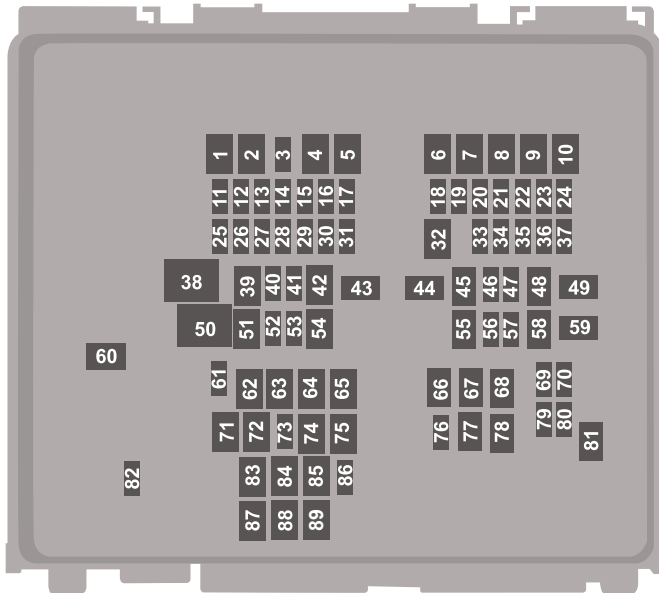
2. Pull the connector lever upward.
3. Pull the connector upward to remove it.

# Fuses



4. Pull both latches toward you and remove the fuse box.
5. Turn the fuse box over and open the lid.

## IDENTIFYING THE FUSES IN THE UNDER HOOD FUSE BOX



# Fuses

<b>Item</b>	<b>Rating</b>	<b>Protected Component</b>
1	—	Not used.
2	40 A	Driveline control module.
3	20 A	Horn.
4	40 A	Auxiliary heater (hybrid electric vehicle).
5	—	Not used.
6	—	Not used.
7	60 A	Auxiliary heater (hybrid electric vehicle).
8	—	Not used.
9	40 A	Auxiliary heater (hybrid electric vehicle).
10	30 A	Starter motor.
11	15 A	Powertrain control module.
12	15 A	Powertrain control module.
13	15 A	Powertrain control module.
14	15 A	Powertrain control module.
15	—	Not used.
16	—	Not used.
17	10 A	Air conditioning compressor.
18	10 A	Powertrain control module.
19	10 A	Anti-lock brake system module.
20	10 A	Powertrain control module (hybrid electric vehicle).
21	5 A	Adaptive cruise control.
22	5 A	Battery electronic control module (hybrid electric vehicle).

# Fuses

<b>Item</b>	<b>Rating</b>	<b>Protected Component</b>
23	10 A	Stoplamp switch.
24	20 A	Amplifier.
25	15 A	Heated wiper park.
26	10 A	Heated windshield camera.
27	—	Not used.
28	—	Not used.
29	—	Not used.
30	—	Not used.
31	—	Not used.
32	30 A	Body control module.
33	15 A	Heated steering wheel.
34	10 A	Front parking aid camera. Forward looking camera. Rear view camera. Blind spot information system.
35	—	Not used.
36	5 A	Electronic power assist steering.
37	20 A	Trailer tow parking lamps.
38	40 A	Blower motor.
39	—	Not used.
40	30 A	Aftermarket brake controller.
41	20 A	Amplifier.
42	30 A	Driver power seat.
43	50 A	Electric water pump (hybrid electric vehicle).
44	40 A	Trailer tow module.
45	—	Not used.



# Fuses

Item	Rating	Protected Component
46	—	Not used.
47	20 A	Heated seats.
48	30 A	Trailer tow lighting module battery charge.
49	60 A	Anti-lock brake control pump.
50	60 A	Cooling fan.
51	30 A	Moonroof.
52	5 A	Powertrain control module (hybrid electric vehicle).
53	—	Not used.
54	—	Not used.
55	—	Not used.
56	5 A	DC/DC converter (hybrid electric vehicle).
57	10 A	Data link connector.
58	30 A	Climate controlled seat module.
59	40 A	Body control module.
60	25 A	Power sliding rear window.
61	—	Not used.
62	—	Not used.
63	—	Not used.
64	—	Not used.
65	—	Not used.
66	—	Not used.
67	—	Not used.
68	—	Not used.
69	10 A	Trailer tow backup lamps.

# Fuses

<b>Item</b>	<b>Rating</b>	<b>Protected Component</b>
70	15 A	Port fuel injectors.
71	20 A	Rear of console power point.
72	20 A	Media bin power point.
73	5 A	USB charger - floor console - rear.
74	—	Not used.
75	30 A	Windshield wiper motor.
76	10 A	Heated exterior mirror.
77	40 A	Anti-lock brake valves.
78	—	Not used.
79	25 A	Left-hand side enhanced exterior lighting module.
80	25 A	Right-hand side enhanced exterior lighting module.
81	20 A	Fuel pump.
82	—	Not used.
83	40 A	Auxiliary power distribution box (hybrid electric vehicle).
84	20 A	Pick-up box power point.
85	60 A	Power inverter.
86	—	Not used.
87	—	Not used.
88	—	Not used.
89	—	Not used.

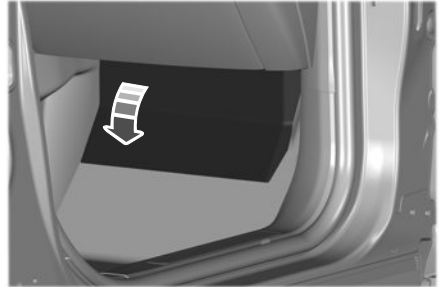
# Fuses

## BODY CONTROL MODULE FUSE BOX

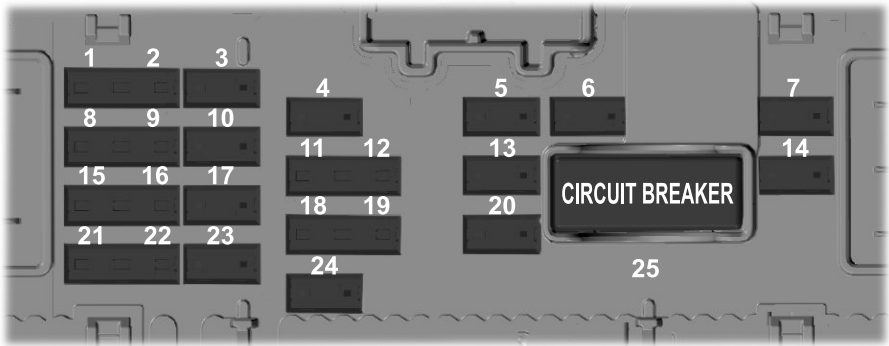
### LOCATING THE BODY CONTROL MODULE FUSE BOX



## ACCESSING THE BODY CONTROL MODULE FUSE BOX



### IDENTIFYING THE FUSES IN THE BODY CONTROL MODULE FUSE BOX



Item	Rating	Protected Component
1	5 A	Not used (spare).
2	5 A	Not used (spare).
3	10 A	Auto-dimming interior mirror.

# Fuses

Item	Rating	Protected Component
		Image processing module A. Automatic high beam control.
4	10 A	Ignition switch. Push button start switch. Key inhibit solenoid.
5	20 A	Lock. Unlock.
6	10 A	Moonroof. DC inverter. Driver door switch pack. Power slide rear window switch.
7	30 A	Passenger door module.
8	5 A	Parking assist control module. Trailer brake switch (gas).
9	5 A	Not used.
10	10 A	Extended power module.
11	5 A	Telematics control unit module.
12	5 A	Not used.
13	15 A	Driver door lock. Driver door unlock.
14	30 A	Driver door module.
15	15 A	Extended power module.
16	15 A	Not used (spare).
17	15 A	SYNC. Receiver transceiver module. Integrated control panel.
18	7.5 A	Wireless accessory charging module.
19	7.5 A	Not used.

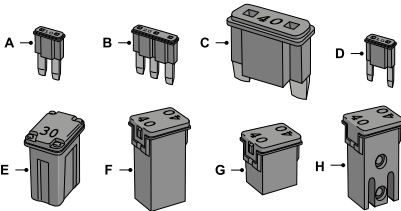
# Fuses

Item	Rating	Protected Component
20	10 A	Not used (spare).
21	7.5 A	Climate control. E-shifter module.
22	7.5 A	Instrument cluster. Smart data link connector. Steering column control module.
23	20 A	Audio unit.
24	20 A	Not used (spare).
25	30 A	Left-hand front power windows. Right-hand front power windows. Left-hand rear power windows. Right-hand rear power windows.

G J Case Low Profile.

H Slotted M Case.

## IDENTIFYING FUSE TYPES



- A Micro 2.
- B Micro 3.
- C Maxi.
- D Mini.
- E M Case.
- F J Case.

## FUSES – TROUBLESHOOTING

### FUSES – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

#### When do I need to check a fuse?

If electrical components in the vehicle are not working.

#### When do I need to replace a fuse?

If a fuse has blown.

#### How do I identify a blown fuse?

You can identify a blown fuse by a broken wire within the fuse.

# Maintenance

## MAINTENANCE PRECAUTIONS

Service your vehicle regularly to help maintain its roadworthiness and resale value. There is a large network of authorized dealers that are there to help you with their professional servicing expertise. We believe that their specially trained technicians are best qualified to service your vehicle properly and expertly. They are supported by a wide range of highly specialized tools developed specifically for servicing your vehicle.

If your vehicle requires professional service, an authorized dealer can provide the necessary parts and service. Check your warranty information to find out which parts and services are covered.

Use only recommended fuels, lubricants, fluids and service parts conforming to specifications. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 355).

- Do not work on a hot engine.
- Make sure that nothing gets caught in moving parts.
- Do not work on a vehicle with the engine running in an enclosed space, unless you are sure you have enough ventilation.
- Keep all open flames and other burning material, such as cigarettes, away from the battery and all fuel related parts.
- Set the parking brake, shift the transmission to park (P) and block the wheels.

## OPENING AND CLOSING THE HOOD

### Opening the Hood



E263274

1. Open the left-hand front door.
2. Fully pull the hood release lever and let it completely retract.
3. Fully pull the hood release lever for a second time.

**Note:** *This action releases the hood latch.*

**Note:** *This action fully releases the hood.*

4. Open the hood.

**Note:** *There is no secondary hood release under the hood.*

# Maintenance



E87786

5. Support the hood with the strut.

## Closing the Hood



**WARNING:** Make sure that you fully latch the hood before driving. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

1. Remove the strut from the catch and secure it correctly in the clip.
2. Lower the hood and allow it to drop under its own weight for the last 10–14 in (25–35 cm).

## Warning Lamps and Indicators



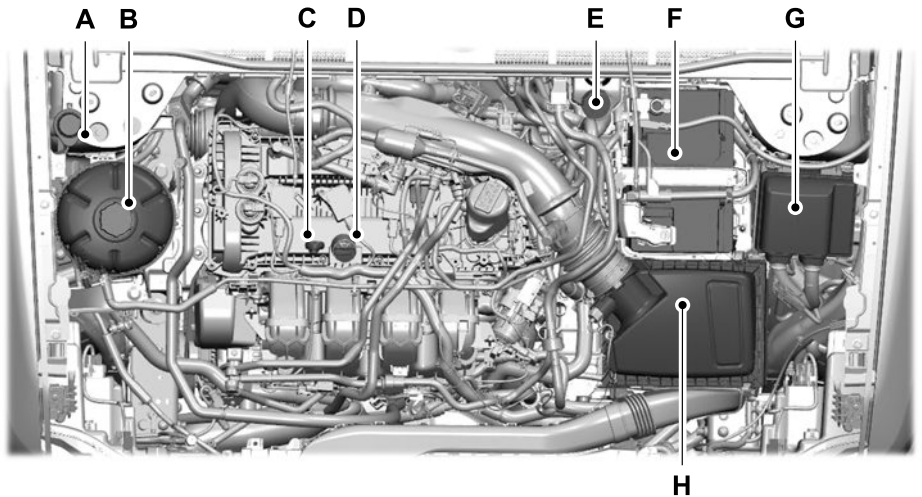
This lamp illuminates when the ignition is on and the hood is not completely closed.

## Information Messages

Message	Action
Hood Ajar	Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so and close the hood.

# Maintenance

## UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW - 2.0L ECOBOOST™

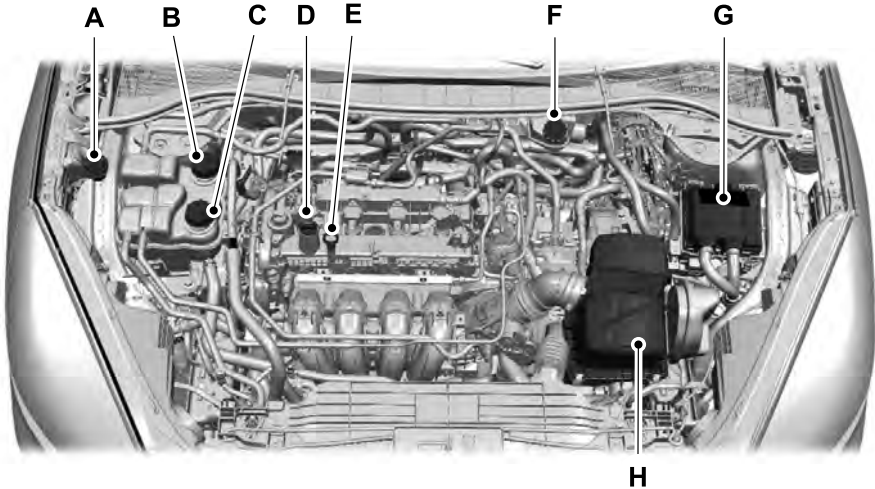


- A Windshield washer fluid reservoir. See **Adding Washer Fluid** (page 92).
- B Engine coolant reservoir. See **Checking the Coolant** (page 304).
- C Engine oil dipstick. See **Engine Oil Dipstick Overview** (page 303).
- D Engine oil filler cap. See **Adding Engine Oil** (page 303).
- E Brake fluid reservoir. See **Locating the Brake Fluid Reservoir** (page 192).
- F Battery. See **Changing the 12V Battery** (page 310).
- G Engine compartment fuse box. See **Fuses** (page 290).
- H Air filter assembly. See **Changing the Engine Air Filter** (page 308).



# Maintenance

## UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW - 2.5L, HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (HEV)

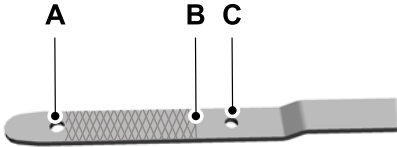


- A Windshield washer fluid reservoir: See **Adding Washer Fluid** (page 92).
- B Low temp coolant cap: See **Checking the Coolant** (page 304).
- C High temp coolant cap: See **Checking the Coolant** (page 304).
- D Engine oil filler cap: See **Checking the Engine Oil Level** (page 303).
- E Engine oil dipstick: See **Engine Oil Dipstick Overview** (page 303).
- F Brake fluid reservoir: See **Checking the Brake Fluid** (page 192).
- G Power distribution box: See **Accessing the Under Hood Fuse Box** (page 290).
- H Air filter assembly: See **Changing the Engine Air Filter** (page 309).

# Maintenance

## ENGINE OIL

### ENGINE OIL DIPSTICK OVERVIEW



- A Minimum.
- B Nominal.
- C Maximum.

### CHECKING THE ENGINE OIL LEVEL


1. Make sure that your vehicle is on level ground.
2. Check the oil level before starting the engine, or switch the engine off after warming up and wait 10 minutes for the oil to drain into the oil pan.
3. Remove the dipstick and wipe it with a clean, lint-free cloth.
4. Reinstall the dipstick and make sure it is fully seated.
5. Remove the dipstick again to check the oil level.


**Note:** *If the oil level is between the maximum and minimum marks, the oil level is acceptable. Do not add oil.*

6. If the oil level is at the minimum mark, immediately add oil.
7. Reinstall the dipstick. Make sure it is fully seated.

**Note:** *The oil consumption of new engines reaches its normal level after approximately 3,000 mi (5,000 km).*

### ADDING ENGINE OIL

 **WARNING:** Do not remove the filler cap when the engine is running.

 **WARNING:** Do not add engine oil when the engine is hot. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

Do not use supplemental engine oil additives because they are unnecessary and could lead to engine damage that the vehicle warranty may not cover.

1. Clean the area surrounding the engine oil filler cap before you remove it.
2. Remove the engine oil filler cap.
3. Add engine oil that meets our specifications. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 355).
4. Reinstall the engine oil filler cap. Turn it clockwise until you feel a strong resistance.

**Note:** *Do not add oil further than the maximum mark. Oil levels above the maximum mark may cause engine damage.*

**Note:** *Immediately soak up any oil spillage with an absorbent cloth.*

### RESETTING THE ENGINE OIL CHANGE REMINDER

Use the information display controls on the steering wheel to reset the oil change reminder.

# Maintenance

From the main menu scroll to:

Message	Action and description
Settings	Press the <b>OK</b> button, then from this menu scroll to the following message.
Oil Life Reset	Press the <b>OK</b> button, then from this menu scroll to the following message.
Hold OK to Reset	Press and hold the <b>OK</b> button until the instrument cluster displays the following message.  Reset Successful
	When the oil change reminder resets the instrument cluster displays 100%.  Remaining Life {00}%
	If the instrument cluster displays one of the following messages, repeat the process.  Not Reset  Reset Cancelled

## ENGINE OIL CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION

For filling information, please refer to the Capacities and Specifications section of your owner's manual. See **Engine Oil Capacity and Specification** (page 359).

## CHECKING THE COOLANT

When the engine is cold, check the concentration and level of the coolant at the intervals listed in the scheduled maintenance information. See **Scheduled Maintenance** (page 436).

**Note:** Make sure that the coolant level is between the minimum and maximum marks on the coolant reservoir.

**Note:** Coolant expands when it is hot. The level may extend beyond the **MAX** mark.

If the coolant level is at or below the minimum mark, add prediluted coolant immediately.

Maintain coolant concentration within 48% to 50%, which equates to a freeze point between -29°F (-34°C) and -35°F (-37°C). Coolant concentration should be checked using a refractometer. We do not recommend the use of hydrometers or coolant test strips for measuring coolant concentration.

## Adding Coolant



**WARNING:** Do not remove the coolant reservoir cap when the engine is on or the cooling system is hot. Wait 10 minutes for the cooling system to cool down. Cover the coolant reservoir cap with a thick cloth to prevent the possibility of scalding and slowly remove the cap. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



**WARNING:** Do not add engine coolant when the engine is on or the cooling system is hot. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



**WARNING:** Do not add coolant further than the **MAX** mark.

# Maintenance



**WARNING:** Do not put coolant in the windshield washer reservoir. If sprayed on the windshield, coolant could make it difficult to see through the windshield.

**Note:** Do not use stop leak pellets, cooling system sealants, or non-specified additives as they can cause damage to the engine cooling or heating systems. Resulting component damage may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.

**Note:** Automotive fluids are not interchangeable.

It is very important to use prediluted coolant approved to the correct specification in order to avoid plugging the small passageways in the engine cooling system. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 355). Do not mix different colors or types of coolant in your vehicle. Mixing of engine coolants or using an incorrect coolant may harm the engine or cooling system components and could void the vehicle Warranty.

**Note:** If prediluted coolant is not available, use the approved concentrated coolant diluting it to 50/50 with deionized or distilled water. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 355). Using water that has not been deionized may contribute to deposit formation, corrosion and plugging of the small cooling system passageways.

To top up the coolant level do the following:

1. Unscrew the cap slowly. Any pressure escapes as you unscrew the cap.
2. Add enough prediluted coolant to reach the correct level.

**Note:** We do not recommend the use of recycled coolant.

3. Replace the coolant reservoir cap. Turn the cap clockwise until it contacts the hard stop.
4. Check the coolant level in the coolant reservoir the next few times you drive your vehicle. If necessary, repeat step 2.

If you have to add more than 1.1 qt (1 L) of engine coolant per month, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. Operating an engine with a low level of coolant can result in engine overheating and possible engine damage.

In case of emergency, you can add a large amount of water without engine coolant in order to reach a vehicle service location. Service your vehicle as soon as possible.

Water alone, without engine coolant, can cause engine damage from corrosion, overheating or freezing.

Do not use the following as a coolant substitute, as they can cause engine damage from overheating or freezing:

- Alcohol.
- Methanol.
- Brine.
- Any coolant mixed with alcohol or methanol antifreeze.

Do not add extra inhibitors or additives to the coolant. These can be harmful and compromise the corrosion protection of the coolant.

## Severe Climates

If you drive in extremely cold climates, you may need to increase the coolant concentration above 50%.

**Note:** A coolant concentration of 60% provides improved freeze point protection. Coolant concentrations above 60% decrease the overheat protection characteristics of the coolant and could cause engine damage.

# Maintenance

If you drive in extremely hot climates, you may need to decrease the coolant concentration to 40%.

**Note:** A coolant concentration of 40% provides improved overheating protection. Coolant concentrations below 40% decrease the overheating and corrosion protection characteristics of the coolant and could cause engine damage.

## Coolant Change

Change the coolant at specific mileage intervals. Refer to the scheduled maintenance information. See **Normal Scheduled Maintenance** (page 439).

**Note:** Dispose of used coolant in the appropriate manner.

Follow your community's regulations and standards for recycling and disposing of automotive fluids.

## Fail-Safe Cooling

Fail-safe cooling allows you to temporarily drive your vehicle before any incremental component damage occurs. The fail-safe distance depends on ambient temperature, vehicle load and terrain.

### How Fail-Safe Cooling Works



If the engine begins to overheat, the coolant temperature gauge moves toward the red zone:



A warning lamp illuminates and a message may appear in the information display.

If the engine reaches a preset over-temperature condition, the engine automatically switches to alternating cylinder operation. Each disabled cylinder acts as an air pump and cools the engine.

When this occurs, your vehicle still operates, however:

- Engine power is limited.
- The air conditioning system turns off.

Continued operation increases the engine temperature, causing the engine to completely shut down. Your steering and braking effort increases in this situation.

When the engine temperature cools, you can re-start the engine. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible to minimize engine damage.

## When Fail-Safe Mode Is Activated



**WARNING:** Fail-safe mode is for use during emergencies only. Operate your vehicle in fail-safe mode only as long as necessary to bring your vehicle to rest in a safe location and seek immediate repairs. When in fail-safe mode, your vehicle will have limited power, will not be able to maintain high-speed operation, and may completely shut down without warning, potentially losing engine power, power steering assist, and power brake assist, which may increase the possibility of a crash resulting in serious injury.



**WARNING:** Do not remove the coolant reservoir cap when the engine is on or the cooling system is hot. Wait 10 minutes for the cooling system to cool down. Cover the coolant reservoir cap with a thick cloth to prevent the possibility of scalding and slowly remove the cap. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

Your vehicle has limited engine power when in the fail-safe mode, drive your vehicle with caution. Your vehicle does not maintain high-speed operation and the engine could operate poorly.

# Maintenance

Remember that the engine is capable of automatically shutting down to prevent engine damage. In this situation:

1. Pull off the road as soon as safely possible and switch the engine off.
2. If you are a member of a roadside assistance program, we recommend that you contact your roadside assistance service provider.
3. If this is not possible, wait for a short period of time for the engine to cool.
4. Check the coolant level. If the coolant level is at or below the minimum mark, add prediluted coolant immediately.
5. When the engine temperature cools, you can re-start the engine. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible to minimize engine damage.

**Note:** *Driving your vehicle without repair increases the chance of engine damage.*

## Engine Coolant Temperature Management (If Equipped)



**WARNING:** To reduce the risk of crash and injury, be prepared that the vehicle speed may reduce and the vehicle may not be able to accelerate with full power until the coolant temperature reduces.

If you tow a trailer with your vehicle, the engine may temporarily reach a higher temperature during severe operating conditions, for example ascending a long or steep grade in high ambient temperatures.

At this time, you may notice the coolant temperature gauge moves toward the red zone and a message may appear in the information display.

You may notice a reduction in vehicle speed caused by reduced engine power in order to manage the engine coolant temperature. Your vehicle may enter this mode if certain high-temperature and high-load conditions take place. The amount of speed reduction depends on vehicle loading, grade and ambient temperature. If this occurs, there is no need to stop your vehicle. You can continue to drive.

The air conditioning may automatically turn on and off during severe operating conditions to protect the engine from overheating. When the coolant temperature decreases to the normal operating temperature, the air conditioning turns on.

If the coolant temperature gauge moves fully into the red zone, or if the coolant temperature warning or service engine soon messages appear in your information display, do the following:

1. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Fully apply the parking brake, shift into park (P) or neutral (N).
2. Leave the engine running until the coolant temperature gauge needle returns to the normal position. If the temperature does not drop after several minutes, follow the remaining steps.
3. Switch the engine off and wait for it to cool. Check the coolant level.
4. If the coolant level is at or below the minimum mark, add prediluted coolant immediately.
5. If the coolant level is normal, restart the engine and continue.

# Maintenance

## CHANGING THE ENGINE AIR FILTER - 2.0L ECOBOOST™



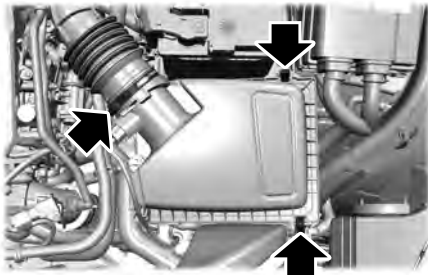
**WARNING:** To reduce the risk of vehicle damage and personal burn injuries, do not start your engine with the air cleaner removed and do not remove it while the engine is running.

When changing the air filter element, use only parts that meet or exceed our specifications.

For EcoBoost equipped vehicles: When servicing the air cleaner, it is important that no foreign material enter the air induction system. The engine and turbocharger are susceptible to damage from even small particles.

Change the air filter element at the proper interval. See **Scheduled Maintenance** (page 436).

**Note:** Failure to use the correct air filter element may result in severe engine damage. The customer warranty may be void for any damage to the engine if the correct air filter element is not used.



1. Using a screwdriver, loosen the clamp on the air filter housing cover.
2. Gently pull the boot back away from the air filter housing cover.

3. Release the two clips from the air filter housing cover.
4. Remove the air filter housing cover.
5. Remove the air filter element from the air filter housing.
6. Wipe any dirt or debris from the air filter housing assembly to make sure no dirt gets in the engine and to make sure you have a good seal.



7. Install a new air filter element. Be careful not to crimp the filter element edges between the air filter housing and cover. This could cause filter damage and allow unfiltered air to enter the engine if it is not properly seated.
8. Install the air filter housing cover.
9. Engage the clips to secure the air filter housing cover to the air filter housing.
10. Reconnect the boot to the air filter housing cover and tighten securely.

# Maintenance

## CHANGING THE ENGINE AIR FILTER - 2.5L, HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (HEV)

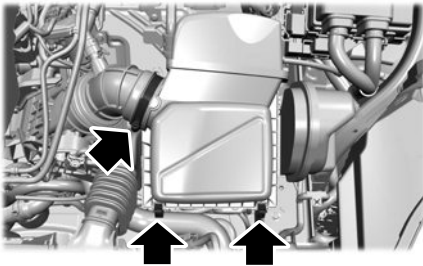


**WARNING:** To reduce the risk of vehicle damage and personal burn injuries, do not start your engine with the air cleaner removed and do not remove it while the engine is running.

When changing the air filter element, use only parts that meet or exceed our specifications.

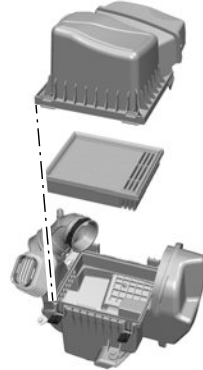
Change the air filter element at the proper interval. See **Scheduled Maintenance** (page 436).

**Note:** If you do not use the correct air filter element, your vehicle warranty could be void.



1. Using a screwdriver, loosen the clamp on air filter housing cover.
2. Gently pull the boot back away from the air filter housing cover.
3. Release the two clips from the air filter housing cover.
4. Remove air filter housing cover.
5. Remove the air filter element from the air filter housing.

6. Wipe any dirt or debris from the air filter housing assembly to make sure no dirt gets in the engine and to make sure you have a good seal.



7. Install a new air filter element. Be careful not to crimp the filter element edges between the air filter housing and cover. This could cause filter damage and allow unfiltered air to enter the engine if it is not properly seated.
8. Install the air filter housing cover.
9. Engage the clips to secure the air filter housing cover to the air filter housing.
10. Reconnect the boot to the air filter housing cover and tighten securely.

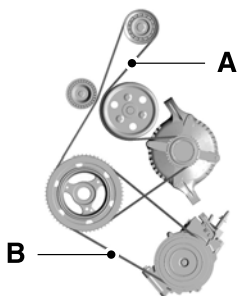
## CHANGING THE FUEL FILTER

Your vehicle has a lifetime fuel filter that integrates with the fuel tank. It does not need regular maintenance or replacement.



# Maintenance

## DRIVE BELT ROUTING OVERVIEW - 2.0L ECOBOOST™



- A. The long drive belt is on the first pulley groove closest to the engine.
- B. The short drive belt is on the second pulley groove farthest from engine.

## CHANGING THE 12V BATTERY

**WARNING:** Batteries normally produce explosive gases which can cause personal injury. Therefore, do not allow flames, sparks or lighted substances to come near the battery. When working near the battery, always shield your face and protect your eyes. Always provide correct ventilation.

**WARNING:** When lifting a plastic-cased battery, excessive pressure on the end walls could cause acid to flow through the vent caps, resulting in personal injury and damage to the vehicle or battery. Lift the battery with a battery carrier or with your hands on opposite corners.

**WARNING:** Keep batteries out of reach of children. Batteries contain sulfuric acid. Avoid contact with skin, eyes or clothing. Shield your eyes when working near the battery to protect against possible splashing of acid solution. In case of acid contact with skin or eyes, flush immediately with water for a minimum of 15 minutes and get prompt medical attention. If acid is swallowed, call a physician immediately.

**WARNING:** Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds, chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and reproductive harm. **Wash your hands after handling.**

**WARNING:** This vehicle may have more than one battery. Removing the battery cables from only one battery does not disconnect your vehicle electrical system. Make sure you disconnect the battery cables from all batteries when disconnecting power. Failure to do so may cause serious personal injury or property damage.

**WARNING:** For vehicles with Auto-Start-Stop the battery requirement is different. You must replace the battery with one of exactly the same specification.

The battery is in the engine compartment. See **Under Hood Overview** (page 301).

Your vehicle has a maintenance-free battery. It does not require additional water during service.

If the vehicle battery has a cover and vent hose, make sure you correctly install it after cleaning or replacing the battery.

# Maintenance

---

For longer, trouble-free operation, keep the top of the battery clean and dry and the battery cables tightly fastened to the battery terminals. If any corrosion is present on the battery or terminals, remove the cables from the terminals and clean with a wire brush. You can neutralize the acid with a solution of baking soda and water.

We recommend that you disconnect the negative battery cable terminal from the battery if you plan to store your vehicle for an extended period.

**Note:** *If you only disconnect the negative battery cable terminal, make sure it is isolated or placed away from the battery terminal to avoid unintended connection or arcing.*

If you replace the battery make sure it matches the electrical requirements of your vehicle.

If you disconnect or replace the battery and your vehicle has an automatic transmission, it must relearn its adaptive strategy. Because of this, the transmission may shift firmly when first driven. This is normal operation while the transmission fully updates its operation to optimum shift feel.

## Battery Sensor Reset

When you install a new battery, reset the battery sensor by doing the following:

1. Switch the ignition on, and leave the engine off.

**Note:** *Complete Steps 2 and 3 within 10 seconds.*

2. Flash the high beam headlamps five times, ending with the high beams off.
3. Press and release the brake pedal three times.

The battery warning lamp flashes three times to confirm that the reset is successful.

## Battery Management System (if Equipped)

The system monitors battery conditions and takes actions to extend battery life. If excessive battery drain is detected, the system temporarily disables some electrical systems to protect the battery.

Systems included are:

- Heated rear window.
- Heated seats.
- Climate control.
- Heated steering wheel.
- Audio unit.
- Navigation system.

A message may appear in the information display to alert you that battery protection actions are active. This message is only for notification that an action is taking place, and not intended to indicate an electrical problem or that the battery requires replacement.

After battery replacement, or in some cases after charging the battery with an external charger, the battery management system requires eight hours of vehicle sleep time to relearn the battery state of charge. During this time, your vehicle must remain fully locked with the ignition switched off.

**Note:** *Prior to relearning the battery state of charge, the battery management system may temporarily disable some electrical systems.*

# Maintenance

## Electrical Accessory Installation

To make sure the battery management system works correctly, do not connect an electrical device ground connection directly to the battery negative post. This can cause inaccurate measurements of the battery condition and potential incorrect system operation.

**Note:** *If you add electrical accessories or components to the vehicle, it may adversely affect battery performance and durability. This may also affect the performance of other electrical systems in the vehicle.*

## Remove and Reinstall the Battery

Install a battery approved for use by our specifications. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 355).

To disconnect or remove the battery, do the following:

1. Apply the parking brake and switch the ignition off.
2. Switch all electrical equipment off, for example lights and radio.
3. Wait a minimum of two minutes before disconnecting the battery.

**Note:** *The engine management system has a power hold function and remains powered for a period of time after you switch the ignition off. This is to allow the system to store diagnostic and adaptive tables. Disconnecting the battery without waiting can cause damage not covered by the vehicle warranty.*

4. Disconnect the negative battery cable terminal.
5. Disconnect the positive battery cable terminal.
6. Remove the battery securing clamp.
7. Remove the battery.
8. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

**Note:** *Before reconnecting the battery, make sure the ignition remains switched off.*

**Note:** *Make sure to fully tighten the battery cables.*

If you disconnect or replace the vehicle battery, you must reset the following features:

- Window bounce-back. See **What Is Window Bounce-Back** (page 101).
- Clock Settings.
- Pre-set radio stations.

## Battery Disposal



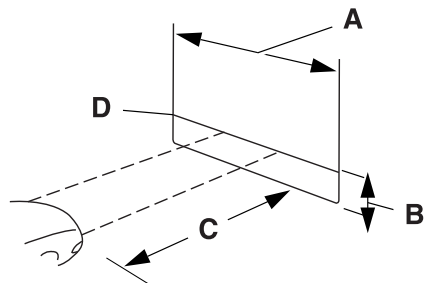
Make sure that you dispose of old batteries in an environmentally friendly way.

Seek advice from your local authority about recycling old batteries.

## ADJUSTING THE HEADLAMPS

### Vertical Aim Adjustment

The headlamps on your vehicle are properly aimed at the assembly plant. If your vehicle has been in an accident, have the alignment of your headlamps checked as soon as possible.



A 8 ft (2.4 m)

B Center height of lamp to ground

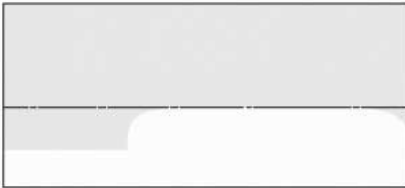
# Maintenance

- C 25 ft (7.6 m)
- D Horizontal reference line

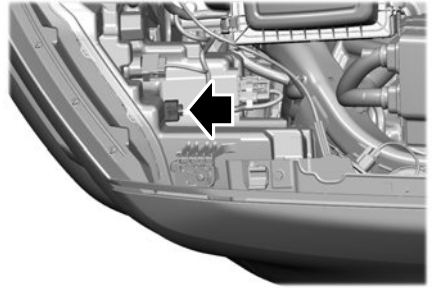
1. Park the vehicle directly in front of a wall or screen on a level surface, approximately 25 ft (7.6 m) away.
2. Measure the height of the headlamp bulb center from the ground and mark an 8 ft (2.4 m) horizontal reference line on the vertical wall or screen at this height.

**Note:** To see a clearer light pattern for adjusting, block the light from one headlamp when adjusting the other.

3. Switch on the low beam headlamps to illuminate the wall or screen and open the hood.



4. On the wall or screen you will observe a flat zone of high intensity light located at the top of the right hand portion of the beam pattern. If the top edge of the high intensity light zone is not at the horizontal reference line, adjust the headlamp.



5. Locate the vertical adjuster on each headlamp. Using a Phillips #2 screwdriver, turn the adjuster either clockwise or counterclockwise in order to aim the headlamp. The horizontal edge of the brighter light should touch the horizontal reference line.
6. Close the hood and switch off the lamps.

## Horizontal Aim Adjustment

Horizontal aim is not required for this vehicle and is non-adjustable.

## EXTERIOR BULBS

### EXTERIOR BULB SPECIFICATION CHART

Replacement bulbs are specified in the chart below. Headlamp bulbs must be marked with an authorized D.O.T. marking for North America to make sure they have the proper lamp performance, light brightness, light pattern and safe visibility. The correct bulbs will not damage the lamp assembly or void the lamp assembly warranty and will provide quality bulb illumination time.

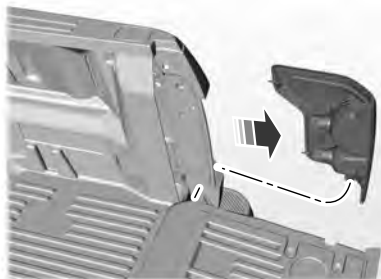
# Maintenance

Lamp	Specification	Power (Watt)
Headlamp low beam.	LED	LED
Headlamp high beam.	LED	LED
Front side marker lamp.	W5W	5
Front turn signal lamp.	4257NA Amber	26.5/8.5
Rear lamp, brake lamp, rear turn signal lamp and rear side marker lamp. Low series.	WT21-7W	26.5/8.5
Rear lamp, brake lamp, and turn signal lamp. High series.	WT21-7W	26.5/8.5
Rear side marker lamp. High series.	LED	LED
Reversing lamp.	WT21W	26.5
License plate lamp.	LED	LED
Rear cargo box lamp.	LED	LED
Central high mounted cargo lamp.	912	12.8
Underhood lamp.	LED	LED

**Note:** LED lamps are not serviceable. See an authorized dealer if they fail.

## REMOVING A REAR LAMP ASSEMBLY

1. Make sure the headlamps are off.
2. Open the tailgate to access the rear lamp assemblies.
3. Remove the two bolts from the tail lamp assembly. Then, carefully pull the lamp assembly from the tailgate pillar by releasing the two retaining tabs.
4. Disconnect the electrical connector from the bulb.

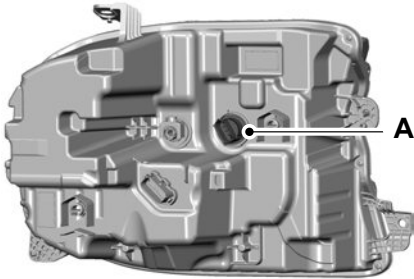


# Maintenance

5. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

## CHANGING A FRONT TURN SIGNAL LAMP BULB

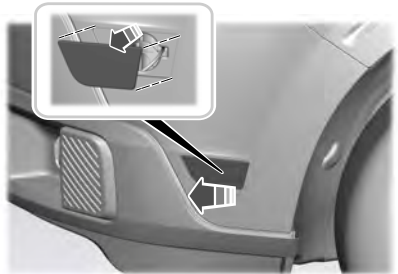
### Headlamp



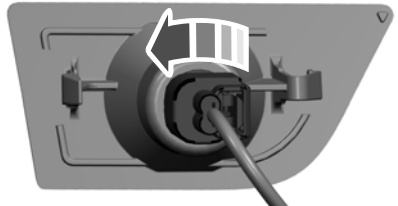
A Park/turn signal lamp.

1. Disconnect the electrical connector.
2. Remove the bulb from the headlamp assembly by turning it counterclockwise, then pull it straight out.
3. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

## CHANGING A FRONT SIDE MARKER LAMP BULB



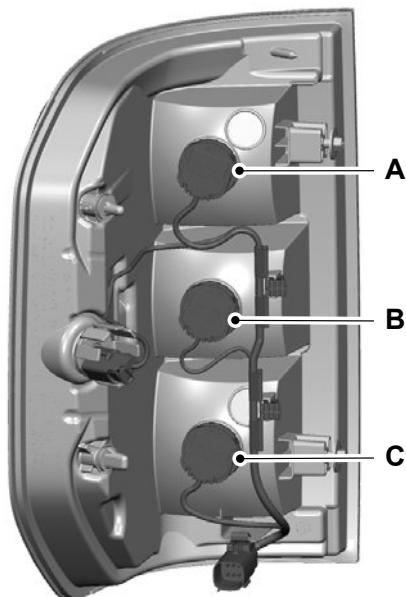
1. Use a suitable tool, for example a trim tool, to push the lamp forward.
2. Pull the lamp out.



3. Remove the bulb holder from the lamp assembly by turning it counterclockwise and pulling it straight out.
4. Disconnect the bulb from the electrical connector.
5. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

# Maintenance

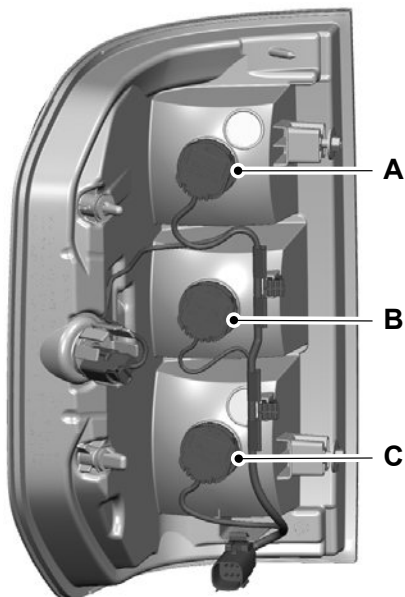
## CHANGING A REAR LAMP BULB



- A. Stoplamp, rear and turn signal lamp bulb.
- B. Reversing lamp bulb.
- C. Stoplamp, rear and turn signal lamp bulb.

1. Remove the rear lamp assembly. See **Removing a Rear Lamp Assembly** (page 314).
2. Rotate the bulb socket counterclockwise and remove it from the rear lamp assembly.
3. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

## CHANGING A STOPLAMP BULB



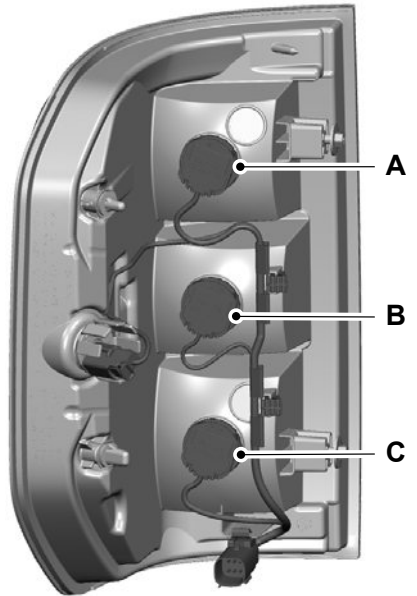
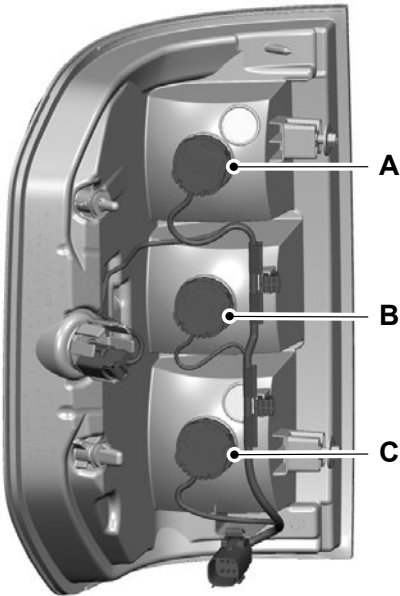
- A. Stoplamp, rear and turn signal lamp bulb.
- B. Reversing lamp bulb.
- C. Stoplamp, rear and turn signal lamp bulb.

1. Remove the rear lamp assembly. See **Removing a Rear Lamp Assembly** (page 314).
2. Rotate the bulb socket counterclockwise and remove it from the rear lamp assembly.
3. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

# Maintenance

## CHANGING A REAR TURN SIGNAL LAMP BULB

## CHANGING A REVERSING LAMP BULB



- A. Stoplamp, rear and turn signal lamp bulb.
- B. Reversing lamp bulb.
- C. Stoplamp, rear and turn signal lamp bulb.

- A. Stoplamp, rear and turn signal lamp bulb.
- B. Reversing lamp bulb.
- C. Stoplamp, rear and turn signal lamp bulb.

1. Remove the rear lamp assembly. See **Removing a Rear Lamp Assembly** (page 314).
2. Rotate the bulb socket counterclockwise and remove it from the rear lamp assembly.
3. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

1. Remove the rear lamp assembly. See **Removing a Rear Lamp Assembly** (page 314).
2. Rotate the bulb socket counterclockwise and remove it from the rear lamp assembly.
3. To install, reverse the removal procedure.



# Maintenance

---

## CHANGING A HIGH MOUNTED STOPLAMP BULB

1. Make sure the lamps are off.
2. Remove the four screws and move the lamp assembly away from the vehicle to expose the bulb sockets.



3. Remove the bulb socket by rotating it counterclockwise and pulling it out of the lamp assembly.
4. Pull the bulb straight out of the socket.
5. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

## INTERIOR BULBS

### INTERIOR BULB SPECIFICATION CHART

Your vehicle has LED lamps. These are not serviceable items. See an authorized dealer if they fail.

# Vehicle Care

## CLEANING PRODUCTS

For best results, use the following products or products of equivalent quality:

### Materials

Name	Specification
Motorcraft® Bug and Tar Remover, ZC-42 (U.S. & Canada)	-
Motorcraft® Custom Bright Metal Cleaner, ZC-15 (U.S. & Canada)	ESR-M5B194-B
Motorcraft® Detail Wash, ZC-3-A (U.S. & Canada)	ESR-M14P4-A
Motorcraft® Engine Shampoo and Degreaser, ZC-20 (U.S.)	ESR-M14P3-A
Motorcraft® Engine Shampoo, CXC-66-A (Canada)	-
Motorcraft® Premium Leather and Vinyl Cleaner, ZC-56 (U.S. & Canada)	-
Motorcraft® Multi-Purpose Cleaner, CXC-101 (Canada)	-
Motorcraft® Premium Windshield Wash Concentrate with Bitterant, ZC-32-B2 (U.S.)	WSS-M14P19-A
Motorcraft® Premium Quality Windshield Washer Fluid, CXC-37-F/M (Canada)	WSS-M14P19-A
Motorcraft® Professional Strength Carpet & Upholstery Cleaner, ZC-54 (U.S. & Canada)	-
Motorcraft® Premium Glass Cleaner, CXC-100 (Canada)	ESR-M14P5-A
Motorcraft® Spot and Stain Remover, ZC-14 (U.S.)	-
Motorcraft® Ultra-Clear Spray Glass Cleaner, ZC-23 (U.S.)	ESR-M14P5-A
Motorcraft® Wheel and Tire Cleaner, ZC-37-A (U.S. & Canada)	-

## CLEANING THE EXTERIOR

### CLEANING THE EXTERIOR PRECAUTIONS

Immediately remove fuel spillages, additive residuals, bird droppings, insect deposits and road tar. These may cause damage to your vehicle's paintwork or trim over time.

Remove any exterior accessories, for example antennas, before entering a car wash.

### CLEANING HEADLAMPS AND REAR LAMPS

We recommend that you only use cold or lukewarm water containing car shampoo to clean the headlamps and the rear lamps.

Do not scrape the lamps.

# Vehicle Care

---

Do not wipe lamps when they are dry.

## CLEANING WINDOWS AND WIPER BLADES

To clean the windshield and wiper blades:

- Clean the windshield with a non-abrasive glass cleaner.

**Note:** *When cleaning the interior of the windshield, avoid getting any glass cleaner on the instrument panel or door panels. Wipe any glass cleaner off these surfaces immediately.*

- Clean the wiper blades with washer fluid or water applied with a soft sponge or cloth.

**Note:** *Do not use razor blades or other sharp objects to clean or remove decals from the inside of the heated rear window. This can cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.*

## CLEANING CHROME, ALUMINIUM OR STAINLESS STEEL

We recommend that you only use a car shampoo, a soft cloth and water on bumpers and other chrome, aluminium or stainless steel parts.

**Note:** *For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.*

**Note:** *Rinse the area well after cleaning.*

**Note:** *Do not use abrasive materials, for example steel wool or plastic pads, as they can scratch these surfaces.*

**Note:** *Do not use chrome cleaner, metal cleaner or polish on wheels or wheel covers.*

## CLEANING WHEELS

Only use a recommended wheel and tire cleaner to clean the wheels weekly. For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

1. Use a sponge to remove heavy deposits of dirt and brake dust.
2. Rinse well after cleaning.

**Note:** *Do not apply a cleaning chemical to warm or hot wheel rims and covers.*

If you intend on parking your vehicle for an extended period after cleaning the wheels with a wheel cleaner, drive your vehicle for a few minutes before parking your vehicle. This reduces the risk of corrosion of the brake discs, brake pads and linings.

Do not clean the wheels when they are hot.

**Note:** *Some car washes could damage wheel rims and covers.*

**Note:** *Using non-recommended cleaners, harsh cleaning products, chrome wheel cleaners or abrasive materials could damage wheel rims and covers.*

## CLEANING THE ENGINE COMPARTMENT

Use a vacuum cleaner to remove debris from the screen area below windshield.

**Note:** *If you are not familiar with the parts around the engine do not wash the engine compartment. Avoid frequent engine washes.*

When washing the engine compartment:

- Never wash or rinse the engine while it is hot or running.
- Never wash or rinse any ignition coil, spark plug wire or spark plug well.
- Cover the battery, power distribution box, and air filter assembly to prevent water damage.

# Vehicle Care

**Note:** If your vehicle has an engine cover remove the cover before application of shampoo and degreaser.

- Spray an approved engine shampoo and degreaser on all parts that require cleaning and rinse with water.

## CLEANING STRIPES OR GRAPHICS

It is recommended to wash your vehicle by hand however, pressure washing may be used under the following conditions:

- Use a spray with a 40° wide spray angle pattern.
- Keep the nozzle at a 12 in (305 mm) distance and 90° angle to your vehicle's surface.
- Do not use water pressure higher than 2,000 psi (14,000 kPa).
- Do not use water hotter than 179°F (82°C).

**Note:** Holding the pressure washer nozzle at an angle to the vehicle's surface may damage graphics and cause the edges to peel away from the vehicle's surface.

## CLEANING CAMERA LENSES AND SENSORS

We recommend that you only use lukewarm or cold water and a soft cloth to clean the camera lens and sensors.

**Note:** Do not pressure wash camera lens and sensors.

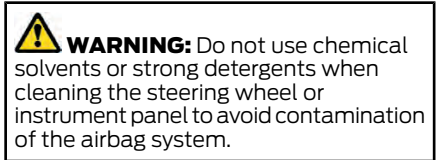
## CLEANING THE UNDERBODY

Flush the complete underside of your vehicle frequently. Keep body and door drain holes free from packed dirt.

Rear suspension components may require regular cleaning with a power washer or a thorough rinse with a strong stream of water if the vehicle is operated in dusty or muddy environments. Rear leaf springs or other suspension components may emit squeaking or popping noises while operating the vehicle if particles, such as dirt, rocks, or other debris, are present in the components.

## CLEANING THE INTERIOR

### CLEANING THE INSTRUMENT PANEL



We recommend that you only clean the instrument panel and cluster lens with a damp soft cloth. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.

For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

**Note:** Avoid cleaners or polishes that increase the gloss of the upper portion of the instrument panel. The dull finish in this area helps protect you from undesirable windshield reflection.

## CLEANING PLASTIC

We recommend that you only use a mild soap and water solution on a soft cloth. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.

# Vehicle Care

## CLEANING DISPLAYS AND SCREENS

We recommend that you only use a microfiber cloth in a circular motion to clean off the fingerprint or dust.

If dirt or fingerprints are still on the screen, apply a small amount of alcohol to the cloth and try to clean it again.

**Note:** *Do not pour or spray alcohol onto the touchscreen.*

**Note:** *Do not use detergent or any type of solvent to clean the touchscreen.*

## CLEANING LEATHER AND VINYL

We recommend that you only clean the leather and vinyl surfaces in the following way:

1. Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
2. Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.
3. Make sure the leather is dry, then apply a small amount of conditioner to a clean, dry cloth.
4. Rub the conditioner into the leather until it disappears. Allow the conditioner to dry, then repeat the process for the entire interior. If a film appears, wipe it off with a dry, clean cloth.
5. For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

## CLEANING FABRIC SEATS AND HEADLINERS



**WARNING:** On vehicles equipped with seat-mounted airbags, do not use chemical solvents or strong detergents. Such products could contaminate the side airbag system and affect performance of the side airbag in a crash.

We recommend that you only clean the fabric seats and headliners in the following way:

1. Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
2. Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.
3. For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

For heavy stains, spot clean the area. If a ring forms on the fabric, clean the entire area immediately, but do not oversaturate or the ring could set.

## CLEANING CARPETS AND FLOOR MATS

We recommend that you only clean your carpets in the following way:

1. Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
2. Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.
3. For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

# Vehicle Care

For heavy stains, spot clean the area. If a ring forms on the fabric, clean the entire area immediately, but do not oversaturate or the ring could set.

We recommend that you only clean your floor mats in the following way:

1. Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
2. Wash rubber floor mats using mild soap and lukewarm or cold water.
3. Completely dry the floor mat before placing them back in your vehicle.

## CLEANING SEATBELTS



**WARNING:** Do not use cleaning solvents, bleach or dye on the vehicle's seatbelts, as these actions may weaken the belt webbing.

1. Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.

## CLEANING STORAGE COMPARTMENTS

1. Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
2. Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.

## CLEANING MOONROOF TRACKS

1. Remove debris from the tracks with a vacuum cleaner.
2. Wipe the bulb seal and mating painted roof metal surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution.

**Note:** *The moonroof rail tracks are greased to maintain proper functionality. Do not wipe off the grease.*

## REPAIRING MINOR PAINT DAMAGE

Authorized dealers have touch-up paint to match your vehicle's color. Your vehicle color code is printed on a sticker on the front, left-hand side door jamb. Take your color code to your authorized dealer to make sure you get the correct color.

Before repairing minor paint damage, use a cleaner to remove particles such as bird droppings, tree sap, insect deposits, tar spots, road salt and industrial fallout.

Read the instructions before using cleaning products.

## WAXING YOUR VEHICLE

Wax the high-gloss painted surface of your prewashed vehicle once or twice a year.

We recommend that you only use an approved quality wax that does not contain abrasives. Follow the manufacturer's instructions to apply and remove the wax. For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

When washing and waxing, park your vehicle in a shaded area out of direct sunlight.

**Note:** *Avoid waxing unpainted or low-gloss black colored parts, they discolor over time.*

# Body Styling Kits

---

## **BODY STYLING KIT PRECAUTIONS**

The distance between the underside of your vehicle and the ground is less than that of other models. Drive with extreme care to avoid damage to your vehicle.

# Storing Your Vehicle

---

## PREPARING YOUR VEHICLE FOR STORAGE

If you plan on storing your vehicle for 30 days or more, the following maintenance recommendations ensures your vehicle stays in good operating condition.

Under various conditions, long-term storage may lead to degraded engine performance or failure unless you use specific precautions to preserve your vehicle.

### General

- Store all vehicles in a dry, ventilated place.
- If vehicles are stored outside, they require regular maintenance to protect against rust and weather damage.
- Make sure all linkages, cables, levers and pins under your vehicle are covered with grease to prevent rust.
- Move vehicles at least 25 ft (7.5 m) every 15 days to lubricate working parts and prevent corrosion.
- Fill the fuel tank with high-quality fuel until the first automatic shutoff of the fuel pump nozzle.

### Engine

- Change the engine oil and filter prior to storage because used engine oil contains contaminants which may cause engine damage.
- Start the engine every 15 days for a minimum of 15 minutes. Run at fast idle with the climate controls set to defrost until the engine reaches normal operating temperature.
- With your foot on the brake, shift through all the gears while the engine is running.

### Body

- Wash your vehicle thoroughly to remove dirt, grease, oil, tar or mud from exterior surfaces, rear-wheel housings and the underside of front fenders.
- Periodically wash your vehicle if it is stored in exposed locations.
- Touch-up exposed or primed metal to prevent rust.
- Cover chrome and stainless steel parts with a thick coat of auto wax to prevent discoloration. Re-wax as necessary when you wash your vehicle.
- Lubricate all hood, door and luggage compartment hinges and latches with a light grade oil.
- Cover interior trim to prevent fading.
- Keep all rubber parts free from oil and solvents.

### Hybrid Battery Systems

We recommend the following actions for your vehicle:

- When storing your vehicle for greater than 30 days the state of charge should be approximately 50%. Additionally we recommend disconnecting the 12V battery which will reduce system loads on the HV battery.

### 12 Volt Battery

- Check and recharge as necessary. Keep connections clean.

**Note:** *It is necessary to reset memory features if you disconnect the battery cables.*

### Brakes

Make sure the brakes and parking brake release fully.



# Storing Your Vehicle

---

**Note:** *If you intend on parking your vehicle for an extended period after cleaning the wheels with a wheel cleaner, drive your vehicle for a few minutes before doing so to reduce the risk of increased corrosion of the brake discs, brake pads and linings.*

## Tires

- Maintain recommended air pressure.

**Note:** *If you intend on parking your vehicle for an extended period after cleaning the wheels with a wheel cleaner, drive your vehicle for a few minutes before doing so. This reduces the risk of corrosion of the brake discs, brake pads and linings.*

- Check fluid levels (including coolant, oil and gas) to make sure there are no leaks, and fluids are at recommended levels.
- If you remove the battery, clean the battery cable ends and check for damage.

Contact an authorized dealer if you have any concerns or issues.

## REMOVING YOUR VEHICLE FROM STORAGE

When your vehicle is ready to come out of storage, do the following:

- We recommend that you change the engine oil before you use your vehicle again.
- Wash your vehicle to remove any dirt or grease film build-up on window surfaces.
- Check windshield wipers for any deterioration.
- Check under the hood for any foreign material that may have collected during storage such as mice or squirrel nests.
- Check the exhaust for any foreign material that may have collected during storage.
- Check tire pressures and set tire inflation per the Tire Label.
- Check brake pedal operation. Drive your vehicle 15 ft (4.5 m) back and forth to remove rust build-up.

# Wheel and Tire Information

## LOCATING THE TIRE LABEL

You will find a Tire Label containing tire inflation pressure by tire size and other important information located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver's door. See **Locating the Safety Compliance Certification Labels** (page 253).

## DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION UNIFORM TIRE QUALITY GRADES



Tire Quality Grades apply to new pneumatic passenger car tires. The Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tire sidewall between tread shoulder and maximum section width. For example: **Treadwear 200 Traction AA Temperature A.**

These Tire Quality Grades are determined by standards that the United States Department of Transportation has set.

Tire Quality Grades apply to new pneumatic passenger car tires. They do not apply to deep tread, winter-type snow tires, space-saver or temporary use spare tires, light truck or LT type tires, tires with nominal rim diameters of 10 to 12 inches or limited production tires as defined in Title 49 Code of Federal Regulations Part 575.104 (c)(2).

**U.S. Department of Transportation Tire quality grades:** The U.S. Department of Transportation requires us to give you the following information about tire grades exactly as the government has written it.

### Treadwear

The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would wear 1½ times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100. The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices, and differences in road characteristics and climate.

# Wheel and Tire Information

## Traction AA A B C



**WARNING:** The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning or peak traction characteristics.

The traction grades, from highest to lowest are AA, A, B, and C. The grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.

## Temperature A B C



**WARNING:** The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure.

The temperature grades are A (the highest), B and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory

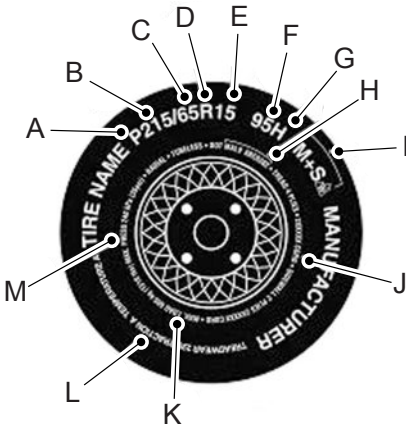
test wheel. Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure. The grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger car tires must meet under the Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard No. 139. Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.

## INFORMATION ON THE TIRE SIDEWALL

Both United States and Canada Federal regulations require tire manufacturers to place standardized information on the sidewall of all tires. This information identifies and describes the fundamental characteristics of the tire and also provides a U.S. DOT Tire Identification Number for safety standard certification and in case of a recall.

# Wheel and Tire Information

## Information on P Type Tires



P215/65R15 95H is an example of a tire size, load index and speed rating. The definitions of these items are listed below. (Note that the tire size, load index and speed rating for your vehicle may be different from this example.)

**A. P:** Indicates a tire, designated by the Tire and Rim Association, that may be used for service on cars, sport utility vehicles, minivans and light trucks. **Note:** If your tire size does not begin with a letter this may mean it is designated by either the European Tire and Rim Technical Organization or the Japan Tire Manufacturing Association.

**B. 215:** Indicates the nominal width of the tire in millimeters from sidewall edge to sidewall edge. In general, the larger the number, the wider the tire.

**C. 65:** Indicates the aspect ratio which gives the tire's ratio of height to width.

**D. R:** Indicates a radial type tire.

**E. 15:** Indicates the wheel or rim diameter in inches. If you change your wheel size, you will have to purchase new tires to match the new wheel diameter.

**F. 95:** Indicates the tire's load index. It is an index that relates to how much weight a tire can carry. You may find this information in your owner's manual. If not, contact a local tire dealer.

**Note:** *You may not find this information on all tires because it is not required by federal law.*

**G. H:** Indicates the tire's speed rating. The speed rating denotes the speed at which a tire is designed to be driven for extended periods of time under a standard condition of load and inflation pressure. The tires on your vehicle may operate at different conditions for load and inflation pressure. These speed ratings may need to be adjusted for the difference in conditions. The ratings range from 81 mph (130 km/h) to 186 mph (299 km/h). These ratings are listed in the following chart.

## Wheel and Tire Information

**Note:** You may not find this information on all tires because it is not required by federal law.

Letter rating	Speed rating
M	81 mph (130 km/h)
N	87 mph (140 km/h)
Q	99 mph (159 km/h)
R	106 mph (171 km/h)
S	112 mph (180 km/h)
T	118 mph (190 km/h)
U	124 mph (200 km/h)
H	130 mph (210 km/h)
V	149 mph (240 km/h)
W	168 mph (270 km/h)
Y	186 mph (299 km/h)

**Note:** For tires with a maximum speed capability over 149 mph (240 km/h), tire manufacturers sometimes use the letters ZR. For those with a maximum speed capability over 186 mph (299 km/h), tire manufacturers always use the letters ZR.

**H. U.S. DOT Tire Identification Number (TIN):** This begins with the letters DOT and indicates that the tire meets all federal standards. The next two numbers or letters are the plant code designating where it was manufactured, the next two are

the tire size code and the last four numbers represent the week and year the tire was built. For example, the numbers 317 mean the 31st week of 1997. After 2000, the numbers go to four digits. For example, 2501 means the 25th week of 2001. The numbers in between are identification codes used for traceability. This information is used to contact customers if a tire defect requires a recall.

**I. M+S or M/S:** Mud and Snow, or

**AT:** All Terrain, or

**AS:** All Season.

**J. Tire Ply Composition and Material Used:** Indicates the number of plies or the number of layers of rubber-coated fabric in the tire tread and sidewall. Tire manufacturers also must indicate the ply materials in the tire and the sidewall, which include steel, nylon, polyester, and others.

**K. Maximum Load:** Indicates the maximum load in kilograms and pounds that can be carried by the tire. See the Safety Compliance Certification Label (affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver's seating position), for the correct tire pressure for your vehicle.

**L. Treadwear, Traction and Temperature Grades:**

## Wheel and Tire Information

**\*Treadwear** The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and one-half times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100.

**\*Traction:** The traction grades, from highest to lowest are AA, A, B, and C. The grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.

**\*Temperature:** The temperature grades are A (the highest), B and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel.

### M. Maximum Inflation

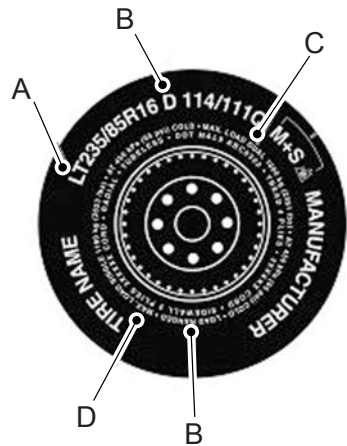
**Pressure:** Indicates the tire manufacturers' maximum permissible pressure or the pressure at which the maximum load can be carried by the tire. This pressure is normally higher than the vehicle manufacturer's recommended cold inflation pressure which can be found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label (affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge

that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver's seating position), or Tire Label which is located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver's door. The cold inflation pressure should never be set lower than the recommended pressure on the vehicle label.

The tire suppliers may have additional markings, notes or warnings such as standard load or radial tubeless.

### Additional Information Contained on the Tire Sidewall for LT Type Tires

**Note:** *Tire Quality Grades do not apply to this type of tire.*



LT type tires have some additional information beyond those of P type tires; these differences are described below.

# Wheel and Tire Information

A. **LT:** Indicates a tire, designated by the Tire and Rim Association, that is intended for service on light trucks.

B. **Load Range and Load Inflation Limits:** Indicates the tire's load-carrying capabilities and its inflation limits.

C. **Maximum Load Dual lb (kg) at psi (kPa) cold:** Indicates the maximum load and tire pressure when the tire is used as a dual, defined as four tires on the rear axle (a total of six or more tires on the vehicle).

D. **Maximum Load Single lb (kg) at psi (kPa) cold:** Indicates the maximum load and tire pressure when the tire is used as a single, defined as two tires (total) on the rear axle.

## Information on T Type Tires

T145/80D16 is an example of a tire size.

**Note:** *The temporary tire size for your vehicle may be different from this example. Tire Quality Grades do not apply to this type of tire.*



T type tires have some additional information beyond those of P type tires; these differences are described below:

A. **T:** Indicates a type of tire, designated by the Tire and Rim Association, that is intended for temporary service on cars, sport utility vehicles, minivans and light trucks.

B. **145:** Indicates the nominal width of the tire in millimeters from sidewall edge to sidewall edge. In general, the larger the number, the wider the tire.

# Wheel and Tire Information

---

C. **80:** Indicates the aspect ratio which gives the tire's ratio of height to width. Numbers of 70 or lower indicate a short sidewall.

D. **D:** Indicates a diagonal type tire.

**R:** Indicates a radial type tire.

E. **16:** Indicates the wheel or rim diameter in inches. If you change your wheel size, you will have to purchase new tires to match the new wheel diameter.

## GLOSSARY OF TIRE TERMINOLOGY

\***Tire label:** A label showing the original equipment tire sizes, recommended inflation pressure and the maximum weight the vehicle can carry.

\***Tire Identification Number (TIN):** A number on the sidewall of each tire providing information about the tire brand and manufacturing plant, tire size and date of manufacture. Also referred to as DOT code.

\***Inflation pressure:** A measure of the amount of air in a tire.

\***Standard load:** A class of P-metric or Metric tires designed to carry a maximum load at set pressure. For example: For P-metric tires 35 psi (2.4 bar) and for Metric tires 36 psi (2.5 bar). Increasing the inflation pressure beyond this pressure will not increase the tire's load carrying capability.

\***Extra load:** A class of P-metric or Metric tires designed to carry a heavier maximum load at 42 psi (2.9 bar). Increasing the inflation pressure beyond this pressure will not increase the tire's load carrying capability.

\***kPa:** Kilopascal, a metric unit of air pressure.

\***PSI:** Pounds per square inch, a standard unit of air pressure.

\***Cold tire pressure:** The tire pressure when the vehicle has been stationary and out of direct sunlight for an hour or more and prior to the vehicle being driven for 1 mi (1.6 km).

\***Recommended inflation pressure:** The cold inflation pressure found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label (affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver's seating position), or Tire Label located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver door.

\* **B-pillar:** The structural member at the side of the vehicle behind the front door.

\***Bead area of the tire:** Area of the tire next to the rim.

\* **Sidewall of the tire:** Area between the bead area and the tread.



# Wheel and Tire Information

**\*Tread area of the tire:** Area of the perimeter of the tire that contacts the road when mounted on the vehicle.

**\*Rim:** The metal support (wheel) for a tire or a tire and tube assembly upon which the tire beads are seated.

## TIRE REPLACEMENT REQUIREMENTS

Your vehicle is equipped with tires designed to provide a safe ride and handling capability.



**WARNING:** Only use replacement tires and wheels that are the same size, load index, speed rating and type (such as P-metric versus LT-metric or all-season versus all-terrain) as those originally provided by Ford. The recommended tire and wheel size may be found on either the Safety Compliance Certification Label (affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver's seating position), or the Tire Label which is located on the B-Pillar or edge of the driver's door. If this information is not found on these labels, then you should contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible. Use of any tire or wheel not recommended by Ford can

affect the safety and performance of your vehicle, which could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.



**WARNING:** To reduce the risk of serious injury, when mounting replacement tires and wheels, you should not exceed the maximum pressure indicated on the sidewall of the tire to set the beads without additional precautions listed below. If the beads do not seat at the maximum pressure indicated, re-lubricate and try again.



**WARNING:** For a mounting pressure more than 20 psi (1.38 bar) greater than the maximum pressure, a Ford dealer or other tire service professional should do the mounting.



**WARNING:** Always inflate steel carcass tires with a remote air fill with the person inflating standing at a minimum of 12 ft (3.66 m) away from the wheel and tire assembly.

## Wheel and Tire Information



**WARNING:** When inflating the tire for mounting pressures up to 20 psi (1.38 bar) greater than the maximum pressure on the tire sidewall, the following precautions must be taken to protect the person mounting the tire:



**WARNING:** Use only the specified jacking points. If you use other locations, you could damage the body, steering, suspension, engine, braking system or the fuel lines.

- Make sure that you have the correct tire and wheel size.
- Lubricate the tire bead and wheel bead seat area again.
- Stand at a minimum of 12 ft (3.66 m) away from the wheel and tire assembly.
- Use both eye and ear protection.

**Important:** Remember to replace the wheel valve stems when the road tires are replaced on your vehicle.

It is recommended that the two front tires or two rear tires generally be replaced as a pair if the worn tires still have usable depth.

To avoid potential All-Wheel Drive (AWD) malfunction or (AWD) system damage, it is recommended to replace all four tires rather than mixing significantly worn tires with new tires.

The tire pressure sensors mounted in the wheels (originally installed on your vehicle) are not designed to be used in aftermarket wheels.

The use of wheels or tires not recommended may affect the operation of your tire pressure monitoring system.

If the tire pressure monitoring system indicator is flashing, your system is malfunctioning. Your replacement tire might be incompatible with your tire pressure monitoring system, or some component of the system may be damaged.

### Age



**WARNING:** Tires degrade over time depending on many factors such as weather, storage conditions, and conditions of use (load, speed, inflation pressure) the tires experience throughout their lives.

# Wheel and Tire Information

In general, tires should be replaced after six years regardless of tread wear. However, heat caused by hot climates or frequent high loading conditions can accelerate the aging process and may require tires to be replaced more frequently.

You should replace your spare tire when you replace the road tires or after six years due to aging even if it has not been used.

## U.S. DOT Tire Identification Number

Both United States and Canada Federal regulations require tire manufacturers to place standardized information on the sidewall of all tires. This information identifies and describes the fundamental characteristics of the tire and also provides a U.S. DOT Tire Identification Number for safety standard certification and in case of a recall.

This begins with the letters DOT and indicates that the tire meets all federal standards. The next two numbers or letters are the plant code designating where it was manufactured, the next two are the tire size code and the last four numbers represent the week and year the tire was built. For example, the numbers 317 mean the 31st week of 1997. After 2000,

the numbers go to four digits. For example, 2501 means the 25th week of 2001. The numbers in between are identification codes used for traceability. This information is used to contact customers if a tire defect requires a recall.

## USING SNOW CHAINS



**WARNING:** Do not exceed 30 mph (50 km/h). Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



**WARNING:** Do not use snow chains on snow-free roads.



**WARNING:** Only fit snow chains to specified tires.



**WARNING:** If your vehicle is fitted with wheel trims, remove them before fitting snow chains.



**WARNING:** Aggressive driving in any road conditions can cause you to lose control of your vehicle increasing the risk of severe personal injury or property damage. The traction control activating is an indication that at least some of the tires have exceeded their ability to grip the road; this may lead to an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death. If you experience a severe road event, **slow down**.

## Wheel and Tire Information



**WARNING:** Wheels and tires must be the same size, load index and speed rating as those originally fitted on the vehicle. Use of any other tire or wheel can affect the safety and performance of your vehicle. Additionally, the use of non-recommended tires and wheels can cause steering, suspension, axle, transfer case or power transfer unit failure. Follow the recommended tire inflation pressures found on the Safety Compliance Certification label, or the Tire Label on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver door. Failure to follow this instruction could result in loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, or personal injury or death.

The tires on your vehicle could have all-weather treads to provide traction in rain and snow. In some climates you will need to use snow tires and chains on your vehicle in emergency situations or if required by law.

**Note:** *The suspension insulation and bumpers will help prevent vehicle damage. Do not remove these components from your vehicle when using snow tires and chains.*

**Note:** *Driving too fast for road conditions creates the possibility of loss of vehicle control. Driving at very high speeds for extended periods of time may result in damage to vehicle components.*

Follow these guidelines when using snow tires and chains:

- Chains may damage aluminum wheels.
- Use ultra low profile cables, 10 mm or less in dimension as measured on the sidewall of your tire, only with 225/65R17, or 225/60R18 all season tires.
- Do not use snow chains or cables with 235/65R17.

- Not all S-class snow chains or cables meet these restrictions. Chains of this size restriction will include a tensioning device.
- Purchase chains or cables from a manufacturer that clearly labels body to tire dimension restrictions. The snow chains or cables must be mounted in pairs on the rear tires only.
- When driving with snow chains do not exceed 30 mph (50 km/h) or the maximum speed recommended by the chain manufacturer, whichever is less.
- Install cables securely, verifying that the cables do not touch any wiring or brake lines.
- Drive cautiously. If you hear the cables rub or bang against the vehicle, stop and retighten them. If this does not work, remove the cables to prevent vehicle damage.
- Remove the tire chains when they are no longer needed. Do not use tire chains on dry roads.

If you have any questions regarding snow chains or cables, please contact your authorized dealer.

# Tire Care

## CHECKING THE TIRE PRESSURES

Safe operation of your vehicle requires that your tires are properly inflated. Every day before you drive, check your tires.

At least once a month and before long trips, inspect each tire and check the tire pressure with a tire gauge. Inflate all tires to the recommended inflation pressure. See **Inflating the Tires** (page 338).

## INFLATING THE TIRES



**WARNING:** Under-inflation is the most common cause of tire failures and may result in severe tire cracking, tread separation or blowout, with unexpected loss of vehicle control and increased risk of injury. Under-inflation increases sidewall flexing and rolling resistance, resulting in heat buildup and internal damage to the tire. It also may result in unnecessary tire stress, irregular wear, loss of vehicle control and accidents. A tire can lose up to half of its air pressure and not appear to be flat!



**WARNING:** Do not use the tire pressure displayed in the information display as a tire pressure gauge. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

Use the recommended cold inflation pressure for optimum tire performance and wear. Under-inflation or over-inflation may cause uneven treadwear patterns.

Inflate your tires to the recommended inflation pressure even if it is less than the maximum inflation pressure information found on the tire. You can find the tire label with the recommended tire inflation pressure next to the tire size on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver door.

The recommended tire inflation pressure is also found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label, affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch on the B-pillar, or on the edge of the driver door.

Failure to follow the tire pressure recommendations can cause uneven treadwear patterns and adversely affect the way your vehicle handles.

# Tire Care

## INSPECTING THE TIRE FOR WEAR



When the tread is worn down to one sixteenth of an inch (2 mm), tires must be replaced to help prevent your vehicle from skidding and hydroplaning. Built-in treadwear indicators, or wear bars, which look like narrow strips of smooth rubber across the tread will appear on the tire when the tread is worn down to one sixteenth of an inch (2 mm).

When the tire tread wears down to the same height as these wear bars, the tire is worn out and must be replaced.

The tires should also be balanced periodically. An unbalanced tire and wheel assembly may result in irregular tire wear.

Periodically inspect the tire treads for uneven or excessive wear and remove objects such as stones, nails or glass that may be wedged in the tread grooves.

## INSPECTING THE TIRE FOR DAMAGE

Inspect the tire sidewalls for cracking, cuts, bruises and other signs of damage or excessive wear. If internal damage to the tire is suspected, have the tire dismantled and inspected in case it needs to be repaired or replaced. For your safety, tires that are damaged or show signs of excessive wear should not be used because they are more likely to blow out or fail.

Periodically inspect the tire treads and sidewalls for damage, such as bulges in the tread or sidewalls, cracks in the tread groove and separation in the tread or sidewall. If damage is observed or suspected, have the tire inspected by a tire professional.

### Safety Practices



**WARNING:** If your vehicle is stuck in snow, mud or sand, do not rapidly spin the tires; spinning the tires can tear the tire and cause an explosion. A tire can explode in as little as three to five seconds.



**WARNING:** Do not spin the wheels at over 34 mph (55 km/h). The tires may fail and injure a passenger or bystander.

# Tire Care

## Highway Hazards

No matter how carefully you drive, there is always the possibility that you could eventually have a flat tire on the highway. Drive slowly to the closest safe area out of traffic. This could further damage the flat tire, but your safety is more important.

If you feel a sudden vibration or ride disturbance while driving, or you suspect your tire or vehicle has been damaged, immediately reduce your speed. Drive with caution until you can safely pull off the road. Stop and inspect the tires for damage. If a tire is under-inflated or damaged, deflate it, remove the wheel and replace it with your spare tire and wheel. If you cannot detect a cause, have the vehicle towed to the nearest repair facility or tire dealer to have the vehicle inspected.

## Tire and Wheel Alignment

A bad jolt from hitting a curb or pothole can cause the front end of your vehicle to become misaligned or cause damage to your tires. If your vehicle seems to pull to one side when you are driving, the wheels could be out of alignment. Have an authorized dealer check the wheel alignment periodically.

Wheel misalignment in the front or the rear can cause uneven and rapid treadwear of your tires and should be corrected by an authorized dealer.

## INSPECTING THE WHEEL VALVE STEMS

Check the valve stems for holes, cracks, or cuts that could permit air leakage.

## TIRE ROTATION



**WARNING:** If the tire label shows different tire pressures for the front and rear tires and the vehicle has a tire pressure monitoring system, then you need to update the settings for the system sensors. Always perform the system reset procedure after tire rotation. If you do not reset the system, it may not provide a low tire pressure warning when necessary.

Rotating your tires at the recommended interval will help your tires wear more evenly, providing better tire performance and longer tire life.

**Note:** *If your tires show any uneven wear have the alignment checked by an authorized dealer before rotating tires.*

# Tire Care

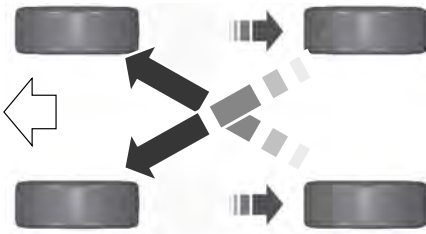
---

**Note:** *If you have a dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly, it is intended for temporary use only and should not be used in a tire rotation.*

**Note:** *After having your tires rotated, inflation pressure must be checked and adjusted to the vehicle requirements.*

## Tire Rotation Diagram

Follow the diagram indicating the correct tire locations for rotating the tires.



E142547



# Tire Pressure Monitoring System

## WHAT IS THE TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM



The tire pressure monitoring system measures the vehicle's tire pressures. A warning lamp illuminates if one or more tires are significantly underinflated or if there is a system malfunction.

## TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM OVERVIEW



**WARNING:** If the tire pressure monitor sensor becomes damaged it may not function.



**WARNING:** Under-inflation is the most common cause of tire failures and may result in severe tire cracking, tread separation or blowout, with unexpected loss of vehicle control and increased risk of injury. Under-inflation increases sidewall flexing and rolling resistance, resulting in heat buildup and internal damage to the tire. It also may result in unnecessary tire stress, irregular wear, loss of vehicle control and accidents. A tire can lose up to half of its air pressure and not appear to be flat!



**WARNING:** To determine the required pressure(s) for your vehicle, see the Safety Compliance Certification Label (on the door hinge pillar, door-latch post or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver seat) or the Tire Label on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver door.

Each tire, including the spare (if provided), should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label. (If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires).

As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated. Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale.

Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists.

# Tire Pressure Monitoring System

When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended. TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.



**WARNING:** Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. The term "IC:" before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with License exempt RSS Standards of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

## TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** The tire pressure monitoring system is not a substitute for manually checking tire pressures. You should periodically check tire pressures using a pressure gauge. Failure to correctly maintain tire pressures could increase the risk of tire failure, loss of control, vehicle rollover and personal injury.

**Note:** *The use of tire sealants can damage the tire pressure monitoring system.*

## TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM LIMITATIONS

When the outside temperature drops significantly, the tire pressure could decrease and activate the low tire pressure warning lamp.

The warning lamp could also illuminate when you use a spare wheel, or tire sealant from the inflator kit.

**Note:** *Regularly checking the vehicle tire pressures can reduce the possibility for the warning lamp to illuminate due to outside air temperature changes.*

**Note:** *After you inflate the tires to the recommended pressure it could take up to two minutes of driving over 20 mph (32 km/h) for the warning indicator to turn off.*

# Tire Pressure Monitoring System

## VIEWING THE TIRE PRESSURES



To view the current tire pressures, use the information display or touchscreen.

## TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM – TROUBLESHOOTING

### TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM – WARNING LAMPS



The low tire pressure warning lamp has combined functions, as it warns you when your tires need air, and when the system is no longer capable of functioning as intended.

Warning Lamp	Possible Cause	Action Required
Solid warning lamp	One or more tires are significantly under inflated	After inflating your tires to the manufacturer's recommended pressure as shown on the tire label, on the edge of driver door or the B-pillar, drive your vehicle for at least two minutes over 20 mph (32 km/h) before the light turns off.
Solid warning lamp or flashing warning lamp	Temporary spare wheel in use	Repair the damaged road wheel and refit it to your vehicle to restore operation of the system.
	Tire pressure monitoring system malfunction	If the tires are inflated to the recommended tire pressures and the temporary spare wheel is not in use, the system detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

# Tire Pressure Monitoring System

## TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM – INFORMATION MESSAGES

<b>Message</b>	<b>Action</b>
Tire Pressure Low	After inflating your tires to the manufacturer's recommended pressure as shown on the tire label, on the edge of the driver door or the B-pillar, drive your vehicle for at least two minutes over 20 mph (32 km/h) before the light turns off.
Tire Pressure Monitor Fault	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Tire Pressure Sensor Fault	The system has detected a fault that requires service or a spare tire is in use. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

# Changing a Road Wheel

## CHANGING A FLAT TIRE



**WARNING:** If the tire pressure monitor sensor becomes damaged it may not function.

**Note:** *The use of tire sealant may damage your tire pressure monitoring system and should only be used in roadside emergencies.*

**Note:** *The tire pressure monitoring system indicator light illuminates when the spare tire is in use. To restore the full function of the monitoring system, all road wheels equipped with tire pressure monitoring sensors must be mounted on this vehicle.*

If you get a flat tire when driving, do not apply the brake heavily. Instead, gradually decrease your speed. Hold the steering wheel firmly and slowly move to a safe place on the side of the road.

Have a flat serviced by an authorized dealer to prevent damage to the system sensors. See **Tire Pressure Monitoring System Precautions** (page 343). Replace the spare tire with a road tire as soon as possible. During repairing or replacing the flat tire, have the authorized dealer inspect the system sensor for damage.



**WARNING:** Never place anything between the vehicle jack and the ground.



**WARNING:** Never place anything between the vehicle jack and your vehicle.



**WARNING:** To help prevent your vehicle from moving when changing a wheel, shift the transmission into park (P), set the parking brake and use an appropriate block or wheel chock to secure the wheel diagonally opposite to the wheel being changed. For example, when changing the front left wheel, place an appropriate block or wheel chock on the right rear wheel.



**WARNING:** It is recommended that the wheels of the vehicle be chocked, and that no person should remain in a vehicle that is being jacked.



**WARNING:** Always use the jack provided as original equipment with your vehicle. If using a jack other than the one provided, make sure the jack capacity is adequate for the vehicle weight, including any vehicle cargo or modifications. If you are unsure if the jack capacity is adequate, contact the authorized dealer.



**WARNING:** The jack supplied with this vehicle is only intended for changing wheels. Do not use the vehicle jack other than when you are changing a wheel in an emergency.



**WARNING:** Check that the vehicle jack is not damaged or deformed and the thread is lubricated and clean.




**WARNING:** The jack should be used on level firm ground wherever possible.





**WARNING:** Use only the specified jacking points. If you use other locations, you could damage the body, steering, suspension, engine, braking system or the fuel lines.

# Changing a Road Wheel


 **WARNING:** Switch the ignition off and apply the park brake fully before lifting vehicle.

 **WARNING:** Park your vehicle so that you do not obstruct the flow of traffic or place yourself in any danger and set up a warning triangle.


 **WARNING:** The jack supplied with this vehicle is only intended for changing a flat tire in an emergency. Do not attempt to do any other work on your vehicle when it is supported by the jack, as your vehicle could slip off the jack. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

 **WARNING:** No person should place any portion of their body under a vehicle that is supported by a jack.


 **WARNING:** Make sure that the wheels are pointing straight ahead.


 **WARNING:** If your vehicle has a manual transmission, shift into first or reverse gear. If your vehicle has an automatic transmission, shift into park (P).


 **WARNING:** Make sure that the vehicle jack is vertical to the jacking point and the base is flat on the ground.


 **WARNING:** Replace the wheels and tires with the exact original brand, size and construction that came originally on your vehicle. Use of any other wheel or tire combinations, even with identical size ratings, may result in

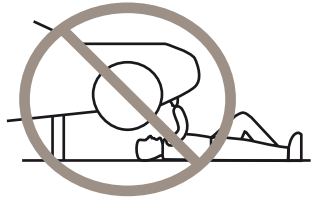
insufficient running clearances, tire rubbing and eventual puncture. Failure to follow tire replacement recommendations can lead to tire failure, loss of vehicle control, serious injury or death.

 **WARNING:** Do not fit run flat tires on vehicles that were not originally fitted with them. See an authorized dealer for more details about compatibility.


 **WARNING:** Make sure there is no grease or oil on the threads or the surface between the wheel lugs and nuts. This can cause the lug nuts to loosen while driving.

 **WARNING:** Have the lug nuts checked for tightness and the tire pressure checked as soon as possible.

 **WARNING:** Do not install alloy wheels using lug nuts designed for use with steel wheels.



## Dissimilar Spare Wheel and Tire Assembly Information

 **WARNING:** Failure to follow these guidelines could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, injury or death.

# Changing a Road Wheel

---

If you have a dissimilar spare wheel and tire, then it is intended for temporary use only. This means that if you need to use it, you should replace it as soon as possible with a road wheel and tire assembly that is the same size and type as the road tires and wheels that we provided with the vehicle. If the dissimilar spare tire or wheel is damaged, replace it instead of repairing it.

A dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly is defined as a spare wheel and tire assembly that is different in brand, size or appearance from the road tires and wheels and can be one of three types:

1. **T-type mini-spare:** This spare tire begins with the letter T for tire size and may have Temporary Use Only molded in the sidewall.

2. **Full-size dissimilar spare with label on wheel:** This spare tire has a label on the wheel that states: THIS WHEEL AND TIRE ASSEMBLY FOR TEMPORARY USE ONLY.

When driving with one of the dissimilar spare tires listed above, do not:

- Exceed 50 mph (80 km/h).
- Load the vehicle beyond maximum vehicle load rating listed on the Safety Compliance Label.
- Tow a trailer.
- Use snow chains on the end of the vehicle with the dissimilar spare tire.
- Use more than one dissimilar spare tire at a time.
- Use commercial car washing equipment.
- Try to repair the dissimilar spare tire.

Use of one of the dissimilar spare tires listed above at any one wheel location can lead to impairment of the following:

- Handling, stability and braking performance.
- Comfort and noise.
- Ground clearance and parking at curbs.
- Winter weather driving capability.
- Wet weather driving capability.
- All-wheel driving capability.

### 3. Full-size dissimilar spare without label on wheel

When driving with the full-size dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly, do not:

- Exceed 70 mph (113 km/h).
- Use more than one dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly at a time.
- Use commercial car washing equipment.
- Use snow chains on the end of the vehicle with the dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly.

The usage of a full-size dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly can lead to impairment of the following:

- Handling, stability and braking performance.
- Comfort and noise.
- Ground clearance and parking at curbs.
- Winter weather driving capability.
- Wet weather driving capability.
- All-wheel driving capability

When driving with the full-size dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly additional caution should be given to:

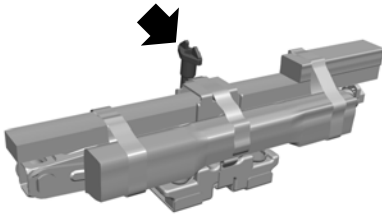
- Towing a trailer.
- Driving vehicles equipped with a camper body.
- Driving vehicles with a load on the cargo rack.

# Changing a Road Wheel

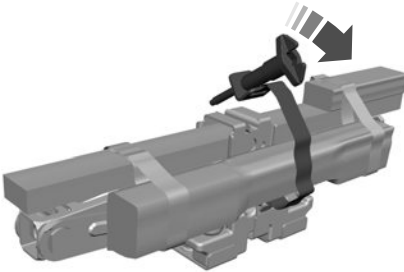
Drive cautiously when using a full-size dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly and seek service as soon as possible.

## Removing the Vehicle Jack and Tool Bag

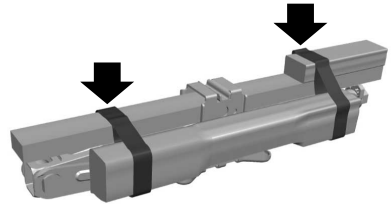
The vehicle jack and tool bag are on the rear passenger side of your vehicle, behind the passenger seat.



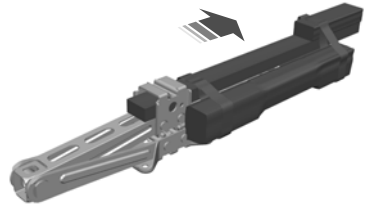
1. Turn the wing bolt on the jack bracket counterclockwise to release the jack and tool bag from the jack bracket.



2. Remove the jack and tool bag from the jack bracket.



3. Release the jack tool bag straps.



4. Slide the jack tool bag through the jack load rest to remove for access to the jack tools.
5. Remove the tools from the tool bag.

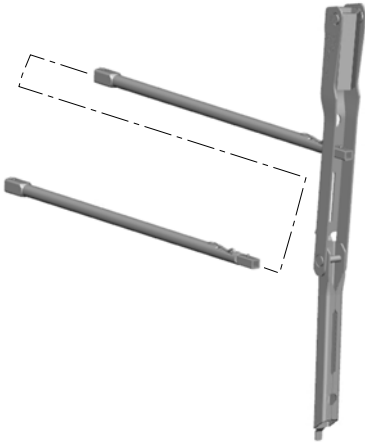
**Note:** *Your jack does not require maintenance or additional lubrication over the service life of your vehicle.*

## Removing the Spare Tire

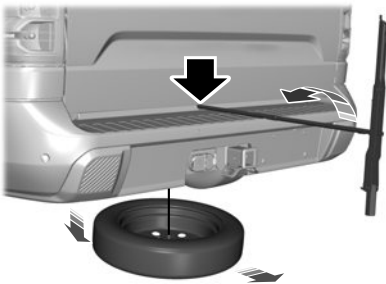
The spare tire is located under the vehicle, just forward of the rear bumper.



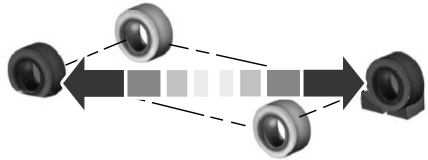
# Changing a Road Wheel



1. Assemble the jack handle as shown in the illustration.



2. Fully insert the jack handle through the bumper hole and into the guide tube through the access hole in the rear bumper. Turn the handle counterclockwise until the tire is lowered to the ground and the cable is slightly slack to allow the tire to be slid rearward from under the vehicle.
3. Remove the retainer from the center of the wheel.



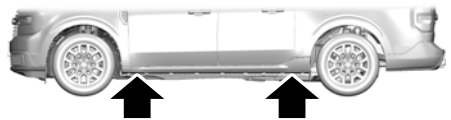
4. Block both the front and rear of the wheel diagonally opposite the flat tire. For example, if the left front tire is flat, block the right rear wheel.

## Jacking the Vehicle

1. Loosen each wheel lug nut one-half turn counterclockwise, but do not remove them until the wheel is raised off the ground.

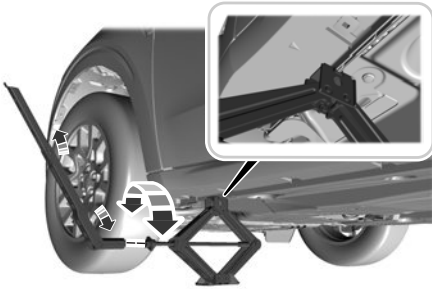
**Note:** Jack at the specified locations to avoid damage to the vehicle.

2. The vehicle jacking points shown here are also depicted on the warning label on the jack. Small arrow-shaped marks on the vehicle sills show the location of the jacking points.



3. Turn the wrench clockwise to raise the vehicle until the flat tire is completely off the ground.

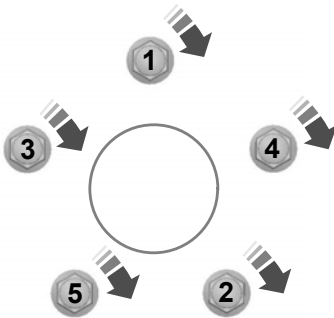
# Changing a Road Wheel



4. Remove the lug nuts with the lug wrench.

**Note:** For vehicles with full wheel covers with exposed wheel nuts, remove the wheel nuts prior to removing the wheel cover or damage to the wheel cover may occur.

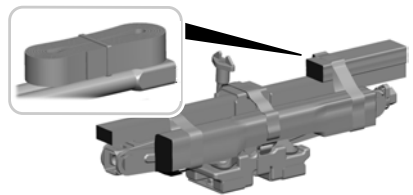
5. Replace the flat tire with the spare tire, making sure the valve stem is facing outward. Reinstall the lug nuts until the wheel is snug against the hub. Do not fully tighten the lug nuts until the wheel has been lowered.
6. Lower the wheel by turning the jack handle counterclockwise.
7. Remove the jack and fully tighten the lug nuts in the order shown.



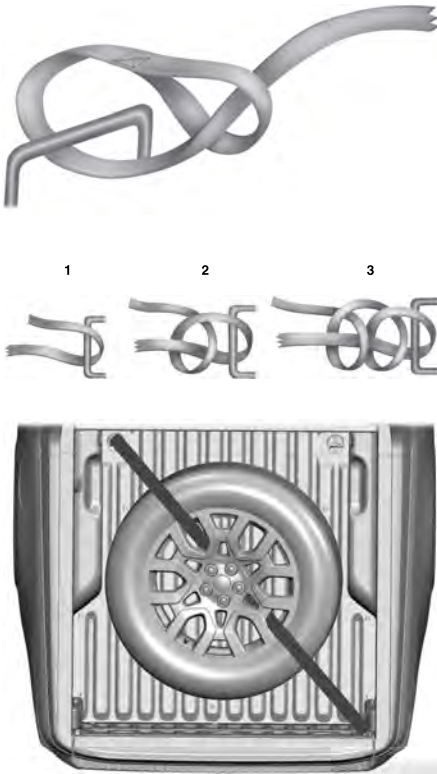
8. Stow the flat tire. See the Stowing the Flat or Spare Tire.
9. Stow the vehicle jack and lug wrench. Make sure the jack is securely fastened before you drive. See Stowing the Vehicle Jack and Tool Bag.
10. Unblock the wheels.

## Stowing the Road Wheel

1. Place the wheel in the bed of the vehicle facing up.
2. Position flat tire in the center of the bed of vehicle.
3. Locate the retainer strap mounted on jack.
4. Locate the cargo tie-down hooks in the corner of the bed.
5. Push the loop of the retainer strap through the tie-down. Thread the non-loop end through the loop.
6. Weave the retainer strap through the wheel openings.
7. Locate the tie-down at the opposite corner of the bed. Thread the retainer strap through the tie-down and pull tight.
8. Secure by tying a 2-half hitch knot.



# Changing a Road Wheel



2. Slide the wheel partially under the vehicle and install the retainer through the wheel center. Pull on the cable to align the components at the end of the cable.
3. Turn the jack handle clockwise until the tire is raised to its stowed position underneath the vehicle. The effort to turn the jack handle increases significantly and the spare tire carrier ratchets or slips when the tire is raised to the maximum tightness. Tighten to the point where the ratchet or slip occurs, a minimum of three times as indicated by an audible click each time. The spare tire carrier does not allow you to overtighten. If the spare tire carrier ratchets or slips with little effort, contact your authorized dealer.
4. Check that the tire lies flat against the frame and is properly tightened. Try to push or pull, then turn the tire to be sure it does not move. Loosen and retighten, if necessary. Failure to properly stow the spare tire could result in failure of the winch cable and loss of the tire.
5. Repeat this tightness check procedure when servicing the spare tire pressure, every six months, as per your scheduled maintenance information, or at any time that the spare tire is disturbed through service of other components.

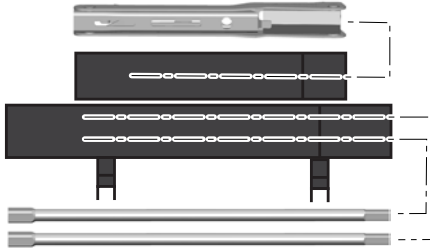
## Stowing the Spare Tire

**Note:** Failure to follow the spare tire stowage instructions could result in failure of the cable or loss of the spare tire.

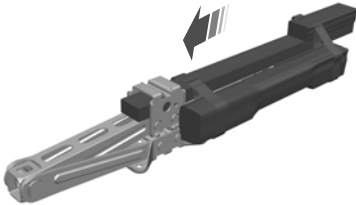
1. Lay the tire on the ground with the valve stem facing down.

# Changing a Road Wheel

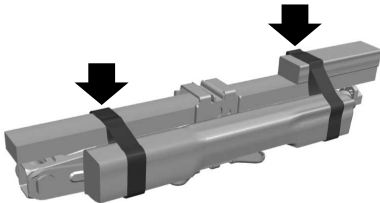
## Stowing the Vehicle Jack and Tool Bag



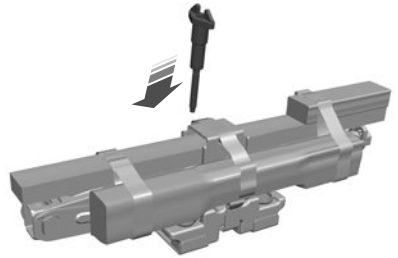
1. Place the tools inside of the tool bag.



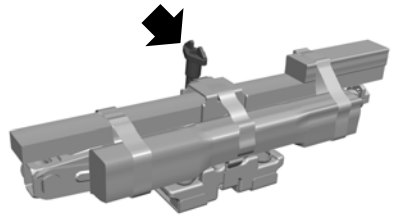
2. Install the tool bag through the vehicle jack load rest.



3. Secure the jack tool bag straps around the vehicle jack.



4. Place the jack and tool bag back onto the jack bracket.



5. Turn the wing bolt on the jack bracket clockwise until the jack and tools are secured to the jack bracket.

# Changing a Road Wheel

## WHEEL NUTS



**WARNING:** When you install a wheel, always remove any corrosion, dirt or foreign materials present on the mounting surfaces of the wheel or the surface of the wheel hub, brake drum or brake disc that contacts the wheel. Make sure to secure any fasteners that attach the rotor to the hub so they do not interfere with the mounting surfaces of the wheel. Installing wheels without correct metal-to-metal contact at the wheel mounting surfaces can cause the wheel nuts to loosen and the wheel to come off while your vehicle is in motion, resulting in loss of vehicle control, personal injury or death.

Bolt size	lb.ft (Nm)
M14 x 1.5	148 lb.ft (200 Nm)

\*Torque specifications are for nut and bolt threads free of dirt and rust. Use only Ford recommended replacement fasteners.

Retighten the lug nuts to the specified torque within 100 mi (160 km) after any wheel disturbance (such as tire rotation, changing a flat tire, wheel removal).



A Wheel pilot bore.

Inspect the wheel pilot bore and mounting surface prior to installation. Remove any visible corrosion or loose particles.

# Capacities and Specifications

---

## ENGINE SPECIFICATIONS - 2.0L ECOBOOST™

<b>Engine</b>	<b>Specification</b>
Compression ratio.	10:1
Displacement.	122.0 in <sup>3</sup> (1,999 cm <sup>3</sup> )
Firing order.	1-3-4-2
Ignition system.	Coil on plug
Spark plug gap.	0.028–0.031 in (0.7–0.8 mm)

# Capacities and Specifications

---

## ENGINE SPECIFICATIONS - 2.5L, HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (HEV)

Engine	Specification
Compression ratio.	13.0:1
Displacement.	152 in <sup>3</sup> (2,490 cm <sup>3</sup> )
Firing order.	1-3-4-2
Ignition system.	Coil on plug
Spark plug gap.	0.049–0.053 in (1.25–1.35 mm)

# Capacities and Specifications

## MOTORCRAFT PARTS - 2.0L ECOBOOST™

Component	Motorcraft Part Number
Air filter element.	FA-1939
Battery.	BHEF-48H6
Cabin air filter.	FP-89
Engine oil filter. <sup>1</sup>	FL-910-S
Spark plug.	SP-594
Windshield wiper blade.	WW-2249 (driver side) WW-2054 (passenger side)

<sup>1</sup> If a Motorcraft oil filter is not available, use an oil filter that meets industry performance specification SAE/USCAR-36.

We recommend Motorcraft parts that are available at your authorized dealer or at [www.fordparts.com](http://www.fordparts.com). We engineer these parts for your vehicle to meet or exceed our specifications. Use of other parts could impact vehicle performance, emissions and durability. Your warranty could be void for any damage related to use of other parts.

## MOTORCRAFT PARTS - 2.5L, HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (HEV)

Component	Motorcraft Part Number
Air filter element.	FA-1948
Oil filter. <sup>1</sup>	FL-910-S
Battery.	BXT-99RT4-A
Spark plug.	SP-530
Cabin air filter.	FP-89
Windshield wiper blade.	WW-2249 (driver side)



## Capacities and Specifications

---

Component	Motorcraft Part Number
	WW-2054 (passenger side)

<sup>1</sup>If a Motorcraft oil filter is not available, use an oil filter that meets industry performance specification SAE/USCAR-36.

We recommend Motorcraft parts that are available at your authorized dealer or at [www.fordparts.com](http://www.fordparts.com). We engineer these parts for your vehicle to meet or exceed our specifications. Use of other parts could impact vehicle performance, emissions and durability. Your warranty could be void for any damage related to use of other parts.

# Capacities and Specifications

## ENGINE OIL CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION - 2.0L ECOBOOST™

Use oil that meets the defined specification and viscosity grade.

If you do not use oil that meets the defined specification and viscosity grade, it could result in:

- Component damage that your vehicle warranty does not cover.
- Longer engine cranking periods.
- Increased emission levels.
- Reduced vehicle performance.
- Reduced fuel economy.



An oil that displays this symbol conforms to current engine, emission system and fuel economy performance standards of ILSAC.

We recommend Motorcraft® motor oil for your vehicle. If Motorcraft® oil is not available, use motor oils of the recommended viscosity grade that display the API Certification Mark for gasoline engines.

Do not use supplemental engine oil additives because they are unnecessary and could lead to engine damage that your vehicle warranty does not cover.

### Capacities

Variant	Including the Oil Filter
All.	5.5 qt (5.2 L)

### Materials

Name	Specification
Motorcraft® SAE 5W-30 Synthetic Blend Motor Oil(U.S.) Motorcraft® SAE 5W-30 Super Premium Motor Oil / Huile moteur de très haute qualité SAE 5W-30 Motorcraft®(Canada) XO-5W30-Q1SP(U.S.) CXO-5W30-LSP6(Canada)	WSS-M2C961-A1

# Capacities and Specifications

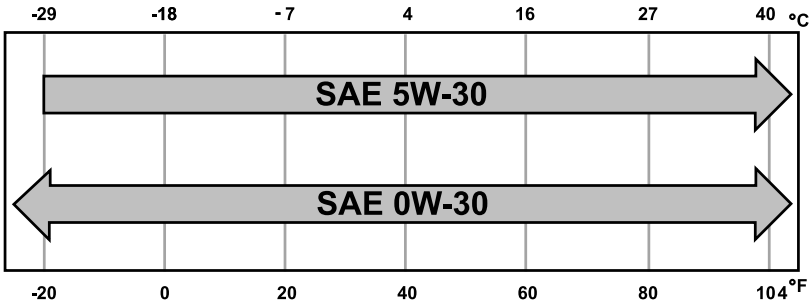
## Alternative Engine Oil for Extremely Cold Climates

To improve engine cold start performance,

we recommend that you use the following alternative engine oil in extremely cold climates, where the ambient temperature reaches  $-22.0^{\circ}\text{F}$  ( $-30^{\circ}\text{C}$ ) or below.

### Materials

Name	Specification
Engine Oil - SAE 0W-30 - Synthetic Blend	WSS-M2C963-A1



## ENGINE OIL CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION - 2.5L, HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (HEV)

Use oil that meets the defined specification and viscosity grade.

If you do not use oil that meets the defined specification and viscosity grade, it could result in:

- Component damage that your vehicle warranty does not cover.
- Longer engine cranking periods.
- Increased emission levels.
- Reduced vehicle performance.
- Reduced fuel economy.



An oil that displays this symbol conforms to current engine, emission system and fuel economy performance standards of ILSAC.

# Capacities and Specifications

We recommend Motorcraft® motor oil for your vehicle. If Motorcraft® oil is not available, use motor oils of the recommended viscosity grade that display the API Certification Mark for gasoline

engines.

Do not use supplemental engine oil additives because they are unnecessary and could lead to engine damage that your vehicle warranty does not cover.

## Capacities

Variant	Including the Oil Filter
All.	5.7 qt (5.4 L)

## Materials

Name	Specification
Motorcraft® SAE 0W-20 Full Synthetic Motor Oil(U.S.) (Canada) XO-0W20-QFS(U.S.)	WSS-M2C962-A1

## COOLING SYSTEM CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION - 2.0L ECOBOOST™

Use coolant that meets the defined specification.

If you do not use coolant that meets the defined specification, it could result in:

- Component damage that your vehicle warranty does not cover.
- Reduced vehicle performance.

## Capacities

Variant	Quantity
With trailer tow package.	9.2 qt (8.72 L)
Without trailer tow package	8.7 qt (8.2 L)

# Capacities and Specifications

## Materials

Name	Specification
Motorcraft® Yellow Prediluted Antifreeze/ Coolant(U.S.) Motorcraft® Yellow Prediluted Antifreeze/Coolant / Antigel/liquide de refroidissement prédilué jaune Motorcraft®(Canada) VC-13DL-G(U.S.) CVC-13DL-G(Canada)	WSS-M97B57-A2

## COOLING SYSTEM CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION - 2.5L, HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (HEV)

Use coolant that meets the defined specification.

### Capacities

Variant	Quantity
Low temperature cooling circuit.	5.3 qt (5.04 L)
High temperature cooling circuit.	12.5 qt (11.87 L)

If you do not use coolant that meets the defined specification, it could result in:

- Component damage that your vehicle warranty does not cover.
- Reduced vehicle performance.

## Materials

Name	Specification
Motorcraft® Yellow Prediluted Antifreeze/ Coolant(U.S.) Motorcraft® Yellow Prediluted Antifreeze/Coolant / Antigel/liquide de refroidissement prédilué jaune Motorcraft®(Canada) VC-13DL-G(U.S.) CVC-13DL-G(Canada)	WSS-M97B57-A2

## Capacities and Specifications

---

### FUEL TANK CAPACITY - EXCLUDING: HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (HEV)

#### Capacities

Variant	Quantity
All.	16.5 gal (62.5 L)

# Capacities and Specifications

---

## FUEL TANK CAPACITY - HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (HEV)

### Capacities

Variant	Quantity
All.	13.8 gal (52.2 L)

# Capacities and Specifications

## AIR CONDITIONING SYSTEM CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION - 2.0L ECOBOOST™



**WARNING:** The air conditioning refrigerant system contains refrigerant under high pressure. Only qualified personnel should service the air conditioning refrigerant system. Opening

the air conditioning refrigerant system can cause personal injury.

Use refrigerant and oil that meets the defined specifications.

If you do not use refrigerant and oil that meets the defined specifications, it could result in:

- Component damage that your vehicle warranty does not cover.
- Reduced vehicle performance.

### Capacities

Variant	Refrigerant	Refrigerant Oil
All.	19.4 oz (0.55 kg)	3.4 fl oz (100 ml)

### Materials

Name	Specification
R-1234yf Refrigerant(U.S.) R-1234yf Refrigerant / Frigorigène R-1234yf(Canada) YN-33-A(U.S.) HS7Z-19B519-BA(Canada)	WSS-M17B21-A
Motorcraft® R-1234yf Refrigerant PAG Oil(U.S.) Motorcraft® R-1234yf Refrigerant PAG Oil / Huile PAG pour frigorigène R-1234yf Motorcraft®(Canada) YN-35(U.S. & Canada)	WSS-M2C300-A2



# Capacities and Specifications

## AIR CONDITIONING SYSTEM CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION - 2.5L HYBRID ELECTRIC VEHICLE (HEV)

the air conditioning refrigerant system can cause personal injury.

Use refrigerant and oil that meets the defined specifications.

If you do not use refrigerant and oil that meets the defined specifications, it could result in:

- Component damage that your vehicle warranty does not cover.
- Reduced vehicle performance.



**WARNING:** The air conditioning refrigerant system contains refrigerant under high pressure. Only qualified personnel should service the air conditioning refrigerant system. Opening

### Capacities

Variant	Refrigerant	Refrigerant Oil
All.	17.6 oz (0.5 kg)	5.1 fl oz (150 ml)

### Materials

Name	Specification
R-1234yf Refrigerant(U.S.) R-1234yf Refrigerant / Frigorigène R-1234yf(Canada) YN-33-A(U.S.) HS7Z-19B519-BA(Canada)	WSS-M17B21-A
Motorcraft® R-1234yf Refrigerant POE Oil(U.S.) Motorcraft® R-1234yf Refrigerant POE Oil / Huile POE pour frigorigène R-1234yf Motorcraft®(Canada) YN-34(U.S. & Canada)	WSS-M2C31-B2

## WASHER FLUID SPECIFICATION

### Capacities

Variant	Quantity
All.	Fill as required.

# Capacities and Specifications

## Materials

Name	Specification
Motorcraft® Premium Windshield Wash Concentrate with Bitterant(U.S.) Motorcraft® Premium Quality Windshield Washer Fluid / Liquide lave-glace de haute qualité Motorcraft®(Canada) ZC-32-B2(U.S.) CXC-37-F/M(Canada)	WSS-M14P19-A

## BRAKE FLUID SPECIFICATION

Use fluid that meets the defined specification and viscosity grade.

If you do not use fluid that meets the defined specification and viscosity grade, it could result in:

- Component damage that your vehicle warranty does not cover.
- Reduced brake performance.

**Note:** We recommend you use Dot 4 Low Viscosity (LV) High Performance Brake Fluid meeting WSS-M6C65-A2 specifications or ISO 4925 Class 6 standards. If you use any fluid other than the recommended fluid, it could cause reduced brake performance and not meet our performance standards. Keep brake fluid clean and dry. Contamination with dirt, water, petroleum products or other materials could result in brake system damage and possible failure.

## Capacities

Variant	Quantity
All.	Fill as required.

## Materials

Name	Specification
Motorcraft® DOT 4 LV High Performance Motor Vehicle Brake Fluid(U.S.) Motorcraft® DOT 4 LV High Performance Motor Vehicle Brake Fluid / Liquide de frein automobile haute performance DOT 4 LV Motorcraft®(Canada) PM-20(U.S. & Canada)	WSS-M6C65-A2

# Vehicle Identification

## VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION NUMBER

### LOCATING THE VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION NUMBER

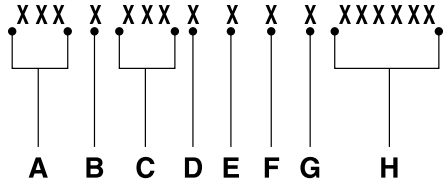
The vehicle identification number is on the left-hand side of the instrument panel.



**Note:** In the illustration, XXXX is representative of your vehicle identification number.

### VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION NUMBER OVERVIEW

The vehicle identification number contains the following information:



- A World manufacturer identifier.
- B Brake system, gross vehicle weight rating, restraint devices and their locations.
- C Make, vehicle line, series, body type.
- D Engine or motor type.
- E Check digit.
- F Model year.
- G Assembly plant.
- H Production sequence number.

# Connected Vehicle

## WHAT IS A CONNECTED VEHICLE

A connected vehicle has technology that allows your vehicle to connect to a mobile network and for you to access a range of features. When used in conjunction with the FordPass app, it could allow you to monitor and control your vehicle further, for example checking the tire pressures, and the vehicle location. For additional information, refer to the local Ford website.

## CONNECTED VEHICLE REQUIREMENTS

Connected service and related feature functionality requires a compatible vehicle network.

Some remote features require additional service activation. Log in to your Ford account for details. Some restrictions, third party terms and message or data rates may apply.

## CONNECTED VEHICLE LIMITATIONS

Evolving technology, cellular networks, or regulations could affect functionality and availability, or continued provision of some features. These changes could even stop some features from functioning.

## CONNECTING THE VEHICLE TO A MOBILE NETWORK

### WHAT IS THE MODEM



The modem allows access to a range of features built into your vehicle.

## ENABLING AND DISABLING THE MODEM - VEHICLES WITH: SYNC 3

1. Press **Settings**.
2. Press **FordPass Connect**.
3. Press **Connectivity Settings**.
4. Switch connectivity features on or off.

## CONNECTING FORDPASS TO THE MODEM

1. Make sure that the modem is enabled using the vehicle settings menu.
2. Open the FordPass app on your device and log in.
3. Add your vehicle or select your vehicle if already added.
4. Select the option to activate your vehicle.
5. Make sure that the name on the screen matches the name shown in your FordPass account.
6. Confirm that FordPass account is connected to the modem.

## CONNECTING THE VEHICLE TO A WI-FI NETWORK

1. Press **Settings**.
2. Press **Wi-Fi**.
3. Switch **Wi-Fi** on.
4. Press **View Available Networks**.
5. Select an available Wi-Fi network.

**Note:** Enter the network password to connect to a secure network.

# Connected Vehicle

---

## CONNECTED VEHICLE – TROUBLESHOOTING - VEHICLES WITH: MODEM

<b>Symptom</b>	<b>Possible Cause and Resolution</b>
I cannot confirm the connection of my FordPass account to the modem.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>- Modem is not enabled.<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Switch connectivity features on.</li></ul></li><li>- Weak network signal.<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Move your vehicle closer to a place where the network signal is not obstructed.</li></ul></li></ul>

# Connected Vehicle

## CONNECTED VEHICLE – TROUBLESHOOTING - VEHICLES WITH: SYNC 3

Symptom	Possible Cause and Resolution
I cannot connect to a Wi-Fi network.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>– Password error.<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Enter the correct network password.</li></ul></li><li>– Weak network signal.<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Move your vehicle closer to the Wi-Fi hotspot or to a place where the network signal is not obstructed.</li></ul></li><li>– Multiple access points in range with the same SSID.<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Use a unique name for your SSID. Do not use the default name unless it contains a unique identifier, for example as part of the MAC address.</li></ul></li></ul>
The Wi-Fi connection disconnects after successful connection.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>– Weak network signal.<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Move your vehicle closer to the Wi-Fi hotspot or to a place where the network signal is not obstructed.</li></ul></li></ul>
I am close to a Wi-Fi hotspot but the network signal strength is weak.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>– Obstructed network signal.<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• If your vehicle has a heated windshield, position your vehicle so that the windshield is not facing the Wi-Fi hotspot.</li><li>• If your vehicle has metallic tinting on the windows but not on the windshield, position your vehicle so that the windshield is facing the Wi-Fi hotspot or open the windows that are facing the hotspot.</li><li>• If your vehicle has metallic tinting on the windows and the windshield, open the windows that are facing the hotspot.</li><li>• If your vehicle is in a garage and you have the garage door closed, open the garage door.</li></ul></li></ul>
I cannot see a network in the list of available networks that I expect to see.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>– Hidden network.<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Make the network visible and try again.</li></ul></li></ul>

# Connected Vehicle

<b>Symptom</b>	<b>Possible Cause and Resolution</b>
I cannot see the Wi-Fi hotspot name when I search for Wi-Fi networks on my cell phone or other device.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>- System limitation.<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Make sure Wi-Fi hotspot visibility is on.</li><li>• The system does not provide a Wi-Fi hotspot at this time.</li></ul></li></ul>
Software downloads take too long.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>- Weak network signal.<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Move your vehicle closer to the Wi-Fi hotspot or to a place where the network signal is not obstructed.</li></ul></li><li>- Wi-Fi hotspot in high demand or has a slow Internet connection.<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Use a more reliable Wi-Fi hotspot.</li></ul></li></ul>
The system seems to connect to a Wi-Fi network and the signal strength is excellent but the software does not update.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>- No software update available.</li><li>- Wi-Fi network requires a subscription or acceptance of terms and conditions.<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Test the connection using another device. If the network requires a subscription or acceptance of terms and conditions, contact the network service provider.</li></ul></li></ul>

# Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot

## CREATING A VEHICLE WI-FI HOTSPOT - VEHICLES WITH: SYNC 3

You can create a Wi-Fi hotspot in your vehicle and allow devices to connect to it for access to the Internet.



Press the button to enter the settings menu.

1. Select **FordPass Connect**.
2. Select **Vehicle Hotspot**.
3. Select **Settings**.
4. Make sure that you have Wi-Fi visibility switched on.

**Note:** The Wi-Fi Visibility default setting is on.

### Finding the Wi-Fi Hotspot Name and Password



Press the button to enter the settings menu.

1. Select **FordPass Connect**.
  2. Select **Vehicle Hotspot**.
  3. Select **Settings**.
- Note:** The SSID is the hotspot name.
4. Scroll to **Hide password**.
  5. Uncheck the box.

### Connecting a Device to the Wi-Fi Hotspot

1. On your device, switch on Wi-Fi and select the hotspot from the list of available Wi-Fi networks.
2. When prompted, enter the password.

### Purchasing a Data Plan

1. Connect a device to the hotspot.  
**Note:** The vehicle network carrier's portal opens on your device.
2. If the portal does not open on your device, open a website and it redirects to the vehicle network carrier's portal.

**Note:** Secure websites do not redirect.

**Note:** If you have an active plan, the system does not redirect to the vehicle network carrier's portal when you connect a device. Visit the vehicle network carrier's website to purchase more data.

**Note:** If data usage information is available in the vehicle hotspot menu, it is approximate.

**Note:** If you carry out a master reset, the system does not remove your vehicle from your vehicle network carrier's account. To remove your vehicle from the account, contact your vehicle network carrier.

**Note:** The vehicle network carrier provides Vehicle Hotspot services, subject to your vehicle network carrier agreement, coverage and availability.

## CHANGING THE VEHICLE WI-FI HOTSPOT NAME OR PASSWORD



Press the button to enter the settings menu.

1. Select **FordPass Connect**.
2. Select **Vehicle Hotspot**.
3. Select **Settings**.
4. Select **SSID: \_\_\_**.
5. Enter your required SSID.
6. Select **Done**.
7. Select **Password: \_\_\_**.



## Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot

---

8. Enter your required password.
9. Select **Done**.

# Audio System - Vehicles Without: SYNC 3

## GENERAL INFORMATION



**WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any

hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

## Radio Frequencies and Reception Factors

**Note:** *Listening to loud audio for long periods of time could damage your hearing.*

Radio Reception Factors	
<b>Distance and strength</b>	The further you travel from an AM or FM station, the weaker the signal and the weaker the reception.
<b>Terrain</b>	Hills, mountains, tall buildings, bridges, tunnels, freeway overpasses, parking garages, dense tree foliage and thunderstorms can interfere with the reception.
<b>Station overload</b>	When you pass a ground-based broadcast repeating tower, a stronger signal may overtake a weaker one and result in the audio system muting.

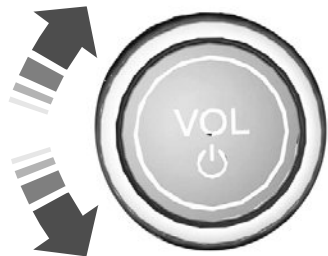
## AUDIO UNIT

### Switching the Audio Unit On and Off



**Note:** You can only switch the system off when the ignition is off.

## Adjusting the Volume



# Audio System - Vehicles Without: SYNC 3

## Turning off the Audio



Press the button to turn off the audio.

Press the button again to turn on the audio.

## Changing Radio Stations

### Manual Tuning



E290691

**Note:** You can change radio stations using the seek buttons.

**Note:** You can recall radio stations using the preset buttons on the touchscreen.

### Seek Up and Next Track Button



Select to skip to the next track.

Press and hold the button to fast forward through the track.

### Seek Down and Previous Track Button



Select to return to the beginning of a track.

Repeatedly press the button to return to previous tracks.

Press and hold the button to fast rewind.

## Pausing or Playing Media



Select to play a track. Press the button again to pause the track.

In radio mode, press the button to mute the radio. Press the button again to unmute.

## Switching the Screen On and Off



Press the button to switch the screen on or off.

## Sound Settings



Press the button to adjust the sound settings. You can optimize the sound for different seating

positions.

You can also activate and set the sensitivity of the speed compensated volume.

## Display Settings



Select the settings option on the feature bar.

1. Select **Display**.
2. Adjust the settings.

## General Settings



Select the settings option on the feature bar.

1. Select **General**.
- Adjust the settings.

## AM/FM RADIO

### Using the Radio



Select the audio option on the feature bar.

# Audio System - Vehicles Without: SYNC 3

## Selecting a Radio Station From a List

1. Select **Sources**.
2. Select a radio source.
3. Select **Browse**.
4. Select a radio station from the list.

## Manually Changing Radio Stations



E290691

Rotate the control to change the frequency.

## Automatically Changing Radio Stations



Press to seek the next station up the frequency band.

Press and hold to quickly seek up the frequency band.



Press to seek the next station down the frequency band.

Press and hold to quickly seek down the frequency band.

## Storing a Radio Station

Press and hold one of the preset buttons on the touchscreen.

**Note:** The radio could briefly mutes to indicate the station has been stored.

## Radio Settings



Select the settings option on the feature bar.

1. Select **Radio**.
2. Adjust the settings.

## CONNECTING A BLUETOOTH® DEVICE

Go to the settings menu on your device and switch Bluetooth on.



Select the settings options on the feature bar.

1. Select **Bluetooth**.
2. Switch Bluetooth on.
3. Select **Add a Bluetooth Device**.

**Note:** A prompt alerts you to search for your vehicle on your device.

4. Select your vehicle on your device.

**Note:** A number appears on your device and on the touchscreen.

5. Confirm that the number on your device matches the number on the touchscreen.

**Note:** The touchscreen indicates that you have successfully paired your device.

## Bluetooth Settings



Select the settings option on the feature bar.

1. Select **Bluetooth**.
2. Adjust the settings.

## Using Your Cell Phone

### Recent Call List

Display and select an entry from a list of previous calls.

# Audio System - Vehicles Without: SYNC 3

## Contacts

Alphabetically sort your contacts.

## Phone Settings

Change ring tones, alerts or pair another phone.

## Do Not Disturb

Reject incoming calls and switch ring tones and alerts off.

## Phone Keypad.

Directly dial a number.

## Mute

Mute your cell phone microphone.

## Text Messaging

### Setting Text Message Notification

#### iOS

1. Go to the settings menu on your cell phone.
2. Select Bluetooth.
3. Select the information icon to the right of your vehicle.
4. Switch text message notification on.

#### Android

1. Go to the settings menu on your cell phone.
2. Select Bluetooth.
3. Select the profiles option.
4. Select the phone profile .
5. Switch text message notification on.

## Using Text Messaging

Menu Item	Description
View	View the text message.
Call	Call the sender.
Reply	Reply to the text message with a standard text message.

## STREAMING BLUETOOTH AUDIO

Check the compatibility of your device on the local Ford website.

Pair your device. See **Connecting a Bluetooth® Device** (page 377).



Select the audio option on the feature bar.

Select **Sources**.



Select the bluetooth option.



Press the button to play the track. Press the button again to pause the track.



Press the button to skip to the next track.

Press and hold the button to fast forward through the track.

## Audio System - Vehicles Without: SYNC 3



Press the button once to return to the beginning of the track.

Repeatedly press the button to return to previous tracks.

Press and hold the button to fast rewind.

### PLAYING MEDIA FROM A USB DEVICE

#### Supported File Formats

The system supports the following file formats:

- MP3, M4B, WMA, PCM, WAV, AAC, APE, and FLAC audio file formats.
- WMV, MKV, AVI, MPEG, MP2, MPE, MP4, MOV, M4V and 3GP video file format.
- exFAT, FAT, FAT32 and NTFS file systems.

#### Selecting the USB Device

Connect your device to the USB port.



Select the audio option on the feature bar.

Select **Sources**.



Select the USB option.

Select **Browse**.

You can play the tracks displayed on the screen or search for new tracks.

#### Playing from the USB Device



Press the button to play a track. Press the button again to pause the track.



Press the button to skip to the next track.

Press and hold the button to fast forward through the track.



Press the button once to return to the beginning of a track.

Repeatedly press the button to return to previous tracks.

Press and hold the button to fast rewind through the track.

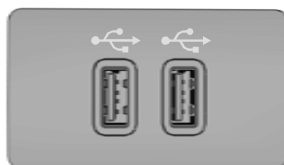
#### Sorting by Categories

You can also sort and play music by specific categories, for example artist or album.

### USB PORT



**WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.



E242003

The USB port allows you to plug in media playing devices, memory sticks and charge devices (if supported).

## Audio System - Vehicles Without: SYNC 3

**Note:** Your vehicle could have only one USB port.

### APPS

**Note:** We recommend that you check your data plan before using your apps through the system. Using them could result in additional charges.

**Note:** We recommend that you check the app provider's terms and conditions and privacy policy before using their app.

**Note:** Make sure that you have an active account for apps that you want to use through the system.

**Note:** Some apps will work with no setup. Others require you to configure some personal settings before you can use them.

### Using Apple CarPlay

#### Switching Apple CarPlay On

1. Connect your device to a USB port.
2. Follow the instructions on the touchscreen.

**Note:** Certain features of the system are not available when you are using Apple CarPlay.

#### Switching Apple CarPlay Off



Select the settings option on the feature bar.

1. Select **Apple CarPlay Preferences**.
2. Disable Apple CarPlay.

### Using Apps on an iOS Device

**Note:** For more information about available apps, refer to the local Ford website.

When you start an app through the system for the first time, you could be asked to grant certain permissions. You can review and change the permissions that you have granted at any time when your vehicle is not moving.



Select the apps option on the feature bar.

1. Switch Apple CarPlay off.
2. Connect your device to a USB port.
3. Start the apps on your device that you want to use through the system.

**Note:** If you close the apps on your device, you will not be able to use them through the system.

4. Select **Find mobile apps**.

**Note:** The system searches and connects to compatible apps that are running on your device.

5. Select the app that you want to use on the touchscreen.

### Using Android Auto

#### Switching Android Auto On

1. Connect your device to a USB port.
2. Follow the instructions on the touchscreen.

**Note:** You might need to enable Android Auto from the settings menu.

**Note:** Certain features of the system are not available when you are using Android Auto.

#### Switching Android Auto Off



Select the settings option on the feature bar.

1. Select **Android Auto Preferences**.
2. Disable Android Auto.

# Audio System - Vehicles Without: SYNC 3

## Using Apps on an Android Device

**Note:** For more information about available apps, refer to the local Ford website.

When you start an app through the system for the first time, you could be asked to grant certain permissions. You can review and change the permissions that you have granted at any time when your vehicle is not moving.



Select the apps option on the feature bar.

1. Switch Android Auto off.

2. Pair your device.
3. Start the apps on your device that you want to use through the system.

**Note:** If you close the apps on your device, you will not be able to use them through the system.

4. Select **Find mobile apps**.

**Note:** The system searches and connects to compatible apps that are running on your device.

5. Select the app that you want to use on the touchscreen.

## Apps Troubleshooting

Symptom	Possible Cause and Resolution
The system cannot find any apps.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Incompatible device.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• You will need an Android device with OS 2.3 or higher or an iOS 3GS device with iOS 5.0 or higher. Pair and connect your Android device to find AppLink compatible apps. Connect your iOS device to a USB port to find AppLink compatible apps.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
I have a compatible device and it is correctly connected but the system still cannot find any apps.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– AppLink compatible apps not installed on your device.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Download and install the latest version of the app.</li> </ul> </li> <li>– AppLink compatible apps not running on your device.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Start the apps to allow the system to find them and make sure you sign in to any apps if required.</li> </ul> </li> <li>– Incorrect app settings.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Check and adjust the app settings on your device and allow the system to access the app if required.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
I have a compatible device, it is correctly connected and my apps are running but the system still cannot find any apps.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Apps failed to fully close.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Restart the apps and try again.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>



## Audio System - Vehicles Without: SYNC 3

Symptom	Possible Cause and Resolution
I have an Android device that is correctly connected, I have restarted my apps and they are running but the system still cannot find them.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- An issue on some older versions of the Android operating system could result in apps not being found. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Switch <b>Bluetooth®</b> off and on again to force the system to reconnect to your device.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
I have an iOS device that is correctly connected, I have restarted my apps and they are running but the system still cannot find them.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Cable connection issue. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Disconnect the cable from your device, wait for a moment and then connect it again to force the system to reconnect to your device.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
I have an Android device running a media app which the system has found but I cannot hear the sound or the sound is very quiet.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Device volume is low. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Turn the volume up on your device.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
I have an Android device running a number of compatible apps but the system cannot find all of them.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Device limitation. Some Android devices have a limited number of <b>Bluetooth®</b> ports that apps can use to connect. If you have more apps running on your device than the number of available <b>Bluetooth®</b> ports, the system cannot find all of them. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Close some of the apps to allow the system to find those that you want to use.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>

## USING VOICE RECOGNITION

### Phone Voice Service

This system allows you to use the voice recognition features of your phone and focus on your driving.



Press the voice control button on the steering wheel.

**Note:** This only works when connected via **Bluetooth®**. See **Connecting a Bluetooth® Device** (page 377).

**Note:** When using voice recognition use the language set on the device.

**Note:** We recommend that you check your data plan before using your phone voice service through the system. Using them could result in additional charges.

# Audio System - Vehicles Without: SYNC 3

## AUDIO SYSTEM – TROUBLESHOOTING

Symptom	Possible Cause and Resolution
The system is not functioning.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>You can reset the system to restore functionality that has stopped working.</li><li>The system reset is designed to restore functionality and does not delete any personal data that you have stored.</li></ul>
I want to delete personal data from the system.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>A master reset is required to restore the system back to factory settings.</li><li>This deletes any personal data that you have stored.</li></ul>

### Resetting the System

1. Simultaneously press and hold the seek up and the audio unit power buttons until the screen goes black.
2. Wait three minutes to allow the system to complete the reset.

### Master Reset



Select the settings option on the feature bar.

1. Select **General**.
2. Select **Master Reset**.
3. Select **Continue**.

**Note:** *If you carry out a master reset, the system does not remove your vehicle from your vehicle network carrier's account. To remove your vehicle from the account, contact your vehicle network carrier.*

**Note:** *If you carry out a master reset, the system removes any authorized users and personal data.*

# Audio System - Vehicles With: SYNC 3

## AUDIO SYSTEM PRECAUTIONS



**WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Listening to loud audio for long periods of time could damage your hearing.

## SWITCHING THE AUDIO UNIT ON AND OFF



Press the button on the volume control.

## SELECTING THE AUDIO SOURCE

1. Press your preferred audio source.

**Note:** Available audio sources are listed along the top of the radio screen.

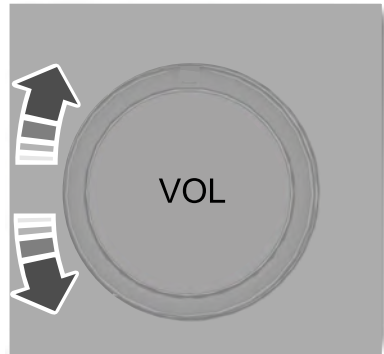
## PLAYING OR PAUSING THE AUDIO SOURCE



Press to pause playback. Press again to resume playback.

**Note:** Not all sources can be paused.

## ADJUSTING THE VOLUME



Turn to adjust the volume.

## SWITCHING SHUFFLE MODE ON AND OFF



Press the button on the touchscreen to switch shuffle mode on or off.

**Note:** Not all sources have shuffle mode.

## SWITCHING REPEAT MODE ON AND OFF



Press the button on the touchscreen to switch repeat mode on or off.

**Note:** Not all sources have repeat mode.

## SETTING A MEMORY PRESET

1. Select a station or channel.
2. Press and hold a memory preset button on the touchscreen.

# Audio System - Vehicles With: SYNC 3

**Note:** The audio mutes briefly while the system saves the preset and returns once it is stored.

**Note:** You can save presets from multiple sources to the memory preset bar.

## MUTING THE AUDIO



Press the button on the steering wheel to mute the audio.



Press to mute the signal. Press again to restore the signal.

## ADJUSTING THE SOUND SETTINGS

### Balance and Fade (If Equipped)

1. Access the vehicle drawer on the touchscreen.
2. Press **SETTINGS**.
3. Press **Sound**.
4. Press **Balance / Fade**.
5. Press the arrows to adjust the settings.

### Tone Settings

1. Access the vehicle drawer on the touchscreen.
2. Press **SETTINGS**.
3. Press **Sound**.
4. Press **Tone Settings**.
5. Use the slider bar to adjust the settings.

### Speed Compensated Volume

1. Access the vehicle drawer on the touchscreen.
2. Press **SETTINGS**.
3. Press **Sound**.
4. Press **Speed Compensated Volume**.

5. Press a setting.

### Occupancy Mode (If Equipped)

1. Access the vehicle drawer on the touchscreen.
2. Press **SETTINGS**.
3. Press **Sound**.
4. Press **Occupancy Mode**.
5. Press a setting.

### Sound Mode (If Equipped)

1. Access the vehicle drawer on the touchscreen.
2. Press **SETTINGS**.
3. Press **Sound**.
4. Press **Sound Mode**.
5. Press a setting.

## SETTING THE CLOCK AND DATE

1. Access the vehicle drawer on the touchscreen.
2. Press **SETTINGS**.
3. Press **Clock**.
4. Set the time.

**Note:** The **AM** and **PM** options are not available if **24-hour mode** is on.

5. Press the arrows to adjust the settings.

### Switching Automatic Time Updates On and Off

1. Access the vehicle drawer on the touchscreen.
2. Press **SETTINGS**.
3. Press **Clock**.
4. Switch **Automatic time zone update** on or off.

# Audio System - Vehicles With: SYNC 3

## AM/FM RADIO

### AM/FM RADIO LIMITATIONS

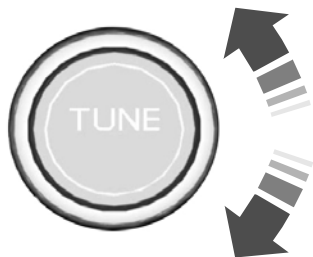
The further you travel from an AM or FM station, the weaker the signal and the weaker the reception.

Hills, mountains, tall buildings, bridges, tunnels, freeway overpasses, parking garages, dense tree foliage and thunderstorms can interfere with the reception.

When you pass a ground-based broadcast repeating tower, a stronger signal may overtake a weaker one and result in the audio system muting.

### SELECTING A RADIO STATION

#### Manually Selecting a Radio Station



Turn to search through the radio frequency band.

#### Using Direct Tune

1. Press **Direct Tune** to open the number pad.
2. Enter the station you prefer.

**Note:** You can only enter a valid station for the audio source you are currently listening to.

#### Using Seek



Press either button. The system stops at the first station it finds in that direction.



#### Using the Station List

1. Press **Browse**.

**Note:** Available on FM radio only.

2. Press a station.

## DIGITAL RADIO

### WHAT IS DIGITAL RADIO

HD Radio™ technology is the digital evolution of analog AM/FM radio.

For additional information, visit [www.HDRadio.com](http://www.HDRadio.com).

HD Radio Technology is manufactured under license from iBiquity Digital Corporation and foreign patents. HD Radio and the HD and HD Radio logos are proprietary trademarks of DTS. The vehicle manufacturer and DTS are not responsible for the content sent using HD Radio technology. Content may be changed, added or deleted at any time at the station owner's discretion.

### HOW DOES DIGITAL RADIO WORK

Your system has a special receiver that allows it to receive digital broadcasts in addition to analog broadcasts.

## Audio System - Vehicles With: SYNC 3

HD1 signifies the main programming status and is available in both analog and digital broadcasts. Other multicast stations are only available digitally and could contain new or different content.

**Note:** *When the system first receives an HD1 station, it plays the station in the analog version until it verifies the station is an HD Radio station. Then it shifts to the digital version.*

**Note:** *There is an audio mute delay when switching to an HD2 or HD3 station because the system has to reacquire and decode the digital signal.*

### DIGITAL RADIO LIMITATIONS

If you are outside the reception area, the system could not work.

If you are on the fringe of the reception area, the station could mute due to weak signal strength.

**Note:** *If you are listening to HD1, the system changes back to the analog broadcast until the digital broadcast is available again. If you are listening to any other multicast channels, the station mutes and stays muted unless it is able to connect to the digital signal again.*

Depending on the station quality, you could hear a slight sound change when the station changes between analog and digital audio.

You cannot access a saved HD station if your vehicle is outside the station's reception area.

### SWITCHING DIGITAL RADIO RECEPTION ON AND OFF

1. Access the vehicle drawer on the touchscreen.
2. Press **SETTINGS**.
3. Press **Radio**.

4. Switch **HD Radio** on or off.

### DIGITAL RADIO INDICATORS

#### HD Radio Indicator

The indicator appears when HD Radio is on and you tune to a station broadcasting HD Radio technology.



The color of the indicator changes to indicate the system status.

Gray indicates the system is acquiring a digital station.

Orange indicates digital audio is playing.

#### Multicast Indicator

The multicast indicator appears if the current station is broadcasting multiple digital broadcasts. The highlighted numbers indicate additional digital channels available.

**Note:** *For stations that have more than one HD multicast, the HD indicator and radio text appears as a button. Press the button to cycle through all of the HD stations on that specific frequency.*

# Audio System - Vehicles With: SYNC 3

---

## SATELLITE RADIO

### WHAT IS SATELLITE RADIO

Your factory-installed SiriusXM radio system includes a limited subscription term, which begins on the date of sale or lease of your vehicle. See an authorized dealer for availability.

For additional information about extended subscription terms, visit [www.SiriusXM.com](http://www.SiriusXM.com) in the United States, [www.SiriusXM.ca](http://www.SiriusXM.ca) in Canada, or call SiriusXM at 1-888-539-7474.

**Note:** *SiriusXM reserves the unrestricted right to change, rearrange, add or delete programming including canceling, moving or adding particular channels, and its prices, at any time, with or without notice to you. Neither SiriusXM and its affiliates nor Ford Motor Company and its affiliates will be liable to you or any third party for any such modification, suspension or termination.*

### SATELLITE RADIO LIMITATIONS

For optimal reception performance, keep the antenna clear of snow and ice build-up and keep luggage and other material as far away from the antenna as possible. Placing luggage over the antenna may reduce performance.

Hills, mountains, tall buildings, bridges, tunnels, freeway overpasses, parking garages, dense tree foliage and thunderstorms can interfere with your reception.

When you pass a ground-based broadcast-repeating tower, a stronger signal may overtake a weaker one and could result in the audio system muting. Your display could show an error message to indicate the interference.

## LOCATING THE SATELLITE RADIO IDENTIFICATION NUMBER

1. Select SiriusXM as the audio source.
2. Tune to channel 0.

## GENERAL INFORMATION



**WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

### About SYNC

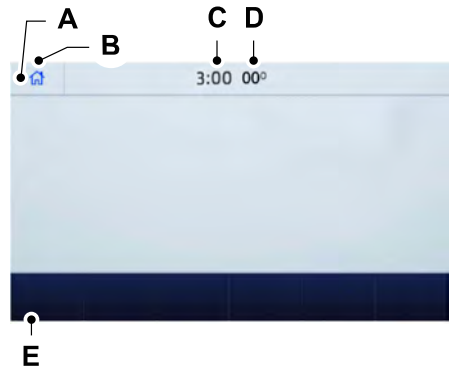
The system allows you to interact with the entertainment, information and communication systems on your vehicle using voice commands and a touchscreen. The system provides easy interaction with audio, phone, navigation, mobile apps and settings.

**Note:** You can switch the system on and use it for up to an hour without switching the ignition on.

**Note:** You can use the system after you switch the ignition off for up to 10 minutes or until you open a door.

**Note:** For your safety, some features are speed-dependent. Their use is limited to when your vehicle speed is less than 3 mph (5 km/h).

## Using the Touchscreen



- A Status bar.
- B Home screen.
- C Clock. See **Settings** (page 418).
- D Outside air temperature.
- E Feature bar.

### Status Bar



Cell phone microphone muted.



Audio system muted.



Software update installed.



Wi-Fi connected.



Cell phone roaming.



Text message received.





Automatic crash notification system off.



Cell phone network signal strength.



Vehicle data sharing on.



Vehicle location sharing on.



Vehicle data and vehicle location sharing on.



Wireless charger active.

## Feature Bar



Select to use the radio, a USB, a media player or a **Bluetooth®** device. See **Entertainment** (page 398).



Select to adjust climate settings



Select to make calls and access the phonebook on your cell phone. See **Phone** (page 408).



Select to use the navigation system. See **Navigation** (page 410).



Select to search for and use compatible apps on your iOS or Android device. See **Apps** (page 416).



Select to adjust system settings. See **Settings** (page 418).

## Cleaning the Touchscreen

See **Cleaning Displays and Screens** (page 322).

## Updating the System

### Updating the System Using a USB Drive

#### Downloading an Update

1. Go to the SYNC update page on the local Ford website.
2. Download the update.

**Note:** *The website notifies you if an update is available.*

3. Insert a USB drive into your computer.

**Note:** *The USB drive needs to be empty and meet the minimum requirements detailed on the website.*

4. Follow the instructions provided to download the update to the USB drive.

#### Installing an Update

**Note:** *You can use the system when an installation is in progress.*

1. Disconnect all other USB devices from the USB ports.
2. Connect the USB drive with the update to a USB port.

**Note:** *Installation starts automatically within 10 minutes.*

### Updating the System Using a Wi-Fi Network Connection

#### Connecting to a Wi-Fi Network



Select the settings option on the feature bar.

1. Select **Automatic Updates**.
2. Select **System Wi-Fi**.
3. Switch **System Wi-Fi** on.
4. Select **Available Wi-Fi Networks**.
5. Select an available Wi-Fi network.

**Note:** *Enter the network password to connect to a secure network.*

# SYNC™ 3 (If Equipped)

## Switching Automatic System Updates On



Select the settings option on the feature bar.

1. Select **Automatic Updates**.
2. Switch **Automatic System Updates** on.

The system is now set to check for and receive system updates when it is connected to a Wi-Fi network.

**Note:** You can use the system when a download is in progress.

**Note:** If the system is disconnected from the Wi-Fi network when a download is in progress, the download continues the next time the system is connected to a Wi-Fi network.

## Additional Information and Assistance

For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer or refer to the local Ford website.

## USING VOICE RECOGNITION

The SYNC 3 system allows you to use voice commands to control features like audio and climate controls. By using voice commands, you can keep your hands on the wheel and your eyes on the road.

You can access each feature controlled by SYNC 3 through a variety of commands.



To activate the SYNC 3 voice commands push the voice button on the steering wheel and wait for the prompt.

\_\_\_ is a dynamic listing, meaning that it can be the name of anything, such as artist, the name of contact or number. The context and the description of the command tell you what to say for this dynamic option.

There are some commands that work for every feature, these commands are:

Voice Command	Action and Description
Main Menu	Brings you to the main menu.
Go back	Returns you to the previous screen.
Cancel	Ends the voice session.
List of Commands	Gives you a list of possible voice commands.
___ List of Commands	You can name any feature and the system gives a list of commands available for the feature. For example, you could say:
	Phone List of Commands
	Navigation List of Commands

## SYNC™ 3 (If Equipped)

Voice Command	Action and Description
Next Page	You can use this command to view the next page of options on any screen where multiple pages of choices are given.
Previous Page	You can use this command to view the previous page of options on any screen where multiple pages of choices are given.
Help	Gives you available commands you can use on the current screen.

Included here are some of the most popular commands for each SYNC 3 feature.

### Audio Voice Commands

\_\_\_ is a dynamic listing, meaning that for audio voice commands it can be the name of a Sirius channel or a channel number, a radio frequency number, or the name of an artist, album, song or a genre.

**To control the media features, press the voice button and when prompted, say:**

Voice Command	Description
Sirius Channel ___ <sup>1</sup>	You can say the Sirius channel name or number such as "Sirius channel 16".
You can also tune to a Sirius channel by saying the channel's name, such as "The Pulse".	
AM ___ FM ___	Allows you to tune to a specific FM or AM frequency such as "FM 88.7" or "AM 1580".
FM ___ HD ___ <sup>1</sup>	Allows you to tune to a specific HD frequency such as "FM 88.7 HD 1".
Bluetooth Audio	Allows you to listen to music on your <b>Bluetooth®</b> connected device.
USB	Allows you to listen to music on your USB connected device.
Play Genre ___ Play Playlist ___ Play Artist ___ Play Album ___ Play Podcast ___ Play Song ___	For USB audio only, you can say the name of an artist, album, song or a genre to listen to that selection. Your system must finish indexing before this option is available. For example, you could say "Play artist The Beatles" or "Play song Penny Lane".

## SYNCTM 3 (If Equipped)

Voice Command	Description
Play Audiobook ____	
Browse ____ Browse Artist ____ Browse Album ____ Browse Genre ____ Browse Playlist ____ Browse Audiobook ____ Browse Podcast ____	For USB audio only, you can say the name of an artist, album, or a genre to browse by that selection. Your system must finish indexing before this option is available. For example you can say "Browse artist The Beatles" or "Browse genre folk".

<sup>1</sup> This option may not be available in all markets or may require a subscription.

### Climate Voice Commands (If Equipped)

You can control the temperature of the vehicle using voice commands.

\_\_\_\_ is a dynamic listing, meaning that for climate voice commands it can be the desired degrees for the temperature setting.

#### To adjust the temperature, say:

Voice Command	Description
Set the Temperature to ____	Adjust the temperature between 60–85°F (15.5–29.5°C).

## Phone Voice Commands

### Pairing a Phone

You can use voice commands to connect your **Bluetooth**®-enabled phone to the system.

#### To pair your phone, press the voice button and when prompted, say:

Voice Command	Description
Pair Phone	Follow the on-screen instructions to complete the pairing process. See <b>Settings</b> (page 418).

## SYNC™ 3 (If Equipped)

### Making Calls

\_\_\_ is a dynamic listing, meaning that for

phone voice commands it can be the name of the contact you wish to call or the digits you want to dial.

### Press the voice button and say a command similar to the following:

Voice Command	Description
Call ___	Allows you to call a specific contact from your phonebook such as "Call Jenny".
Call ___ at ___	Allows you to call a specific contact from your phonebook at a specific location such as "Call Jenny at Home".
Dial ___	Allows you to dial a specific number such as "Dial 867-5309".

Please make sure that you are saying the contact name exactly as it appears in your contact list.

### Once you have provided the digits of the phone number, you can say the following commands:

Voice Command	Description
<0-9>	If you did not enter the full number with the first command, you can continue saying the number.
Dial	Tells SYNC 3 to make the phone call.
Delete	Tells SYNC 3 to erase the last block of digits you state.
Clear	Tells SYNC 3 to erase the entire number.

# SYNCTM 3 (If Equipped)

## Text Message Voice Commands

To access text message options, press the voice button and say:

Voice Command	Description
Listen to Message	
Listen to text message ____	You can say the number of the message you would like to hear.
Reply to Message	
Reply to Message ____	You can say the number of the message you would like to respond to.
Reply to ____	You can say the contact of the most recent message to respond.

## Navigation Voice Commands (If Equipped)

### Setting a Destination

You can use any of the following commands to set a destination or find a point of interest.

\_\_\_\_ is a dynamic listing, meaning that for navigation voice commands it can be a POI category or a major brand name, where a major brand name is a chain with more than 20 locations.

**You can find an address, a point of interest (POI), or search for points of interest by category:**

Voice Command	Description
Find an Address	Allows you to enter the address search functionality. You can also search for an address in a specific state or province.
Find a ____	State the name of the POI category or major brand name you would like to search for such as "Find restaurants".
Find a POI	Allows you to enter the POI search functionality.
Find an Intersection	Allows you to enter the intersection search functionality.
Find the Nearest <POI Category>	State the name of a POI category or major brand name you would like to search for.
Show Previous Destinations	Allows you to see a list of your previous destinations.

## SYNC™ 3 (If Equipped)

Voice Command	Description
Show Favorites	Allows you to see a list of your favorite destinations.
Drive Home	Allows you to route to your home address.
Drive to Work	Allows you to route to your work address.

### In addition, you can say these commands when a route is active:

Voice Command	Description
Cancel Route	Cancels the current route.
Detour	Allows you to select an alternate route.
Repeat Instruction	Repeats the last guidance prompt.
Show Route	Displays the active route.
Route Summary	Displays the list of upcoming maneuvers.
Where Am I	Provides current location.
Zoom in	Allows you to zoom in on the map.
Zoom out	Allows you to zoom out from the map.

### Mobile App Voice Commands (If Equipped)

#### The following voice commands are always available:

Voice Command	Description
Mobile Apps	SYNC 3 will prompt you to say the name of an app to start it on SYNC 3.
List Mobile Apps	SYNC 3 will list all of the currently available Mobile Apps.
Find Mobile Apps	SYNC 3 will search and connect to compatible app(s) running on your mobile device.

## SYNC™ 3 (If Equipped)

**There are also voice commands that you can use when app(s) are connected to SYNC 3:**

Voice Command	Description
Say the name of an app	At any time, you can say the name of a mobile app to start the mobile app on SYNC 3.
Say the name of an app, followed by help	SYNC 3 will list the available voice commands for the specified app if the app is running on SYNC 3.

### **SiriusXM Traffic and Travel Link Voice Commands (If Equipped)**

SiriusXM Traffic and Travel Link may not be available in all markets. Activation and a subscription are required.

**You can say the following commands to access SiriusXM Traffic and Travel Link:**

Voice Command	Description
Show Traffic	Displays a list of traffic incidents.
Show Weather Map	Displays the current weather map.
Show Fuel Prices	Displays a list of fuel prices.
Show 5 Day Forecast	Displays the 5 day weather forecast.
Help	

### **Voice Settings Commands**

**You can say the following commands to access the voice settings:**

Voice Command	Description
Voice Settings	Allows you to enter the voice settings functionality.
Interaction Mode Standard	Sets standard prompting with longer prompts.
Interaction Mode Advanced	Sets advanced prompting with shorter prompts.
Phone Confirmation On	Allows the system to confirm before making a phone call.



## SYNC™ 3 (If Equipped)

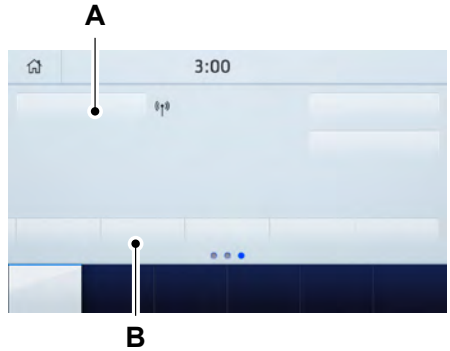
Voice Command	Description
Phone Confirmation Off	The system does not confirm before placing a call.
Voice Command Lists On	The system displays a short list of available commands.
Voice Command Lists Off	The system does not display the list of commands.

You can use the volume control to adjust the volume of the system voice prompts. While prompt is active, adjust the volume control up or down to your desired setting.

**Note:** Depending on the current climate control settings, the fan speed may automatically go down while issuing voice commands or while making and receiving phone calls via SYNC to reduce the amount of background noise in the vehicle. The fan speed will automatically return to normal operation once the voice session ends. You can adjust the fan speed during a voice session, simply press the fan buttons (or turn the fan knob) to increase or decrease the fan speed to the setting you prefer.

To disable this automatic fan speed reduction feature during voice sessions, press and hold the climate control AC and Recirculated air buttons simultaneously, release and then increase fan speed within 2 seconds. To re-enable this feature, repeat the above sequence.

## ENTERTAINMENT



- A Audio source. Select to choose a different audio source.
- B Presets. Swipe left to view more presets.

You can access these options using the touchscreen or voice commands.

## Sources

Press this button to select the source of media you want to listen to.

# SYNC™ 3 (If Equipped)

Menu Item	
AM	
FM	
SIRIUS <sup>1</sup>	
CD	
USB	The name of the USB that is plugged in displays here.
Bluetooth Stereo	
Apps	If you have SYNC 3 compatible apps on your connected smart phone, they display here as individual source selections.

<sup>1</sup> This feature may not be available in all markets and requires an active subscription.

## AM/FM Radio

### Tuning a Station

You can use the tune or seek controls on the radio bezel to select a station.

### To tune a station using the touchscreen, select:

Menu Item
Direct Tune

A pop up appears, allowing you to type in the frequency of a station. You can only enter a valid station for the source you are currently listening to.

You can press the backspace button to delete the previously entered number.

### Once you have entered the station's call numbers, you can select:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Enter	Press to begin playing the station you have entered.
Cancel	Press to exit without changing the station.

## Presets

To set a new preset, tune to the station and then press and hold one of the memory preset buttons. The audio mutes briefly while the system saves the station and then returns.

You may be able to add additional preset pages using the settings option on the feature bar.

## SYNC™ 3 (If Equipped)

### SiriusXM® Satellite Radio (If Activated)

**Note:** *This feature may not be available in all markets and requires an active subscription.*



SiriusXM satellite radio is a subscription-based satellite radio service that broadcasts a variety of music, sports, news, weather, traffic and entertainment programming. Your factory-installed SiriusXM satellite radio system includes hardware and a limited subscription term that begins on the date of sale or lease of your vehicle. See an authorized dealer for availability.

For more information on extended subscription terms (a service fee is required), the online media player and a list of SiriusXM satellite radio channels, and other features, please visit [www.siriusxm.com](http://www.siriusxm.com) in the United States, [www.siriusxm.ca](http://www.siriusxm.ca) in Canada, or call SiriusXM at 1-888-539-7474.

**Note:** *SiriusXM reserves the unrestricted right to change, rearrange, add or delete programming. This includes canceling, moving or adding particular channels, and its prices, at any time, with or without notice to you. We are not responsible for any such programming changes.*

**Note:** *This receiver includes the eCos real-time operating system. eCos is published under the eCos License.*

### The following buttons are available for SiriusXM:

Menu Item	Action and Description	
Browse	Touch this button to see a list of available stations.	
Direct Tune	A pop-up appears, allowing you to type in the call numbers of a station. Once you enter the stations call numbers, you can select:	
	Enter	The system tunes to the station you select.
	Cancel	You exit the pop-up and the current station continues to play.
	You can press the backspace button to delete the previous number.	

## SYNCTM 3 (If Equipped)

Menu Item	Action and Description	
Replay	Replay audio on the current channel. You can replay approximately 45 minutes of audio as long as you remain tuned to the current station. Changing stations erases the previous audio.	
	Live	When you are in replay mode, you are not able to select a different preset until you return to live audio. Pressing this button returns you to the live broadcast.
ALERT	Save the current song, artist, or team as a favorite. The system alerts you when it plays again on any channel. Selecting this button allows you to enable and edit alerts.	

### Memory Presets

To set a preset, tune to the station then press and hold one of the memory preset buttons. The audio mutes briefly while the system saves the station and returns once the station is stored.

You may be able to add additional preset pages using the settings option on the feature bar.

### SiriusXM Satellite Radio Reception Factors and Troubleshooting

Potential Reception Issues	
Antenna obstructions	For optimal reception performance, keep the antenna clear of snow and ice build-up and keep luggage and other materials as far away from the antenna as possible.
Terrain	Hills, mountains, tall buildings, bridges, tunnels, freeway overpasses, parking garages, dense tree foliage and thunderstorms can interfere with your reception.
Station overload	When you pass a ground-based broadcast-repeating tower, a stronger signal may overtake a weaker one and the audio system may mute.
Satellite radio signal interference	Your display may show ACQUIRING... to indicate the interference and the audio system may mute.

## SYNC™ 3 (If Equipped)

<b>Troubleshooting Tips</b>		
<b>Message</b>	<b>Cause</b>	<b>Action</b>
Acquiring Signal	Radio requires more than two seconds to produce audio for the selected channel.	No action required. This message should disappear shortly.
Satellite antenna fault SIRIUS system failure	There is an internal module or system failure present.	If this message does not clear shortly, or with an ignition key cycle, your receiver may have a fault. See an authorized dealer for service.
Invalid Channel	The channel is no longer available.	Tune to another channel or choose another preset.
Unsubscribed Channel	Your subscription does not include this channel.	Contact SiriusXM at 1-888-539-7474 to subscribe to the channel, or tune to another channel.
Satellite acquiring signal...	The signal is lost from the SiriusXM satellite or SiriusXM tower to your vehicle antenna.	The signal is blocked. When you move into an open area, the signal should return.
Updating...	Update of channel programming in progress.	No action required. The process may take up to three minutes.
Questions? Call 1-888-539-7474	Your satellite service is no longer available.	Contact SiriusXM at 1-888-539-7474 to resolve subscription issues.
None found. Check channel guide.	All the channels in the selected category are either skipped or locked.	Use the channel guide or the Sirius XM Settings tile to turn off the Lock or Skip function on that station.
SIRIUS Subscription updated	SiriusXM has updated the channels available for your vehicle.	No action required.

**Note:** HD Radio broadcasts are not available in all markets.

### **HD Radio™ Information (If Available)**

To activate HD radio, please see the Radio Settings in the Settings Chapter. See **Settings** (page 418).

## SYNCTM 3 (If Equipped)

HD Radio technology is the digital evolution of analog AM/FM radio. Your system has a special receiver that allows it to receive digital broadcasts (where available) in addition to the analog broadcasts, it already receives. Digital broadcasts provide a better sound quality than analog broadcasts with free, crystal-clear audio and no static or distortion. For more information, and a guide to available stations and programming, please visit:

<b>Website</b>
<a href="http://www.hdradio.com">www.hdradio.com</a>

When HD Radio is on and you tune to a station broadcasting HD Radio technology, you may notice the following indicators on your screen:



The HD logo is grey when acquiring a digital station, and then changes to orange when digital audio is playing. When this logo is available, you may also see Title and Artist fields on-screen.

The multicast indicator appears in FM mode (only) if the current station is broadcasting multiple digital broadcasts. The highlighted numbers signify available digital channels where new or different content is available. HD1 signifies the main programming status and is available in analog and digital broadcasts. Other multicast stations (HD2 through HD7) are only available digitally.

**Note:** *There is also an additional feature for stations that have more than 1 HD multicast (For example, HD1 or HD2). The HD logo and Radio text appears as a button. Pressing this button allows you to cycle through all of the HD stations on that specific frequency. For example, if you are on 101.1 and it has HD1, HD2, HD3, pressing the button repeatedly causes the radio to cycle through the HD stations in a cyclic increasing order.*

### When HD Radio broadcasts are active, you can access the following functions:

Message	Action and Description
Presets	Allows you to save an active channel as a memory preset. Touch and hold a memory preset slot until the sound returns. There is a brief mute while the radio saves the station. Sound returns when the channel saves. When switching to an HD2 or HD3 memory preset, the sound mutes before the digital audio plays, because the system has to reacquire the digital signal.

**Note:** *As with any station you save, you cannot access the saved station if your vehicle is outside the station's reception area.*

# SYNC™ 3 (If Equipped)

## HD Radio Reception and Station Troubleshooting

Potential Reception Issues	
Reception area	<p>If you are listening to a multicast station and you are on the fringe of the reception area, the station may mute due to weak signal strength.</p> <p>If you are listening to HD1, the system changes back to the analog broadcast until the digital broadcast is available again. However, if you are listening to any of the possible HD2-HD7 multicast channels, the station mutes and stays muted unless it is able to connect to the digital signal again.</p>
Station blending	<p>When the system first receives a station (aside from HD2-HD7 multicast stations), it first plays the station in the analog version. Once the receiver verifies the station is an HD Radio station, it shifts to the digital version. Depending on the station quality, you may hear a slight sound change when the station changes from analog to digital. Blending is the shift from analog to digital sound or digital back to analog sound.</p>

In order to provide the best possible experience, use the contact form to report any station issues found while listening to a station broadcasting with HD Radio technology. Independent entities own and operate each station. These stations are responsible for ensuring all audio streams and data fields are accurate.

Potential Station Issues		
Issues	Cause	Action
Echo, stutter, skip or repeat in audio. Increase or decrease in audio volume.	This is poor time alignment by the radio broadcaster.	No action required. This is a broadcast issue.
Sound fading or blending in and out.	The radio is shifting between analog and digital audio.	No action required. The reception issue may clear up as you continue to drive.
There is an audio mute delay when selecting HD2 or HD3, multicast preset or Direct Tune.	The digital multicast is not available until the HD Radio broadcast is decoded. Once decoded, the audio is available.	No action required. This is normal behavior. Wait until the audio is available.

## SYNCTM 3 (If Equipped)

Potential Station Issues		
Issues	Cause	Action
Cannot access HD2 or HD3 multicast channel when recalling a preset or from a direct tune.	The previously stored multicast preset or direct tune is not available in your current reception area.	No action required. The station is not available in your current location.
Text information does not match currently playing audio.	Data service issue by the radio broadcaster.	Fill out the station issue form. <sup>1</sup>
There is no text information shown for currently selected frequency.	Data service issue by the radio broadcaster.	Fill out the station issue form. <sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> You can find the form here:

Website
<a href="http://hdradio.com/stations/feedback">http://hdradio.com/stations/feedback</a>

HD Radio Technology manufactured under license from iBiquity Digital Corporation and foreign patents. HD Radio and the HD and HD Radio logos are proprietary trademarks of DTS. The vehicle manufacturer and DTS are not responsible for the content sent using HD Radio technology. Content may be changed, added or deleted at any time at the station owner's discretion.

### CD (If Equipped)

Once you select this option, the system returns you to the main audio screen.

The current audio information appears on the screen.

### The following buttons are also available:

Button	Function
Browse	You can use the browse button to select a track.
Repeat	Select this button and a small number one displays to indicate the track is set to repeat.



## SYNC™ 3 (If Equipped)

Button	Function
	For MP3 CDs, this button allows you to toggle through repeat off, repeat one track (a small number one displays), and repeat current folder (a small folder displays).
Shuffle	Select the shuffle symbol to have the audio on the disk play in random order.

You can use the forward, reverse, pause or play buttons to control the audio playback.

### Bluetooth Stereo or USB

Bluetooth Stereo and USB allow you to access media that you store on your Bluetooth device or USB device such as music, audio books or podcasts.

### The following buttons are available for Bluetooth and USB:

Button	Function
Repeat	Pressing the repeat button toggles the repeat setting through three modes: repeat off (button not highlighted), repeat all (button highlighted) and repeat track (button highlighted with a small number one).
Shuffle	Play the tracks in random order.

You can use the forward, reverse, pause or play buttons to control the audio playback.

To get more information about the currently playing track, press the cover art or Info button.

For some devices, SYNC 3 is able to provide 30-second skip buttons when you listen to audio books or podcasts. These buttons allow you to skip forward or backward within a track.

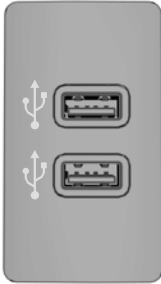
While playing audio from a USB device you can look for certain music by selecting the following:

Button	Function
Browse	If available, displays the list of tracks in the Now Playing playlist.
New Search	This option, which is available under browse, allows you to play all tracks or to filter the available media into one of the below categories.
	Play All

# SYNCTM 3 (If Equipped)

Button	Function
	Playlists
	Artist
	Albums
	Songs
	Genres
	Podcasts
	Audio books
	Composers
A-Z Jump	This button allows you to choose a specific letter to view within the category you are browsing.
Explore Device	If available, this allows you to browse the folders and files on your USB device.

## USB Ports



E211463

The USB ports are located in the media bin under the instrument panel.

This feature allows you to plug in USB media devices, memory sticks, flash drives or thumb drives, and charge devices if they support this feature.

Select this option to play audio from your USB device.

## Apps

The system supports the use of certain audio apps such as iHeartRadio through a USB or Bluetooth enabled device.

Each app gives you different on-screen options depending on the app's content. See **Apps** (page 416).

## Supported Media Players, Formats and Metadata Information

The system is capable of hosting nearly any digital media player, including iPod, iPhone, and most USB drives.

Supported audio formats include MP3, WMA, WAV, AAC, and FLAC.

Supported audio file extensions include MP3, WMA, WAV, M4A, M4B, AAC, and FLAC.

Supported USB file systems include: FAT, exFAT, and NTFS.

SYNC 3 is also able to organize the media from your USB device by metadata tags. Metadata tags, which are descriptive software identifiers embedded in the media files, provide information about the file.

If your indexed media files contain no information embedded in these metadata tags, SYNC 3 may classify the empty metadata tags as unknown.

SYNC 3 is capable of indexing up to 50,000 songs per USB device, for up to 10 devices.

## PHONE



**WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Check the compatibility of your device on the regional website.

### Pairing Your Cell Phone for the First Time

Go to the settings menu on your cell phone and switch Bluetooth on.



Select the phone option on the feature bar.

1. Select **Add Phone**.

**Note:** A prompt alerts you to search for your vehicle on your cell phone.

2. Select your vehicle on your cell phone.

**Note:** A number appears on your cell phone and on the touchscreen.

3. Confirm that the number on your cell phone matches the number on the touchscreen.

**Note:** The touchscreen indicates that you have successfully paired your cell phone.

4. Download the phonebook from your cell phone when you are prompted.

**Note:** If you pair more than one cell phone, use the phone settings to specify the primary phone. You can change this setting at any time.

## Using Your Cell Phone

### Recent Call List

Display and select an entry from a list of previous calls.

### Contacts

Display a smart search form to look up your contacts. Use the List button to alphabetically sort your contacts.

### Favorites

Display and select an entry from the list of favorite contacts that are set up on your phone.

### Messaging

Displays the list of text messages to read, listen to, or respond to.

### Email

Displays the list of emails to read, listen to, or respond to.

# SYNCTM 3 (If Equipped)

## Phone List

Display the list of paired or connected devices that you can select.

**Note:** *Up to 12 devices can be stored.*

## Do Not Disturb

Reject incoming calls and switch ring tones and alerts off.

## Phone Keypad

Directly dial a number.

## Text Messaging

### Setting Text Message Notification

#### iOS

1. Go to the settings menu on your cell phone.

### Using Text Messaging

Menu Item	Description
Hear It	Hear the text message.
View	View the text message.
Call	Call the sender.
Reply	Reply to the text message with a standard text message.

## Apple CarPlay (If Equipped)

1. Connect your device to a USB port.
2. Follow the instructions on the touchscreen.

**Note:** *Certain features of the system are not available when you are using Apple CarPlay.*

### Switching Apple CarPlay Off



Select the settings option on the feature bar.

2. Select Bluetooth.
3. Select the information icon to the right of your vehicle.
4. Switch text message notification on.

#### Android

1. Go to the settings menu on your cell phone.
2. Select Bluetooth.
3. Select the profiles option.
4. Select the phone profile.
5. Switch text message notification on.

1. Select **Apple CarPlay Preferences**.
2. Switch **Apple CarPlay** off.

### Android Auto (If Equipped)

1. Connect your device to a USB port.
2. Follow the instructions on the touchscreen.

**Note:** *You might need to enable Android Auto from the settings menu.*

**Note:** *Certain features of the system are not available when you are using Android Auto.*

## Switching Android Auto Off



Select the settings option on the feature bar.

1. Select **Android Auto**.
2. Switch **Android Auto** off.

## NAVIGATION

**Note:** For more information, refer to our website.

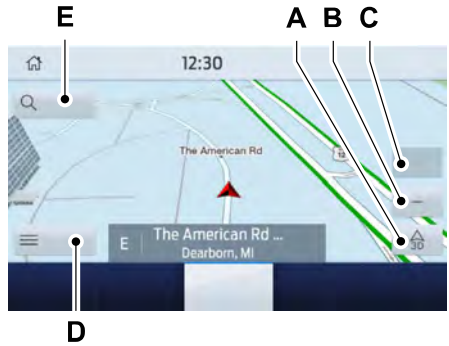


Select the navigation option on the feature bar.

## Setting a Destination

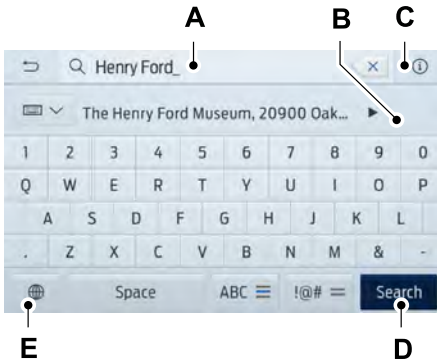
### Destination Entry Menu

Item	Description
Search	Enter a destination address.
Previous Destinations	Display and select from a list of previous destinations.
Home	Set your saved home address as your destination
Work	Set your saved place of work as your destination.
Favorites	Display and select from a list of favorite destinations.



- A Map view menu.
- B Zoom out.
- C Zoom in.
- D Route guidance menu.
- E Destination entry menu.

## Setting a Destination Using the Text Entry Screen



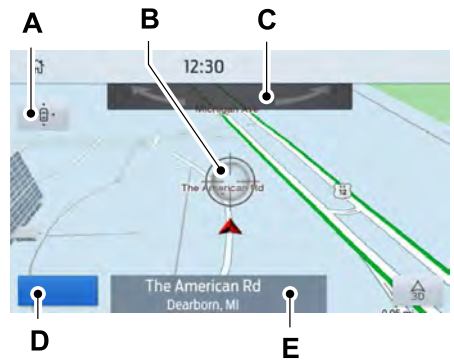
- A Text entry field.
- B Automatic suggestions based on the text you enter.
- C Information icon.
- D Search.
- E Keyboard settings.

**Note:** Select one of the suggestions to copy the detail to the text entry field.

**You can search by entering all or part of the destination, such as the Address, POI Category or Name, Intersection, City, Latitude/Longitude, etc. Tips: If you do not specify a location, the system will use the current vehicle location. You can specify a location by address, city, state or zip code. For additional search support, please visit: [support.ford.com](http://support.ford.com).**

**Note:** Press the button in the top right-hand corner of the main map to display estimated time of arrival, remaining travel time or distance to destination.

## Setting a Destination Using the Map Screen



- A Re-center the map.
- B Selected location.
- C 3D map rotation. Swipe left or right.
- D Start route guidance.
- E Destination name.

Select the location on the map.  
Select **Start** to begin route guidance.

## Changing the Format of the Map

Display the map in one of the following formats:

- A two-dimensional map with the direction you are traveling toward the top of the screen.
- A two-dimensional map with north toward the top of the screen.
- A three-dimensional map with the direction you are traveling toward the front.

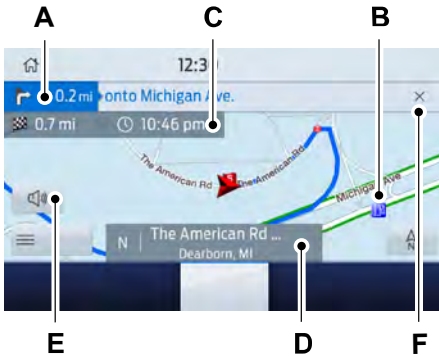
## Zoom

Display more or less detail on the map.

## SYNC™ 3 (If Equipped)

**Note:** You can use pinch gestures to zoom in and out. Place two fingers on the screen and move them apart to zoom in. Place two fingers on the screen and bring them together to zoom out.

### Route Guidance



- C Estimated time of arrival, distance to destination or time to destination.
- D Current road.
- E Mute guidance prompts.
- F Cancel route guidance.

**Note:** To change guidance prompt volume, turn the volume control when a guidance prompt plays.

- A Turn indicator. Select to hear the last voice prompt.
- B Point of interest.

### Route Guidance Menu

Menu Item	Description
Screen View	Adjust your map preferences for when route guidance is active.
Full Map	View a full screen map when route guidance is active.
Highway Exit Info	View highway exit information for your current route.
Turn List	View the turn list for your current route. Select a road to avoid it.
Traffic List	You can find the SiriusXM Traffic and Travel Link information by pressing this button. This information requires an active subscription to SiriusXM Traffic and Travel Link. When a route is not active, a list of nearby traffic incidents displays. When a route is active, you can choose to display a list of traffic nearby or on the route.

## SYNCTM 3 (If Equipped)

Menu Item	Description
Navigation Settings	Adjust navigation settings. See <b>Settings</b> (page 418).
Where Am I?	View information about your current location.
Cancel Route	Cancel route guidance.
View Route	View the entire current route on the map.
Detour	View an alternative route compared to your current one.
Edit Waypoints	Change the order or remove waypoints.
Optimize Order	The system determines the order of waypoints for you.
Go	Go to the next screen and start the new route.

### Adjusting the Guidance Prompt Volume

Turn the volume control when a guidance prompt plays to adjust the volume.

**Note:** *If you have inadvertently adjusted the volume to zero, press the turn indicator button to play the last voice prompt and then adjust the volume to the desired level.*

### Muting Guidance Prompts



Select the mute option on the screen to mute guidance prompts.

**Note:** *The system mutes the next and all future guidance prompts.*

### Adding Waypoints

You can add a waypoint to a navigation route as a destination along your route. You can add up to five waypoints.

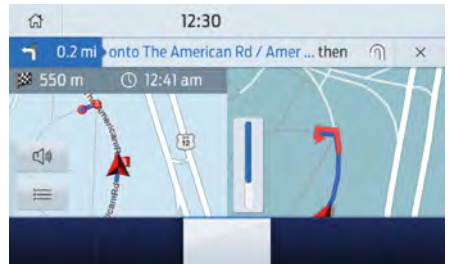
1. Select the search option on the map.
2. Set a destination.
3. Select **Add Waypoint**.
4. Select **Go**.

### Canceling Route Guidance



Select the route guidance menu option on the active guidance screen.

Select **Cancel Route**.



**Note:** *The route guidance menu option is always in the bottom right-hand corner of the main map.*

### cityseeker (If Equipped)

**Note:** *cityseeker point of interest (POI) information is limited to approximately 1,110 cities (1,049 in the United States, 36 in Canada and 15 in Mexico).*





E225487

cityseeker, when available, is a service that provides more information about certain points of interest such as restaurants, hotels and attractions.

When you have selected a point of interest, the location and information appear, such as address, phone number and a star rating.

Press **More Information** to see a photo, a review, a list of services and facilities, the average room or meal price and the web address. This screen displays the point of interest icons.

For restaurants, cityseeker can provide information such as star rating, average cost, review, handicap access, hours of operation, and website address.

For hotels, cityseeker can provide information such as star rating, price category, review, check-in and checkout times, hotel service icons and website address. Hotel service icons include:

- Restaurant
- Business center
- Handicap facilities
- Laundry
- Refrigerator
- 24 hour room service
- Fitness center
- Internet access
- Pool
- Wi-Fi

Attractions include nearby landmarks, amusement parks, historic buildings and more. cityseeker can provide information such as star rating, reviews, hour of operation and admission price.

### **SiriusXM Traffic and Travel Link (If Equipped)**

SiriusXM Traffic and Travel Link is available on vehicles equipped with navigation and only in select markets. You must activate and subscribe to receive SiriusXM Traffic and Travel Link information. It helps you locate the best gas prices, find movie listings, get current traffic alerts, view the weather map, get accurate ski conditions and see current sports scores.

The system calculates a reasonable efficient route based on available speed limits, traffic, and road conditions. You may know a local short cut that is more efficient at a given time than the route provided by SYNC 3, but you should expect a slight difference in minutes or miles with the SYNC 3 route.

### **Michelin Travel Guide (If Equipped)**

The Michelin travel guide is a service which provides additional information about certain places of interest, for example restaurants, hotels and tourist sites. Points of interest that have Michelin travel guide information display a button to show you more information. Push the button to see the additional information. If you have paired your phone with the system, you can press the phone button to directly establish a call with the selected point of interest.

## Navigation Map Accuracy and Updates

HERE is the digital map provider for the navigation application. If you find map data errors, you may report them directly to HERE by going to [www.here.com](http://www.here.com). HERE evaluates all reported map errors and responds with the result of their investigation by e-mail.

The navigation system map data may contain inaccurate or incomplete information due to the passage of time, changing circumstances, sources used and the nature of collecting comprehensive geographic data, any of which may lead to incorrect results. Inaccurate speed limit information, turn restrictions and other road attributes may affect the determined route and associated guidance

Annual navigation map updates are available for purchase through your dealership. Depending on your purchase agreement, you might be eligible for free Map update. You can choose to download the Map data update onto a USB, order a USB, or use Wi-Fi to deliver automatic updates. To update your Map data over Wi-Fi, your vehicle must be connected to a Wi-Fi access point. Map Data files are large, so it is highly recommended to perform the update when free Wi-Fi is available otherwise high data rates may apply. For USB updates, free map update eligibility, and other details, contact dealers at 1-866-462-8837 in the United States and Canada or 01-800-557-5539 in Mexico or visit our local website for more information.

## ELECTRIC VEHICLE INFORMATION

### Power Flow



The power flow information for your hybrid vehicle is available through the home screen or under Apps

### Vehicle Operational States

Power will flow to or from the front and rear wheels depending on operational state and drive conditions.

- **Idling:** The vehicle is running and in Park (P). The engine and/or the high voltage battery are on.
- **Electric Driving:** The vehicle is running and in Drive (D) or Neutral (N). The high voltage battery provides power to the wheels.
- **Hybrid Driving:** The vehicle is running and in Drive (D) or Neutral (N). The engine and the high voltage battery provide power to the wheels.
- **Engine Driving:** The vehicle is running and in Drive (D) or Neutral (N). The engine provides power to the wheels.
- **Regenerative Braking:** The vehicle is running in Drive gear and is slowing down. Power captured by the regenerative braking system is sent back to the high voltage battery.

### Engine On Due To

The following conditions help to explain why the engine is on, and what you can do to allow all electric operation.

## SYNC™ 3 (If Equipped)

- **Drive Power:** The engine is on due to accelerator pedal pressure or speed control activation. Reduce pressure on the accelerator pedal or switch off the speed control to return to full electric mode.
- **High Speed:** The engine is on because the vehicle speed exceeds the level for full electric operation. Reduce the speed to return to electric operation.
- **Heater Setting:** The engine is on because of the heater setting. Reduce or turn off the heater setting to return to electric operation.
- **Neutral Gear:** The engine is on because the vehicle is in Neutral (N). Shift out of neutral gear to return to electric operation.
- **Engine Cold:** The engine is on because it is cold. The vehicle returns to electric operation once the engine is sufficiently warm.
- **Battery Charging:** The engine is on to charge the high-voltage battery. The vehicle returns to electric operation once the battery is charged.
- **Low Gear:** The engine is on because the vehicle is in low gear. Shift out of low gear to return to electric operation.
- **Normal Operation:** The engine is on to optimize vehicle operation. The vehicle returns to electric operation when possible.
- **Engine Braking Active:** The engine is on to provide increased powertrain braking. This can occur when you turn on the grade assist feature, when speed control is on or when driving with your foot off the accelerator pedal. Turning off grade assist or speed control may allow the vehicle to return to electric operation.
- **Battery Temperature:** The engine is on due to high or low high-voltage battery temperature. This is a normal operating condition. The vehicle returns to electric operation when possible.
- **Drive Mode:** The engine is on due to the drive mode selection. Select an appropriate drive mode for electric only operation.

### APPS

The system allows you interact with select mobile apps while keeping your eyes on the road. Voice commands, your steering wheel buttons, or a quick tap on your touchscreen give you advanced control of compatible mobile apps. You can also stream your favorite music or podcasts, share your time of arrival with friends, and keep connected safely.

When you start an app through the system for the first time, you could be asked to grant certain permissions. You can review and change the permissions that you have granted at any time when your vehicle is not moving. We recommend that you check your data plan before using your apps through the system. Using them could result in additional charges. We also recommend that you check the app provider's terms and conditions and privacy policy before using their app. Make sure that you have an active account for apps that you want to use through the system. Some apps will work with no setup. Others require you to configure some personal settings before you can use them.

**Note:** For more information about available apps, visit [catalog.ford.com](http://catalog.ford.com).

### Using Apps on an iOS Device



Select the apps option on the feature bar.

## SYNC™ 3 (If Equipped)

1. If your device is connected via USB, switch Apple CarPlay off. See **Phone** (page 408).
2. Connect your device to a USB port or pair and connect using Bluetooth.
3. If prompted to enable CarPlay, select **Disable**.
4. Start the apps on your device that you want to use through SYNC.

**Note:** If you close the apps on your device, you will not be able to use them through the system.

5. Select the app that you want to use on the touchscreen.

**Note:** Connect your device to a USB port if you want to use a navigation app. When using a navigation app, keep your device unlocked and the app open.

### Using Apps on an Android Device



Select the apps option on the feature bar.

1. If your device is connected via USB, switch Android Auto off. See **Phone** (page 408).
2. Pair your device. See **Phone** (page 408).
3. Start the apps on your device that you want to use through SYNC.

**Note:** If you close the apps on your device, you will not be able to use them through the system.

4. Select **Find Mobile Apps**.

**Note:** The system searches and connects to compatible apps that are running on your device.

5. Select the app that you want to use on the touchscreen.

**Note:** Mobile Apps on your device use the USB port to establish a connection with SYNC. Some devices may lose the ability to play music over USB when Mobile Apps are enabled.

### Using Mobile Navigation on an Android Device

1. Connect your device to a USB port.
2. Switch Android Auto off. See **Phone** (page 408).
3. Switch on **Enable Mobile Apps via USB** in the Mobile Apps Settings tile.
4. Select the apps option on the feature bar.
5. Select the navigation app that you want to use on the touchscreen.

**Note:** When using a navigation app, keep your device unlocked and the app open.

### SiriusXM Traffic and Travel Link (If Equipped)



**WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

**Note:** SiriusXM Traffic and Travel Link may not be available in all markets.

**Note:** In order to use SiriusXM Traffic and Travel Link, your vehicle must have navigation.

## SYNC™ 3 (If Equipped)

**Note:** A paid subscription is required to access and use these features. Go to [www.siriusxm.com/travellink](http://www.siriusxm.com/travellink) for more information.

**Note:** Visit [www.siriusxm.com/traffic](http://www.siriusxm.com/traffic) and click on Coverage map and details for a complete listing of all traffic areas covered by SiriusXM Traffic and Travel Link.

**Note:** Neither Sirius nor Ford is responsible for any errors or inaccuracies in the SiriusXM Traffic and Travel Link services or its use in vehicles.

When you subscribe to SiriusXM Traffic and Travel Link, it can help you locate the best gas prices, find movie listings, get current traffic alerts, view the current weather map, get accurate ski conditions and see scores to current sports games.

Menu Item	Action and Description	
Traffic on Route	Touch these buttons to identify traffic incidents on your route, near your vehicle's current location or near any of your favorite places, if programmed.	
Traffic Nearby		
Fuel Prices	Touch this button to view fuel prices at stations close to your vehicle's location or on an active navigation route.	
Movie Listings	Touch this button to view nearby movie theaters and their show times, if available.	
Weather	Touch this button to view the nearby weather, current weather, or the five-day forecast for the chosen area.	
	Map	Select to see the weather map, which can show storms, radar information, charts and winds.
	Area	Select to choose from a listing of weather locations.
Sports Info	Touch this button to view scores and schedules from a variety of sports. You can also save up to 10 favorite teams for easier access. The score automatically refreshes when a game is in progress.	
Ski Conditions	Touch this button to view ski conditions for a specific area.	

## SETTINGS



Press the button to enter the settings menu.



Once you select a tile, press the button next to a menu item to view an explanation of the feature or setting.

### Sound

Select this tile to adjust the sound settings.

## Clock

Select this tile to adjust the clock settings.

## Bluetooth®

Select this tile to switch **Bluetooth®** on and off and adjust the settings.

## Phone

Select this tile to connect, disconnect, and manage the connected device settings.

## Audio

Select this tile to adjust the audio settings.

## Driver Assist (If Equipped)

Select this tile to adjust Driver Assist features like Parking Aids, Lane Keeping System, Pedestrian Detection, and Auto-Start-Stop.

## Vehicle

Select this tile to adjust vehicle settings like windows, alarm, lighting, and MyKey settings.

## FordPass (If Equipped)

Select this tile to adjust the FordPass settings.

## General

Select this tile to adjust settings like language, measurement units, or to reset the system.

## 911 Assist (If Equipped)

Select this tile to switch 911 Assist on and off.

## Automatic Updates

Select this tile to adjust the automatic update settings.

## Mobile Apps

Select this tile to adjust permissions, enable, disable, and update mobile apps.

## Display

Select this tile to adjust display settings like brightness and auto dim.

## Charge Settings (If Equipped)

Select this tile to adjust the electric vehicle charge settings.

## Voice Control

Select this tile to adjust voice control settings like command confirmations and displayed lists.

## Navigation (If Equipped)

Select this tile to adjust navigation settings like map preferences and route guidance.

## Seats (If Equipped)

Select this tile to adjust the lumbar function and massage function of your multi contour seats.

## Message Center (If Equipped)

Select this tile to view vehicle messages.

## Personal Profiles (If Equipped)

Select this tile to adjust recalled memory features when using personal profiles.

## Valet Mode (If Equipped)

Select this tile to enable and disable valet mode.

## Ambient Lighting (If Equipped)

Select this tile to change the color or intensity of the interior lighting.

## SYNC™ 3 TROUBLESHOOTING

### Voice Recognition

Symptom	Possible Cause and Resolution
The system does not understand what I am saying.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- You might not be using supported voice commands.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• See <b>Using Voice Recognition</b> (page 391).</li> <li>• For a complete list of voice commands, refer to our website.</li> </ul> </li> <li>- You might be speaking too soon.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Wait for the voice prompt before you speak.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
The system does not understand the name of a track or artist.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Device limitation. <b>Bluetooth®</b> does not support voice commands.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Connect your device to a USB port.</li> <li>• If you have an iOS device, press and hold the voice control button on the steering wheel to use Siri to play specific tracks.</li> </ul> </li> <li>- You might not be using supported voice commands.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• See <b>Using Voice Recognition</b> (page 391).</li> <li>• For a complete list of voice commands, refer to our website.</li> </ul> </li> <li>- You might not be saying the name exactly as it appears on your device.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Say the name of the track or artist exactly as it appears on your device. Spell out any abbreviations in the name.</li> </ul> </li> <li>- The name contains special characters, for example *, - or +.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Rename the files on your device or use the touchscreen to select and play the track.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
The system does not understand the name of a contact in the phonebook on my device and calls the wrong contact.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- You might not be saying the name exactly as it appears on your device.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Say the first and last name of the contact exactly as it appears on your device. Spell out any abbreviations in the name.</li> </ul> </li> <li>- The name contains special characters, for example *, - or +.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Rename the contact on your device or use the touchscreen to select and call the contact.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>

## SYNCTM 3 (If Equipped)

Symptom	Possible Cause and Resolution
The system does not understand certain names of contacts in the phonebook on my device.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>– You might not be saying the name exactly as it appears on your device.<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Say the first and last name of the contact exactly as it appears on your device. The system applies phonetic pronunciation rules of the selected language to the names of contacts in the phonebook on your device. Select the name of the contact on the touchscreen and use the Hear it option to get an idea of how the system expects you to pronounce it.</li></ul></li></ul>
The system voice prompts and the pronunciation of some words do not seem to be very accurate.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>– Device limitation.<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• The system uses text-to-speech technology and uses a synthetically generated voice rather than pre-recorded human voice.</li></ul></li></ul>

### USB and Bluetooth® Audio

Symptom	Possible Cause and Resolution
I cannot connect my device.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>– Device malfunction.<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Disconnect your device. Switch your device off and on to reset it and try again.</li></ul></li><li>– Cable connection issue.<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Correctly connect the cable to your device and the vehicle USB port.</li></ul></li><li>– Incompatible cable.<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Use the cable recommended by the manufacturer of your device.</li></ul></li></ul>



## SYNC™ 3 (If Equipped)

Symptom	Possible Cause and Resolution
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Incorrect device settings. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Make sure that your device does not have an auto-install program or active security settings.</li> <li>• Check that your device is not set only to charge.</li> </ul> </li> <li>– Device lock screen enabled. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Unlock your device before connecting it.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
The system does not recognize my device.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Device limitation. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Do not leave your device in your vehicle during very hot or very cold weather conditions.</li> </ul> </li> <li>– Cable connection issue. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Correctly connect the cable to your device and the vehicle USB port.</li> </ul> </li> <li>– Incompatible cable. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Use the cable recommended by the manufacturer of your device.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
The system does not understand the name of a track or artist.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Device limitation. <b>Bluetooth®</b> does not support voice commands. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Connect your device to a USB port.</li> <li>• If you have an iOS device, press and hold the voice control button on the steering wheel to use Siri to play specific tracks.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
I cannot stream audio from my <b>Bluetooth®</b> device.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Incompatible device. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Check the compatibility of your device on our website.</li> </ul> </li> <li>– Device not connected. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Pair your device. See <b>Phone</b> (page 408).</li> </ul> </li> <li>– Media player not running. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Start the media player on your device.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
The system does not recognize the music on my device.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Missing or incorrect audio file metadata, for example artist, song title, album or genre. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Repair the files on your device.</li> </ul> </li> <li>– Corrupt files. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Repair the files on your device.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>

## SYNC™ 3 (If Equipped)

Symptom	Possible Cause and Resolution
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Copyright-protected files.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Use a device that contains files that are not copyright protected.</li> </ul> </li> <li>– Unsupported file format.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Repair or convert the files to a supported format. See <b>Entertainment</b> (page 398).</li> </ul> </li> <li>– Device indexing required.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Re-index your device. See <b>Settings</b> (page 418).</li> </ul> </li> <li>– Device lock screen enabled.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Unlock your device before connecting it.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
Sometimes I cannot hear a track playing on my device.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Device malfunction.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Disconnect your device. Switch your device off and on to reset it and try again.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
When I disconnect my iOS device the audio volume is set to maximum.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Device limitation.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Turn the volume down on your device.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
The system does not play the tracks on my USB drive in the correct order.	<p>If the system does not play the tracks on your USB device in the correct order, the following information could help:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– If you are selecting USB as the audio source when the system is still indexing, SYNC plays tracks sorted alphabetically by file name in the root directory.</li> <li>– If you are selecting USB as the audio source after the system has finished indexing, SYNC plays all tracks sorted alphabetically by the title in the ID3 tag regardless of where they are located. SYNC uses the file name if the title in the ID3 tag does not exist.</li> <li>– If you are selecting the option to play all tracks from the browsing menu, SYNC plays all tracks sorted alphabetically by the title in the ID3 tag regardless of where they are located. SYNC uses the file name if the title in the ID3 tag does not exist.</li> <li>– If you are selecting a track when using the explore device option, SYNC plays tracks sorted alphabetically by file name in the folder you have selected. SYNC then plays all tracks in any subfolders in the folder you have selected.</li> </ul>

## SYNC™ 3 (If Equipped)

### Phone

Symptom	Possible Cause and Resolution
During a call, I can hear excessive background noise.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Incorrect cell phone settings.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Check and adjust the audio settings on your cell phone. Refer to your cell phone's user manual.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
During a call, I can hear the other person but they cannot hear me.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Cell phone malfunction.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Switch your cell phone on and off, and vehicle <b>Bluetooth®</b> on and off and try again.</li> </ul> </li> <li>– Cell phone microphone muted.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Unmute your cell phone microphone.</li> </ul> </li> <li>– Privacy mode is enabled.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Switch off privacy mode.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
During a call, I cannot hear the other person and they cannot hear me.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– System restart required.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Switch the ignition off and open the door. Close the door and lock the vehicle. Wait until the touchscreen is off and any illuminated USB ports are not illuminated. Unlock the vehicle, switch the ignition on and try again.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
I cannot download a phone-book.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Incompatible cell phone.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Check the compatibility of your cell phone on our website.</li> </ul> </li> <li>– Incorrect cell phone settings.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Allow the system to retrieve contacts from your cell phone. Refer to your cell phone's user manual.</li> </ul> </li> <li>– Incorrect system settings.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Switch automatic phonebook download on. See <b>Settings</b> (page 418).</li> </ul> </li> <li>– Cell phone malfunction.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Switch your cell phone off and on to reset it and try again.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>

## SYNC™ 3 (If Equipped)

Symptom	Possible Cause and Resolution
<p>A message displays suggesting that my phonebook has downloaded but it is empty or it has missing contacts.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Incorrect cell phone settings.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Allow the system to retrieve contacts from your cell phone. Refer to your cell phone's user manual.</li> <li>• Check the location of the missing contacts on your cell phone. If they are stored on the SIM card, move them to the cell phone memory.</li> </ul> </li> <li>– Incorrect system settings.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Switch automatic phonebook download on. See <b>Settings</b> (page 418).</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
<p>I cannot connect my cell phone.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Incompatible cell phone.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Check the compatibility of your cell phone on our website.</li> </ul> </li> <li>– Cell phone malfunction.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Switch your cell phone off and on to reset it and try again.</li> <li>• Install the latest cell phone firmware.</li> <li>• Delete your device from the system and delete SYNC from your device and try again.</li> <li>• Switch automatic phonebook download off. See <b>Settings</b> (page 418).</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
<p>Text messaging does not work.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– You might not have switched on text message notifications.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Switch text message notifications on. See <b>Phone</b> (page 408).</li> </ul> </li> <li>– Incompatible cell phone.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Check the compatibility of your cell phone on our website.</li> </ul> </li> <li>– Cell phone malfunction.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Switch your cell phone off and on to reset it and try again.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
<p>I cannot hear text messages.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Device message sharing is not enabled.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Check the permissions on your device to ensure text message sharing is enabled.</li> </ul> </li> <li>– Incompatible cell phone.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Check the compatibility of your cell phone on our website.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>

# SYNC™ 3 (If Equipped)

## Navigation (If Equipped)

Symptom	Possible Cause and Resolution
I cannot enter a street name when I am abroad.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>- Incorrect entry method.<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Enter the street name with the country.</li></ul></li></ul>
The system does not recognize coordinates.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>- Using the wrong coordinates format.<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Use the format ##. #####, ##. ##### (for N/S, E/W). Add a minus before coordinates if the direction is West and keep a positive value if the direction is East, for example 12.5412 means East and -12.5412 means West.</li></ul></li></ul>

# SYNC™ 3 (If Equipped)

## Apps

Symptom	Possible Cause and Resolution
The system cannot find any apps.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>– Incompatible device.<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• You need an Android device with OS 4.3 or higher or an iOS device with iOS 8.0 or higher. Pair and connect your Android device to find compatible apps. Connect your iOS device to a USB port or pair and connect using <b>Bluetooth®</b>.</li></ul></li></ul>
I have a compatible device and it is correctly connected but the system still cannot find any apps.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>– Compatible apps are not installed on your device.<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Download and install the latest version of the app.</li></ul></li><li>– Compatible apps are not running on your device.<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Start the apps to allow the system to find them and make sure you sign in to any apps if required.</li></ul></li><li>– Incorrect app settings.<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Check and adjust the app settings on your device and allow SYNC to access the app if required.</li></ul></li></ul>
I have a compatible device, it is correctly connected and my apps are running but the system still cannot find any apps.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>– Apps failed to fully close.<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Restart the apps and try again.</li><li>• If you have an Android device with apps that have an exit or quit option, use this and then restart the apps. Alternatively, use the force stop option in the settings menu on your device.</li><li>• If you have an iOS device with iOS 8.0 or higher, tap the home button on your device twice and then swipe the app upward to close it.</li></ul></li></ul>
I have an Android device that is correctly connected, I have restarted my apps and they are running but the system still cannot find them.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>– An issue on some older versions of the Android operating system could result in apps not being found.<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Switch <b>Bluetooth®</b> off and on again to force the system to reconnect to your device.</li></ul></li></ul>

## SYNC™ 3 (If Equipped)

Symptom	Possible Cause and Resolution
I have an iOS device that is correctly connected, I have restarted my apps and they are running but the system still cannot find them.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>– Cable connection issue.<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Disconnect the cable from your device, wait for a moment and then connect it again to force the system to reconnect to your device.</li></ul></li></ul>
I have an Android device running a media app which the system has found but I cannot hear the sound or the sound is very quiet.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>– Device volume is low.<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Turn the volume up on your device.</li></ul></li></ul>
I have an Android device running a number of compatible apps but the system cannot find all of them.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>– Device limitation. If you have more apps running on your device than the number of available <b>Bluetooth®</b> links, the system cannot find all of them.<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Close some of the apps to allow the system to find those that you want to use.</li></ul></li></ul>

## SYNCTM 3 (If Equipped)

### Wi-Fi Connectivity

Symptom	Possible Cause and Resolution
I cannot connect to a Wi-Fi network.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>– Password error.<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Enter the correct network password.</li></ul></li><li>– Weak network signal.<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Move your vehicle closer to the Wi-Fi hotspot or to a place where the network signal is not obstructed.</li></ul></li><li>– Multiple access points in range with the same SSID.<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Use a unique name for your SSID. Do not use the default name unless it contains a unique identifier, for example as part of the MAC address.</li></ul></li></ul>
The Wi-Fi connection disconnects after successful connection.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>– Weak network signal.<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Move your vehicle closer to the Wi-Fi hotspot or to a place where the network signal is not obstructed.</li></ul></li></ul>
I am close to a Wi-Fi hotspot but the network signal strength is weak.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>– Obstructed network signal.<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• If your vehicle has a heated windshield, position your vehicle so that the windshield is not facing the Wi-Fi hotspot.</li><li>• If your vehicle has metallic tinting on the windows but not on the windshield, position your vehicle so that the windshield is facing the Wi-Fi hotspot or open the windows that are facing the hotspot.</li><li>• If your vehicle has metallic tinting on the windows and the windshield, open the windows that are facing the hotspot.</li><li>• If your vehicle is in a garage and you have the garage door closed, open the garage door.</li></ul></li></ul>
I cannot see a network in the list of available networks that I expect to see.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>– Hidden network.<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Make the network visible and try again.</li></ul></li></ul>



## SYNC™ 3 (If Equipped)

Symptom	Possible Cause and Resolution
I cannot see SYNC when I search for Wi-Fi networks on my cell phone or other device.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– System limitation.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• SYNC does not provide a Wi-Fi hotspot at this time.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
Software downloads take too long.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Weak network signal                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Move your vehicle closer to the Wi-Fi hotspot or to a place where the network signal is not obstructed.</li> </ul> </li> <li>– Wi-Fi hotspot in high demand or has a slow Internet connection.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Use a more reliable Wi-Fi hotspot.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
The system seems to connect to a Wi-Fi network and the signal strength is excellent but the software does not update.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– No software update available.</li> <li>– Wi-Fi network requires a subscription or acceptance of terms and conditions.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Test the connection using another device. If the network requires a subscription or acceptance of terms and conditions, contact the network service provider.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>

## Personal Profiles (If Equipped)

Symptom	Possible Cause and Resolution
I cannot create a profile.	You might not have set up Personal Profiles.
	You might have entered an invalid profile.
	You might not have selected a memory button when prompted.
	You might not have the ignition on or in park (P), or you shifted out park (P) when creating a profile.
	Personal Profiles has been switched off.
I cannot link a remote control.	You might not have selected the lock button on the remote control.
	The remote control selected was already associated with another profile and the system declined to overwrite.
	The system performed a profile recall when linking a remote control.

## SYNCTM 3 (If Equipped)

<b>Symptom</b>	<b>Possible Cause and Resolution</b>
	You might not have the ignition on or in park (P), or you shifted out park (P) when creating a profile.
	You might be using the old linking method.
My personalized settings do not save.	Personal Profiles does not support your unsaved settings.
	A different personal profile is active.
	Another user changed the settings for the wrong personal profile.
My profile will not recall.	You might not have created a personal profile.
	Personal Profiles is turned off.
	The profile you requested is already active.
	You might not have linked the memory button you are using to a profile.
	You might not have linked the remote control you are using to a profile.
	You might be using the wrong remote control.
	You might be pressing a button other than the unlock or remote start on a linked remote control.
	You might have deleted the personal profile.
My preset positions recall, but my profile does not.	Personal Profiles is turned off.
My profile recalls but my preset positions do not.	The vehicle is in motion.
	The preset positions are the same as the guest or previously active profile.
I lost a remote control.	Unlink and relink your remote control in the Personal Profiles menu. You may need to see your authorized dealer.
I lost all profiles.	You might have erased and reprogrammed the remote controls. This could happen if you let a dealership add a new remote control to replace a lost one.
	Someone performed a master reset.

## Resetting the System

1. Simultaneously press and hold the seek up and the audio unit power buttons until the screen goes black.
2. Wait three minutes to allow the system to complete the reset.
3. Press the audio unit power button to switch the system on.

**Note:** *You can reset the system to restore functionality that has stopped working. The system reset is designed to restore functionality and not delete any data that you have stored.*

## Additional Information and Assistance

For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer or refer to our website.

# Accessories

---

For a complete listing of the accessories that are available for your vehicle, please contact your authorized dealer or visit the online store web site:

<b>Web Address (United States)</b>
<a href="http://www.Accessories.Ford.com">www.Accessories.Ford.com</a>

<b>Web Address (Canada)</b>
<a href="http://www.Accessories.Ford.ca">www.Accessories.Ford.ca</a>

We will repair or replace any properly authorized dealer-installed Ford Original Accessory found to be defective in factory-supplied materials or workmanship during the warranty period, as well as any component damaged by the defective accessories.

We will warrant your Ford Original Accessory through the warranty that provides the greatest benefit:

- 24 months, unlimited mileage.
- The remainder of your new vehicle limited warranty.

Contact an authorized dealer for details and a copy of the warranty.

Ford Licensed Accessories are the accessory manufacturer's designs. The manufacturer develops and therefore warrants Ford Licensed Accessories, and does not design or test these accessories to Ford Motor Company engineering requirements. Contact an authorized Ford dealer for the manufacturer's limited warranty details, and request a copy of the Ford Licensed Accessories product limited warranty from the accessory manufacturer.

For maximum vehicle performance, keep the following information in mind when adding accessories or equipment to your vehicle:

- When adding accessories, equipment, passengers and luggage to your vehicle, do not exceed the total weight capacity of the vehicle or of the front or rear axle (GVWR or GAWR as indicated on the Safety Compliance Certification label). Ask an authorized dealer for specific weight information.
- The Federal Communications Commission (FCC) and Canadian Radio Telecommunications Commission (CRTC) regulate the use of mobile communications systems that are equipped with radio transmitters, for example two-way radios, telephones and theft alarms. Any such equipment installed in your vehicle should comply with Federal Communications Commission (FCC) and Canadian Radio Telecommunications Commission (CRTC) regulations and should be installed only by an authorized dealer.
- An authorized dealer needs to install mobile communications systems. Improper installation may harm the operation of your vehicle, particularly if the manufacturer did not design the mobile communication system specifically for automotive use.
- If you or an authorized Ford dealer add any non-Ford electrical or electronic accessories or components to your vehicle, you may adversely affect battery performance and durability. In addition, you may also adversely affect the performance of other electrical systems in the vehicle.

# Ford Protect

---

## WHAT IS FORD PROTECT

Protect yourself from the rising cost of vehicle repairs with a Ford Protect extended service plan.

### **Ford Protect Extended Service Plans - United States Only**

Ford Protect extended service plans mean peace of mind. Extended service plans are backed by Ford Motor Company, and provide more protection beyond the New Vehicle Limited Warranty coverage. When you visit your Ford Dealer, insist on the Ford Protect extended service plan.

### **Ford Protect Can Quickly Pay for Itself**

One trip to the service center could easily exceed the price of your Ford Protect extended service plan. With the Ford Protect extended service plan, you minimize your risk for unexpected repair bills and rising repair costs.

### **Up to 1,000+ Covered Vehicle Components**

There are four mechanical Ford Protect extended service plans with different levels of coverage. Ask your authorized dealer for details.

1. PremiumCARE - Our most comprehensive coverage. With over 1,000 covered components, this plan is so complete it is probably easier to list what is not covered.
2. ExtraCARE - Covers 113 components, and includes many high-tech items.
3. BaseCARE - Covers 84 components.
4. PowertrainCARE - Covers 29 critical components.

Ford Protect extended service plans are honored by all authorized Ford dealers in the United States, Canada and Mexico.

That means you get:

- Reliable, quality service at any Ford or Lincoln dealership.
- Repairs performed by factory trained technicians, using genuine parts.

### **Rental Car Reimbursement**

#### ***First Day Rental Benefit***

If you bring your car into your dealer for service, we will give you a rental vehicle to use for the day.

#### ***Extended Rental Benefits***

If your vehicle is kept overnight for covered repairs, you are eligible for rental car coverage, warranty repairs, and field service actions.

### **Roadside Assistance**

Exclusive 24/7 roadside assistance, including:

- Towing, flat-tire change and battery jump starts.
- Out of fuel and lock-out assistance.
- Travel expense reimbursement for lodging, meals and rental car.
- Assistance for taxi, shuttle, rental car coverage or other transportation.

### **Transferable Coverage**

If you sell your vehicle before your Ford Protect extended service plan coverage expires, you can transfer any remaining coverage to the new owner. This should give you and your potential buyer peace of mind.

# Ford Protect

---

## Less Cost to Properly Maintain Your Vehicle

The Ford Protect extended service plan also offers a Premium Maintenance Plan that covers all scheduled maintenance, and selected wear items. The coverage is prepaid, so you never have to worry about the cost of your vehicle's maintenance.

Covered maintenance includes:

- Windshield wiper blades.
- Spark plugs.
- The clutch disc (if equipped).
- Brake pads and linings.
- Shock absorbers.
- Struts.
- Engine belts.
- Engine coolant hoses, clamps and o-rings.
- Diesel exhaust fluid replenishment (if equipped).
- Cabin air filter replacement every 20,000 mi (32,000 km) for electric vehicles only.

## Interest Free Finance Options

Just a 5% down payment provides you with an affordable, no interest, no fee payment program allowing you all the security and benefits Ford Protect extended service plan has to offer while paying over time. You are pre-approved with no credit check or hassles. To learn more, call our Ford Protect extended service plan specialists at 800-367-3377.

Ford Protect Extended Service Plan  
P.O. Box 321067  
Detroit, MI 48232

## Ford Protect Extended Service Plan (Canada Only)

You can get more protection for your vehicle by purchasing a Ford Protect extended service plan. Ford Protect extended service plan is the only service contract backed by Ford Motor Company of Canada, Limited. Depending on the plan you purchase, Ford Protect extended service plan provides benefits such as:

- Rental reimbursement.
- Coverage for certain maintenance and wear items.
- Protection against repair costs after your New Vehicle Limited Warranty Coverage expires.
- Roadside Assistance benefits.

There are several Ford Protect extended service plans available in various time, distance and deductible combinations. Each plan is tailored to fit your own driving needs, including reimbursement for towing and rental. When you purchase Ford Protect extended service plan, you receive added peace-of-mind protection throughout Canada, the United States and Mexico, provided by a network of participating authorized Ford Motor Company dealers.

**Note:** *Repairs performed outside of Canada and the United States are not eligible for Ford Protect extended service plan coverage.*

This information is subject to change. Visit your local Ford of Canada dealer or [www.ford.ca](http://www.ford.ca) to find the Ford Protect extended service plan that is right for you.

# Scheduled Maintenance

---

## GENERAL MAINTENANCE INFORMATION

### Why Maintain Your Vehicle?

Carefully following the maintenance schedule helps protect against major repair expenses resulting from neglect or inadequate maintenance and may help to increase the value of your vehicle when you sell or trade it. Keep all receipts for completed maintenance with your vehicle.

It is important that you have your vehicle serviced at the proper times. These intervals serve two purposes: first is to maintain the reliability of your vehicle and the second is to keep the cost of owning your vehicle down.

It is your responsibility to have all scheduled maintenance performed and to make sure that the materials used meet the specifications identified in this owner's manual. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 355).

Failure to perform scheduled maintenance and regularly inspect your vehicle may result in vehicle damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

### Why Maintain Your Vehicle at Your Dealership?

#### Our Genuine Replacement Parts

Dealerships stock our parts and our authorized branded re-manufactured replacement parts. These parts meet or exceed our specifications. Parts installed at your dealership carry a nationwide 24-month or unlimited mile (kilometer) parts and labor limited warranty.

If you do not use our authorized parts they may not meet our specifications and could affect emissions compliance.

### Protecting Your Investment

Maintenance is an investment that pays dividends in the form of improved reliability, durability and resale value. To maintain the proper performance of your vehicle and its emission control systems, make sure you have scheduled maintenance performed at the designated intervals.

Your vehicle comes with the Intelligent Oil-Life Monitor system, a message appears in the information display at the proper oil change interval. This interval may be up to one year or 10,000 mi (16,000 km), hybrid vehicles could exceed 10,000 mi (16,000 km).

When the oil change message appears in the information display, it is time for an oil change. Make sure you perform the oil change within two weeks or 500 mi (800 km) of the message appearing. Make sure to reset the Intelligent Oil-Life Monitor after each oil change. See **Resetting the Engine Oil Change Reminder** (page 303).

If your information display resets prematurely or becomes inoperative, you should perform the oil change interval at six months or 5,000 mi (8,000 km) from your last oil change. Never exceed one year or 10,000 mi (16,000 km) between oil change intervals.

You can drive high performance vehicles in such a way that may lead to higher oil consumption including extended time at high engine speeds, high loads, engine braking, hard cornering maneuvers, track and off-road usage. Under these conditions, oil consumption of approximately 1 quart per 500 miles (1 liter per 800 km) is possible. Check the engine oil level at every refueling and adjust to maintain proper levels to avoid engine damage.

# Scheduled Maintenance

It is important to rely upon your dealership to properly diagnose and repair your vehicle.

We strongly recommend only using our genuine or our authorized re-manufactured replacement parts engineered for your vehicle.

## Additives and Chemicals

We do not recommend using chemicals or additives not approved by us as part of your vehicle's normal maintenance. Please consult your warranty information.

## Oils, Fluids and Flushing

In many cases, fluid discoloration is a normal operating characteristic and, by itself, does not necessarily indicate a concern or that the fluid needs to be changed. Have discolored fluids that also show signs of overheating or foreign material contamination checked immediately.

Make sure to change the vehicle's oils and fluids at the specified intervals or in conjunction with a repair. Flushing is a viable way to change fluid for many vehicle sub-systems during scheduled maintenance. It is critical that systems are flushed only with new fluid that is the same as that required to fill and operate the system or using our approved flushing chemical.

## Owner Checks and Services

Make sure you perform the following basic maintenance checks and inspections.

<b>Check Every Month</b>
The air filter restriction gauge. <sup>1</sup>
The engine oil level.
Function of all interior and the exterior lights.
The tires including the spare for wear and proper pressure.
The windshield washer fluid level.
The fuel and water separator. Drain if necessary or if indicated by the information display. <sup>1</sup>
The holes and slots in the tail pipe to make sure they are functional and clear of debris. <sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Diesel vehicles only.



# Scheduled Maintenance

<b>Check Every Six Months</b>
The battery connections. Clean if necessary.
The body and door drain holes for obstructions. Clean if necessary.
The cooling system fluid level and the coolant system strength.
The door weatherstrips for wear. Lubricate if necessary.
The hinges, latches and outside locks for proper operation. Lubricate if necessary.
The parking brake for proper operation.
The seatbelts and seat latches for wear and function.
Safety warning lamps, brake, ABS, airbag and seatbelt for operation.
The washer spray and wiper operation. Clean or replace blades as necessary.

## Multi-Point Inspection

It is important to have the systems on your vehicle regularly checked. This can help identify potential issues and prevent major problems. We recommend having the following multi-point inspection performed at every scheduled maintenance interval to help make sure your vehicle keeps running great.

<b>Multi-Point Inspection</b>	
Accessory drive belt or belts	Hazard warning system operation
Battery performance	Horn operation
Engine air filter	Radiator, cooler, heater and air conditioning hoses
Exhaust system	Suspension components for leaks or damage
Exterior lamps operation	Steering and linkage
Fluid levels <sup>1</sup> ; fill if necessary	Tires including the spare for wear and proper pressure <sup>2</sup>

# Scheduled Maintenance

Multi-Point Inspection	
For oil and fluid leaks	Windshield for cracks, chips or pits
Half-shaft dust boots	Washer spray and wiper operation

<sup>1</sup> Brake, coolant recovery reservoir, automatic transmission and window washer.

<sup>2</sup> If your vehicle has a temporary mobility kit, check the tire sealant expiration Use By date on the canister. Replace as needed.

Be sure to ask your dealership service advisor or technician about the multi-point vehicle inspection. It is a comprehensive way to perform a thorough inspection of your vehicle. Your checklist gives you immediate feedback on the overall condition of your vehicle.

Your vehicle lets you know when an oil change is due by displaying a message in the information display.

The following table provides examples of vehicle use and its impact on oil change intervals. It is a guideline only. Actual oil change intervals depend on several factors and generally decrease with severity of use.

## NORMAL SCHEDULED MAINTENANCE

### Oil Change Reminder

Your vehicle comes with an oil change reminder that determines when you should change the engine oil based on how you use your vehicle.

When to Expect the OIL CHANGE REQUIRED Message	
Interval <sup>1</sup>	Vehicle Use and Example
7,500–10,000 mi (12,000–16,000 km)	<b>Normal</b>
	Normal commuting with highway driving No, or moderate, load or towing Flat to moderately hilly roads No extended idling
5,000–7,500 mi (8,000–12,000 km)	<b>Severe</b>
	Moderate to heavy load or towing Mountainous or off-road conditions Extended idling Extended hot or cold operation

# Scheduled Maintenance

When to Expect the OIL CHANGE REQUIRED Message	
Interval <sup>1</sup>	Vehicle Use and Example
3,000–5,000 mi (5,000–8,000 km)	<b>Extreme</b>
	Maximum load or towing Extreme hot or cold operation Extended engine idling

<sup>1</sup> Hybrid vehicles may achieve longer distances between oil changes, but do not exceed the one year maximum oil change interval. Remaining oil life can be accessed through the information display. See **Resetting the Engine Oil Change Reminder** (page 303).

## Normal Maintenance Intervals

At Every Oil Change Interval as Indicated by the Information Display <sup>1</sup>
Change the engine oil and filter. <sup>2</sup>
Rotate the tires, inspect the tires, tire wear and measure the tread depth.
Perform a multi-point inspection, recommended.
Inspect the automatic transmission fluid level, if applicable with dipstick. Consult your dealer for requirements.
Inspect the brake pads, rotors, drums, brake linings, hoses and the parking brake.
Inspect the engine coolant level/strength and the hoses.
Inspect the exhaust system and heat shields.
Inspect the rear axle and U-joints - all-wheel drive.
Inspect the half-shaft boots.
Inspect the steering linkage, ball joints, suspension, tire-rod ends, driveshaft and the U-joints.
Inspect the wheels and related components for abnormal noise, wear, looseness or drag.

<sup>1</sup> Do not exceed one year or 10,000 mi (16,000 km) between service intervals.

<sup>2</sup> Reset the oil change reminder after engine oil and filter changes. See **Resetting the Engine Oil Change Reminder** (page 303).

# Scheduled Maintenance

<b>Brake Fluid Maintenance<sup>1</sup></b>	
Every 3 Years	Change the brake fluid. <sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Perform this maintenance item every 3 years. Do not exceed the designated time for the interval.

<sup>2</sup> Brake fluid servicing requires special equipment available at your authorized dealer.

<b>Other Maintenance Items<sup>1</sup></b>	
Every 20,000 mi (32,000 km)	Replace the cabin air filter.
Every 30,000 mi (48,000 km)	Replace the engine air filter.
Every 100,000 mi (160,000 km)	Replace the spark plugs.
	Inspect the accessory drive belt(s). <sup>2</sup>
Every 150,000 mi (240,000 km)	Change the automatic transmission fluid.
	Replace the accessory drive belt(s). <sup>3</sup>
At 200,000 mi (322,000 km)	Change the engine coolant. <sup>4</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Perform these maintenance items within 3,000 mi (4,800 km) of the last engine oil and filter change. Do not exceed the designated distance for the interval.

<sup>2</sup> After initial inspection, inspect every other oil change until replaced.

<sup>3</sup> If not replaced within the last 100,000 mi (160,000 km).

<sup>4</sup> Initial replacement at 10 years or 200,000 mi (322,000 km), then every five years or 100,000 mi (160,000 km).

# Scheduled Maintenance

## SPECIAL OPERATING CONDITIONS SCHEDULED MAINTENANCE

If you operate your vehicle **primarily** in any of the following conditions, you need to perform extra maintenance as indicated. If you operate your vehicle **occasionally** under any of these conditions, it is not necessary to perform the extra maintenance. For specific recommendations, see your dealership service advisor or technician.

Perform the services shown in the following tables when specified or within 3,000 mi (4,800 km) of the **OIL CHANGE REQUIRED** message appearing in the information display.

- **Example 1:** The **OIL CHANGE REQUIRED** message comes on at 28,751 mi (46,270 km). Perform the 30,000 mi (48,000 km) automatic transmission fluid replacement.
- **Example 2:** The **OIL CHANGE REQUIRED** message has **not** come on, but the odometer reads 30,000 mi (48,000 km) (for example, the Intelligent Oil-Life Monitor was reset at 25,000 mi (40,000 km)). Perform the engine air filter replacement.

Towing a Trailer or Using a Car-top Carrier	
As required	Change engine oil and filter as indicated by the information display and perform services listed in the Normal Scheduled Maintenance chart.
Inspect frequently, service as required	Inspect rear axle and U-joints (AWD).
Every 30,000 mi (48,000 km)	Change automatic transmission fluid.
Every 60,000 mi (96,000 km)	Replace spark plugs.

# Scheduled Maintenance

<b>Extensive Idling or Low-speed Driving for Long Distances, as in Heavy Commercial Use (Such as Delivery, Taxi, Patrol Car or Livery)</b>	
As required	Change engine oil and filter as indicated by the information display and perform services listed in the Normal Scheduled Maintenance chart.
Inspect frequently, service as required	Replace cabin air filter.
	Replace engine air filter.
Every 30,000 mi (48,000 km)	Change automatic transmission fluid.
Every 60,000 mi (96,000 km)	Replace spark plugs.

<b>Operating in Dusty or Sandy Conditions (Such as Unpaved or Dusty Roads)</b>	
Inspect frequently, service as required	Replace cabin air filter.
	Replace engine air filter.
Every 5,000 mi (8,000 km)	Inspect the wheels and related components for abnormal noise, wear, looseness or drag.
	Rotate tires, inspect tires for wear and measure tread depth.
Every 5,000 mi (8,000 km) or six months	Change engine oil and filter.
	Perform multi-point inspection.
Every 30,000 mi (48,000 km)	Change automatic transmission fluid.

<b>Exclusive Use of E85 (Flex Fuel Vehicles Only)</b>	
Every oil change	If ran exclusively on E85, fill the fuel tank full with regular unleaded fuel.

## Exceptions

There are several exceptions to the Normal Schedule:

# Scheduled Maintenance

---

## **California Fuel Filter Replacement**

If you register your vehicle in California, the California Air Resources Board has determined that the failure to perform this maintenance item does not nullify the emission warranty or limit recall liability before the completion of your vehicle's useful life. Ford Motor Company, however, urges you to have all recommended maintenance services performed at the specified intervals and to record all vehicle service.

## **Hot Climate Oil Change Intervals**

The normal oil change interval for vehicles operating in the Middle East, North Africa, Sub-Saharan Africa or locations with similar climates using an American Petroleum Institute (API) Certified for Gasoline Engines (Certification mark) oil of SM or SN quality is 3,000 mi (5,000 km).

If the available API SM or SN oils are not available, then the oil change interval is 2,000 mi (3,000 km).

## **Engine Air Filter and Cabin Air Filter Replacement**

The life of the engine air filter and cabin air filter is dependent on exposure to dusty and dirty conditions. Vehicles operated in these conditions require frequent inspection and replacement of the engine air filter and cabin air filter.

# Customer Information

## ROLLOVER WARNING



**WARNING:** Utility vehicles have a significantly higher rollover rate than other types of vehicles.



**WARNING:** Vehicles with a higher center of gravity (utility and four-wheel drive vehicles) handle differently than vehicles with a lower center of gravity (passenger cars). Avoid sharp turns, excessive speed and abrupt steering in these vehicles. Failure to drive cautiously increases the risk of losing control of your vehicle, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.



**WARNING:** In a rollover crash, an unbelted person is significantly more likely to die than a person wearing a seatbelt.



**WARNING:** Do not become overconfident in the ability of four-wheel drive vehicles. Although a four-wheel drive vehicle may accelerate better than a two-wheel drive vehicle in low traction situations, it won't stop any faster than two-wheel drive vehicles. Always drive at a safe speed.

Utility vehicles and trucks handle differently than passenger cars in the various driving conditions that are encountered on streets, highways and off-road. Utility vehicles and trucks are not designed for cornering at speeds as high as passenger cars any more than low-slung sports cars are designed to perform satisfactorily under off-road conditions.

## THE BETTER BUSINESS BUREAU AUTO LINE PROGRAM

Your satisfaction is important to Ford Motor Company and to your dealer. If a warranty concern has not been resolved using the three-step procedure outlined earlier in this chapter in the Getting the Services you need section, you may be eligible to participate in the BBB AUTO LINE program.

The BBB AUTO LINE program consists of two parts – mediation and arbitration. During mediation, a representative of the BBB will contact both you and Ford Motor Company to explore options for settlement of the claim. If an agreement is not reached during mediation or you do not want to participate in mediation, and if your claim is eligible, you may participate in the arbitration process. An arbitration hearing will be scheduled so that you can present your case in an informal setting before an impartial person. The arbitrator considers the testimony provided and makes a decision after the hearing.

Disputes submitted to the BBB AUTO LINE program are usually decided within 40 days after you file your claim with the BBB. You are not bound by the decision, and may reject the decision and proceed to court where all findings of the BBB Auto Line dispute, and decision, are admissible in the court action. Should you choose to accept the BBB AUTO LINE decision, Ford is then bound by the decision, and must comply with the decision within 30 days of receipt of your acceptance letter.

BBB AUTO LINE Application: Using the information that follows, please call or write to request a program application. You will be asked for your name and address, general information about your new vehicle, information about your warranty concerns, and any steps you have



## Customer Information

---

already taken to try to resolve them. A Customer Claim Form will be mailed that needs to be completed, signed and returned to the BBB along with proof of ownership. Upon receipt, the BBB reviews the claim for eligibility under the Program Summary Guidelines.

**You can get more information by calling BBB AUTO LINE at 1-800-955-5100, or writing to:**

**BBB AUTO LINE a Division of BBB National Programs, Inc.  
1676 International Drive, Suite 550  
McLean, VA 22102**

BBB AUTO LINE applications can also be requested by calling the Ford Motor Company Customer Relationship Center at 1-800-392-3673.

For additional information, refer to the Better Business Bureau website.

**Note:** *Ford Motor Company reserves the right to change eligibility limitations, modify procedures, or to discontinue this process at any time without notice and without obligation.*

### THE MEDIATION AND ARBITRATION PROGRAM

For vehicles delivered to authorized Canadian dealers. In those cases where you continue to feel that the efforts by Ford of Canada and the authorized dealer to resolve a factory-related vehicle service concern have been unsatisfactory, Ford of Canada participates in an impartial third party mediation/arbitration program administered by the Canadian Motor Vehicle Arbitration Plan (CAMVAP).

The CAMVAP program is a straightforward and relatively speedy alternative to resolve a disagreement when all other efforts to produce a settlement have failed. This procedure is without cost to you and is designed to eliminate the need for lengthy and expensive legal proceedings.

In the CAMVAP program, impartial third-party arbitrators conduct hearings at mutually convenient times and places in an informal environment. These impartial arbitrators review the positions of the parties, make decisions and, when appropriate, render awards to resolve disputes. CAMVAP decisions are fast, fair, and final as the arbitrator's award is binding on both you and Ford of Canada.

CAMVAP services are available in all Canadian territories and provinces. For more information, without charge or obligation, call your CAMVAP Provincial Administrator directly at 1-800-207-0685 or visit [www.camvap.ca](http://www.camvap.ca).

### ORDERING A CANADIAN FRENCH OWNER'S MANUAL

You can obtain a French owner's manual from an authorized dealer or by contacting Helm, LLC at:

HELM, LLC  
47911 Halyard Drive, Suite 200  
Plymouth, Michigan 48170  
Attention: Customer Service

Call toll free: 1-800-782-4356

Monday-Friday 8:00 a.m. - 6:00 p.m. EST

For additional information, visit [www.helminc.com](http://www.helminc.com).

# Customer Information

---

## REPORTING SAFETY DEFECTS IN THE UNITED STATES

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) in addition to notifying Ford Motor Company.

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign. However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer, or Ford Motor Company.

To contact NHTSA, you may call the Vehicle Safety Hotline toll-free at 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153); go to [www.safercar.gov](http://www.safercar.gov); or write to:

Administrator

1200 New Jersey Avenue,  
Southeast

Washington, D.C. 20590

You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from [www.safercar.gov](http://www.safercar.gov).

## REPORTING SAFETY DEFECTS IN CANADA

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform Transport Canada and Ford of Canada.

Transport Canada Contact Information	
Website (English)	<a href="http://tc.canada.ca/recalls">http://tc.canada.ca/recalls</a>
Website (French)	<a href="http://tc.canada.ca/rappels">http://tc.canada.ca/rappels</a>
Phone	1-800-333-0510

Ford of Canada Contact Information	
Website	<a href="http://www.ford.ca">www.ford.ca</a>
Phone	1-800-565-3673

# Customer Information

---

## RADIO FREQUENCY CERTIFICATION LABELS

## BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM SENSORS

### Argentina



### Belarus



### Brazil



### Canada

Short Range Radar Sensor SRR3-B

IC ID: 4135A-SRR3B

# Customer Information

---

This device contains licence-exempt transmitter(s)/receiver(s) that comply with Innovation, Science and Economic Development Canada's licence-exempt RSS(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause interference.
2. This device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

Radiofrequency radiation exposure information:

This equipment complies with radiation exposure limits set forth for an uncontrolled environment. This equipment should be installed and operated with minimum distance of 8 in (20 cm) between the radiator and the body of any persons, user or bystander.

L'émetteur/récepteur exempt de licence contenu dans le présent appareil est conforme aux CNR d'Innovation, Sciences et Développement économique Canada applicables aux appareils radio exempts de licence. L'exploitation est autorisée aux deux conditions suivantes:

1. L'appareil ne doit pas produire de brouillage;
2. L'appareil doit accepter tout brouillage radioélectrique subi, même si le brouillage est susceptible d'en compromettre le fonctionnement.

Cet équipement est conforme aux limites d'exposition aux rayonnements établies pour un environnement non contrôlé. Cet équipement doit être installé et utilisé avec un minimum de 8 in (20 cm) de distance entre la source de rayonnement et votre corps.

## Djibouti

AGREE PAR LE MCPT (REPUBLIQUE DE DJIBOUTI)  
Numéro d'agrément : 240/MCPT/SG/16  
Date d'agrément : 23/05/2016

## European Union EU

CE

# Customer Information

---

## Ghana

NCA PRODUCT IDENTIFIER: 3R8-8M-7DF-231

## Mauritania

AGREE PAR L'ANE MAURITANIE  
Numéro d'agrément : 0727/ARE/2018  
Date d'agrément : 10/12/2019

## Jamaica

This product has been Type Approved  
by Jamaica: SMA - SRR3-B.

## Malaysia



RALM/24A/0715/S(15-2272)

## Mexico

IFETEL: RLVCSR15-0904

La operación de este equipo está sujeta a las siguientes dos condiciones:

- (1) es posible que este equipo o dispositivo no cause interferencia perjudicial y
- (2) este equipo o dispositivo debe aceptar cualquier interferencia, incluyendo la que pueda causar su operación no deseada.

## Moldova



# Customer Information

---

## Pakistan



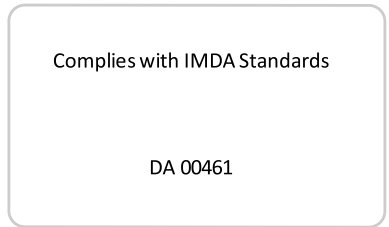
## Serbia



## Paraguay



## Singapore



## Russia



## South Africa



# Customer Information

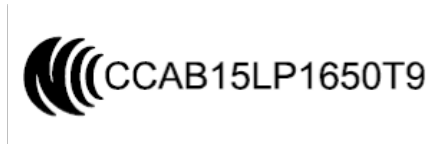
---

## South Korea



MSIP-CRM-8DC-SRR3B

## Taiwan, China



### 警語

經型式認證合格之低功率射頻電機，非經許可，公司、商號或使用者均不得擅自變更頻率、加大功率或變更原設計之特性及功能。

低功率射頻電機之使用不得影響飛航安全及干擾合法通信；經發現有干擾現象時，應立即停用，並改善至無干擾時方得繼續使用。

前項合法通信，指依電信法規定作業之無線電通信。低功率射頻電機須忍受合法通信或工業、科學及醫療用電波輻射性電機設備之干擾。

# Customer Information

---

## Ukraine



справжнім FDC. Automotive Distance Control Systems GmbH заявляє, що тип радіообладнання SRR3 - В відповідає технічному регламенту радіообладнання ;

повний текст декларації про відповідність доступний на веб-сайті за такою адресою :

<http://continental.automotive-approvals.com/>

## United Arab Emirates (U.A.E.)

TRA  
REGISTERED No:  
ER62934

DEALER No:  
DA40068

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

### CAUTION TO USERS

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

## United States of America

FCC ID: OAYSRR3B

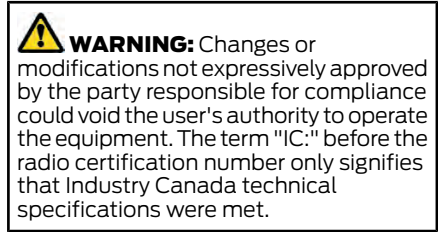


# Customer Information

## Vietnam



## Canada and United States of America



FCC ID: LXPP004

IC: 2298A-P004

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Innovation, Science and Economic Development Canada's licence-exempt RSS(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

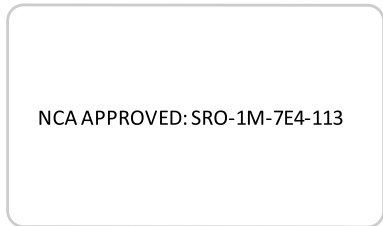
## Zambia



## Ghana

## BODY CONTROL MODULE

## Argentina



# Customer Information

---

## Mauritania

NCA APPROVED: SRO-1M-7E4-X4D

AGREE PAR L'ANE MAURITANIE  
Numéro d'agrément : 0801/ARE/2020  
Date d'agrément : 03/06/2020

## Jamaica

This product has been Type Approved by Jamaica:  
SMA – P004R.

AGREE PAR L'ANE MAURITANIE  
Numéro d'agrément : 0768/ARE/2020  
Date d'agrément : 11/03/2020

## Morocco

This product has been Type Approved by Jamaica:  
SMA – P004.

AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC  
Numéro d'agrément : MR 24200 ANRT 2020  
Date d'agrément : 27/05/2020

# Customer Information

---

## Singapore

AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC  
Numéro d'agrément : MR 23513 ANRT 2020  
Date d'agrément : 24/03/2020

Complies with IMDA Standards

DA 00461

## Paraguay



2020-07-I-0405

## Serbia



## South Africa



# Customer Information

---

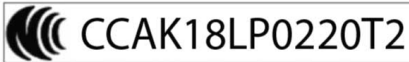
## South Korea



TRA  
REGISTERED NO: ER80748/20  
DEALER NO: DA83047/19

R-R-175-P005

## Taiwan, China



## Zambia



## United Arab Emirates (U.A.E.)

TRA  
REGISTERED NO: ER81344/20  
DEALER NO: DA88113/20

## CRUISE CONTROL MODULE (if Equipped)

## Argentina



# Customer Information

---

## Brazil



## Jamaica

This product has been Type Approved by Jamaica: SMA - L2C0065TR.

## Malaysia



RALM/61A/0318/S(18-0852)

## Mauritania

AGREE PAR L'ANEMAURITANIE  
Numéro d'agrément: 0409/ARE/2017  
Date d'agrément: 12/04/2017

## Djibouti

AGREE PAR LE MCPT (REPUBLIQUE DE DJIBOUTI)  
Numéro d'agrément : 594/dpt/2017  
Date d'agrément : 09/04/2017

## Ghana

NCA PRODUCT IDENTIFIER: OR2-9H-7E1-x4D

## Indonesia

SERTIFIKAT NOMOR : 53104/SDPPI/2017  
PLG ID: 4927



# Customer Information

---

## Moldova



## Paraguay



## Morocco

AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC  
Numéro d'agrément: MR 13639 ARNT 2017  
Date d'agrément: 28/03/2017

## Serbia



## Pakistan



## Singapore

Complies with IMDA Standards  
DA105753

# Customer Information

---

## South Africa



## Taiwan, China



## South Korea



R-CMM-DLH-L2C0065TR

## Syria

SyTRA  
REGISTERED No:  
FR00085-17

## Ukraine



## United Arab Emirates



# Customer Information

## United States and Canada



**WARNING:** Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. The term "IC:" before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

FCC ID: L2C0065TR

IC: 3432A-0065TR

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Innovation, Science and Economic Development Canada's licence-exempt RSS(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

## Zambia



## KEYS AND REMOTE CONTROLS

### Argentina

**CNC: H-16366**



**CNC ID: H-24101**



**CNC ID: H-16355**



# Customer Information

---



## Djibouti

AGREE PAR LE MCPT (REPUBLIQUE DE DJIBOUTI)  
Numéro d'agrément : 289/MCPT/SC/116  
Date d'agrément : 02/07/2016

## Ghana

**NCA APPROVED: 2R9-1H-7E0-01A**

## Brazil



## Jamaica

This product has been Type Approved by Jamaica: SMA – M3N-A2C931426

This product has been Type Approved by Jamaica: SMA – M3N-A2C931423

# Customer Information

---

**This product has been Type Approved  
by Jamaica: SMA – A2C93142100**

This product has been Type Approved by  
Jamaica: SMA – N5F-A08TAA.

## Malaysia



F17000176

## Mauritania

AGREE PAR L'ANE MAURITANIE  
Numéro d'agrément : 0323/ARE/2016  
Date d'agrément : 07/03/2016

## Moldova



## Morocco

AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC  
Numéro d'agrément : MR 12433 ANRT 2016  
Date d'agrément : 31/08/2016

## Pakistan



# Customer Information

---

Pakistan Telecommunication Authority



Approved by PTA 2016

## Serbia



И011 16

## Paraguay



NR: 2016-9-I-000223

NR: 2016-9-I-000220

NR: 2018-07-I-000317

NR: 2017-10-I-0334

## Singapore

Complies with IMDA Standards

DA 00461

## South Africa

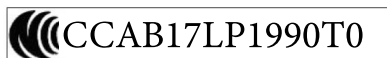
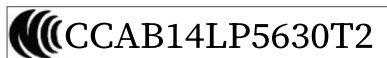
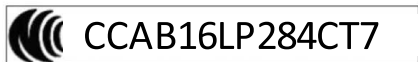


## Taiwan, China

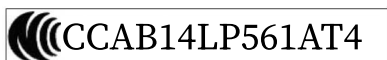
Add CCAB17LP1990T0

## Customer Information

---



### Ukraine



# Customer Information

## United Arab Emirates (U.A.E.)

TRA  
REGISTERED No:  
ER46454/16

DEALER No:  
DA37380/15

## Vietnam



TRA  
REGISTERED No:  
ER46754/16

DEALER No:  
DA37380/15

## Zambia



TRA  
REGISTERED No:  
ER49357/16

DEALER No:  
DA37380/15

## RADIO TRANSCEIVER MODULE

### Argentina



# Customer Information

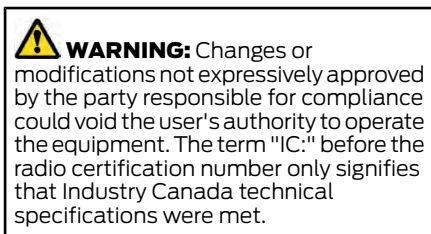
## Brazil



## Taiwan, China



## Canada and United States of America



FCC ID: L2C0083TR

IC ID: 3432A-0083TR

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Innovation, Science and Economic Development Canada's licence-exempt RSS(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

## SYNC

## Argentina



## Brazil



# Customer Information

---

## China

CMIIT ID: 2017AJ4997

## Ghana

NCA PRODUCT IDENTIFIER: BR3-1M-GE2-04F

## Djibouti

AGREE PAR LE MCPT (REPUBLIQUE DE DJIBOUTI)  
Numéro d'agrément: 634/MCPT/DPT/17  
Date d'agrément: 04/12/2017

## Jamaica

This product has been Type Approved  
by Jamaica: SMA - FG-185-SG32-MH.

## European Union EU

CE

## Malaysia



RBAB/57H/0318/S(18-0624)

# Customer Information

## Mauritania

AGREE PAR L'ANE MAURITANIE  
Numéro d'agrément: 0442/ARE/2017  
Date d'agrément: 21/11/2017

## Pakistan



Date of Issuance: 11/30/2017

## Moldova



## Paraguay



## Morocco

AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC  
Numéro d'agrément: MR 15193 ANRT 2017  
Date d'agrément: 22/11/2017

NR: 2017-12-I-0000413

## Serbia



1005 17



# Customer Information

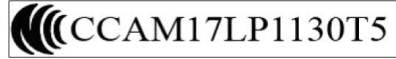
---

## Singapore

Complies with IDA Standards

N4414-17

## Taiwan



## South Africa

TA-2017/3906  
APPROVED



## Ukraine



UA.TR.028

## South Korea



## United Arab Emirates (U.A.E.)

TRA  
REGISTERED No:  
ER61783/18

MSIP-CMM-pAs-FA-170-BCAR-HS

# Customer Information

## United States and Canada



**WARNING:** Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance

could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. The term "IC:" before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

SYNC Version	FCC Identification Number	IC Identification Number
3.0	ACJ-SYNCG3-L	216B-SYNCG3-L
3.1	ACJ-FA-170-BCARHS	216B-FA170BCARHS
3.2	ACJ-FG-185-SG32MH	216B-FG185SG32MH

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Innovation, Science and Economic Development Canada's licence-exempt RSS(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

## Zambia



## Vietnam



## TELEMATICS CONTROL UNIT

### United Arab Emirates (U.A.E.)

TRA  
 REGISTERED No:  
 ER87741/20  
 DEALER No:  
 DA83047/19

# Customer Information

## United States and Canada



**WARNING:** Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. The term "IC:" before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

FCC ID: KMH-14H074-NA1

IC: 1422A-14H074NA1

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Innovation, Science and Economic Development Canada's licence-exempt RSS(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

## TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM SENSORS - VEHICLES WITH: 315 MHZ SENSORS

### Brazil



## Jamaica

This product has been Type Approved by Jamaica: SMA – AG2SZ3

## Mexico

IFT: RLVSCFP15-1249

“La operación de este equipo está sujeta a las siguientes dos condiciones: (1) es posible que este equipo o dispositivo no cause interferencia perjudicial y (2) este equipo o dispositivo debe aceptar cualquier interferencia, incluyendo la que pueda causar su operación no deseada.”

## Paraguay



NR: 2014-07-1-000191

# Customer Information

## Taiwan



CCAM14LP0460T0

本產品符合低功率電波輻射性電機管理辦法 第十二條、第十四條等條文規定

1. 經型式認證合格之低功率射頻電機，非經許可，公司、商號或使用者均不得擅自變更頻率、加大功率或變更原設計之特性及功能。

2. 低功率射頻電機之使用不得影響飛航安全及干擾合法通信；經發現有干擾現象時，應立即停用，並改善至無干擾時方得繼續使用。

前項合法通信，指依電信法規定作業之無線電通信。

低功率射頻電機須忍受合法通信或工業、科學及醫療用電波輻射性電機設備之干擾。

## TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM SENSORS - VEHICLES WITH: 433 MHZ SENSORS

## Argentina



CNCID: H-13498

## United States and Canada



**WARNING:** Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. The term "IC:" before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

FCC ID: MRXAG2SZ3

IC: 2546A-AG2SZ3

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Innovation, Science and Economic Development Canada's licence-exempt RSS(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

## China

CMIIT ID:2014DJ1923

## European Union (EU)

Hereby, Schrader Electronics Ltd. declares that the radio equipment type AG2SZ4 is in compliance with Directive 2014/53/EU.

The full text of the EU declaration of conformity is available at the following internet address:

[http://www.temsauroshop.com/documents/declaration\\_conformities](http://www.temsauroshop.com/documents/declaration_conformities)

14-433-SZ4MHP < 10mW(eirp)

Schrader Electronics Ltd, 11 Technology Park, Belfast Road, Antrim BT41 1QS, Northern Ireland United Kingdom

# Customer Information

## Ghana

NCA APPROVED: 3R88M14030

## Mauritania

AGREE PAR L'ANE MAURITANIE  
Numéro d'agrément : 0611/ARE/2019  
Date d'agrément : 11/01/2019

## Jordan

Kingdom of Jordan Type approval for tyre  
pressre sensor  
Model : AG2SZ4 Manufacturer: Schrader Electronics Ltd  
Type Approval Number:TRC/LPD/2014/56  
Equipment Type: Low Power Device (LPD)

## Mexico

IFT: RLVSCMR15-1238  
"La operación de este equipo está sujeta a las siguientes dos condiciones:  
(1) es posible que este  
equipo o dispositivo no cause interferencia perjudicial y  
(2) este equipo o dispositivo debe aceptar  
cualquier interferencia, incluyendo la que pueda causar  
su operación no deseada."

## Malaysia



CIDF15000486

## Moldova



# Customer Information

---

## Morocco

AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC  
Numéro d'agrément: MR9098  
ANRT 2014  
Date d'agrément: 14/03/2014

## Russia



## Serbia



## Nigeria

Connection and use of this  
communications  
equipment is permitted by the Nigerian  
Communications Commission

## Singapore

Complies with  
IDA Standards  
DA 105282

## Oman

OMAN TRA  
TA-R/1752/14  
D090258

## South Africa



TA-2014/064  
Approved

## Philippines



Type Approved

**NTC**

No:ESD-1408639C

# Customer Information

## South Korea



MSIP-CRM-SRD-AG2SZ4

## Taiwan



CCAM14LP0090T3

## Ukraine



## United Arab Emirates

TRA  
REGISTERED NO: ER0130238/14  
DEALER NO: DA0047074/10

## United States and Canada



**WARNING:** Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. The term "IC:" before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

FCC ID: MRXAG2SZ4

IC: 2546A-AG2SZ4

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Innovation, Science and Economic Development Canada's licence-exempt RSS(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

# Customer Information

## WIRELESS ACCESSORY CHARGING MODULE (If Equipped)

### Argentina



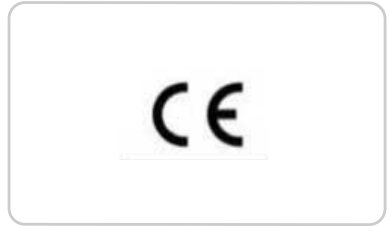
### Brazil



### Djibouti



### European Union EU



### Ghana

NCA APPROVED: 1R3-1M-7E1-174

### Jamaica

This product has been Type Approved  
by Jamaica: SMA - WACM.

### Jordan

Type Approval No: TRC/LPD/2017/418  
Equipment Type: Low Power Device (LPD)



# Customer Information

## Malaysia



SQASI/TA/19/4129

## Mauritania

AGREE PAR L'ANE MAURITANIE  
Numéro d'agrément : 0474/ARE/2018  
Date d'agrément : 05/03/2018

## Moldova



## Morocco

AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC  
Numéro d'agrément : MR 15474 ANRT 2017  
Date d'agrément : 25/12/2017

## Paraguay



2017-10-I-0000333

## Serbia



N011 18

# Customer Information

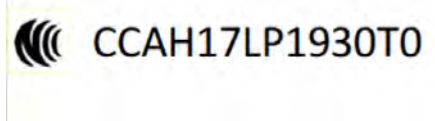
---

## Singapore

Complies with IMDA Standards

DA 00461

## Taiwan, China



## South Africa



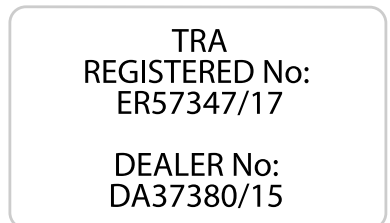
## Ukraine



## South Korea



## United Arab Emirates (U.A.E.)



# Customer Information

## United States

FCC ID: BEJWCDFM00N2A

IC: 2703H-WCFDM00N2A

This equipment generates, uses, and can radiate radio frequency energy and may cause harmful interference to radio communications. There is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, please consult the dealer.

This product is not end-user serviceable.

RF Radiation Exposure Statement: This equipment complies with FCC RF Radiation exposure limits set forth for an uncontrolled environment. This device and its antenna must not be co-located or operating in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter. This equipment should be installed and operated with a minimum distance of 20cm between the radiator and your body.

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Innovation, Science and Economic Development Canada's licence-exempt RSS(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

*Le présent appareil est conforme aux CNR d'Industrie Canada applicables aux appareils radio exempts de licence. L'exploitation est autorisée aux deux conditions suivantes:*

1. *L'appareil ne doit pas produire de brouillage;*
2. *L'appareil doit accepter tout brouillage radioélectrique subi, même si le brouillage est susceptible d'en compromettre le fonctionnement.*

## Vietnam



## Zambia



## PERCHLORATE

Certain components in your vehicle such as airbag modules, seatbelt pretensioners and remote control batteries may contain perchlorate material. Special handling may apply for service or vehicle end of life disposal.

# Customer Information

For more information visit:  
[www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate](http://www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate).

## REPLACEMENT PARTS RECOMMENDATION

We have built your vehicle to the highest standards using quality parts. We recommend that you demand the use of genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts whenever your vehicle requires scheduled maintenance or repair. You can clearly identify genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts by looking for the Ford, FoMoCo or Motorcraft branding on the parts or their packaging.

## Scheduled Maintenance and Mechanical Repairs

One of the best ways for you to make sure that your vehicle provides years of service is to have it maintained in line with our recommendations using parts that conform to the specifications detailed in this Owner's Manual.

Genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts meet or exceed these specifications.

## Collision Repairs

We hope that you never experience a collision, but accidents happen sometimes.

Genuine Ford replacement collision parts meet our stringent requirements for fit, finish, structural integrity, corrosion protection and dent resistance. During vehicle development we validate that these parts deliver the intended level of protection as a whole system. A great way to know for sure you are getting this level of protection is to use genuine Ford replacement collision parts.

## Warranty on Replacement Parts

Genuine Ford and Motorcraft replacement parts are the only replacement parts that benefit from a Ford Warranty.

The Ford Warranty may not cover damage caused to your vehicle as a result of failed non-Ford parts.

For additional information, refer to the terms and conditions of the Ford Warranty.

## MOBILE COMMUNICATIONS EQUIPMENT



**WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Using mobile communications equipment is becoming increasingly important in the conduct of business and personal affairs. However, you must not compromise your own or others' safety when using such equipment. Mobile communications can enhance personal safety and security when appropriately used, particularly in emergency situations. Safety must be paramount when using mobile communications equipment to avoid negating these benefits. Mobile communication equipment includes, but is not limited to, cellular phones, pagers, portable email devices, text messaging devices and portable two-way radios.

# Customer Information

---

## FEDERAL HIGHWAY ADMINISTRATION REGULATION

Regulations such as those issued by the Federal Highway Administration or issued pursuant to the Occupational Safety and Health Act (OSHA), and state and local laws and regulations may require additional equipment for the way you intend to use your vehicle. It is the responsibility of the registered owner to determine the applicability of such laws and regulations to your intended use for the vehicle, and to arrange for the installation of required equipment. The dealer has information about the availability of equipment which can be ordered for your vehicle.

## END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT

### VEHICLE SOFTWARE END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT (EULA) (if

Equipped)

- You ("You" or "Your" as applicable) have acquired a vehicle having several devices, including SYNC ® and various control modules, ("DEVICES") that include software licensed or owned by Ford Motor Company and its affiliates ("FORD MOTOR COMPANY"). Those software products of FORD MOTOR COMPANY origin, as well as associated media, printed materials, and "online" or electronic documentation ("SOFTWARE") are protected by international intellectual property laws and treaties. The SOFTWARE is licensed, not sold. All rights reserved.
- The SOFTWARE may interface with and/or communicate with, or may be later upgraded to interface with and/or communicate with additional software and/or systems provided by FORD MOTOR COMPANY.

**IF YOU DO NOT AGREE TO THIS END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT ("EULA") DO NOT USE THE DEVICES OR COPY THE SOFTWARE. ANY USE OF THE SOFTWARE, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO USE ON THE DEVICES, WILL CONSTITUTE YOUR AGREEMENT TO THIS EULA (OR RATIFICATION OF ANY PREVIOUS CONSENT).**

**GRANT OF SOFTWARE LICENSE:** This EULA grants you the following license:

- You may use the SOFTWARE as installed on the DEVICES and as otherwise interfacing with systems and/or services provide by or through FORD MOTOR COMPANY or its third party software and service providers.

# Customer Information

---

## Description of Other Rights and Limitations.

- **Speech Recognition:** If the SOFTWARE includes speech recognition component(s), you should understand that speech recognition is an inherently statistical process and that recognition errors are inherent in the process. Neither FORD MOTOR COMPANY nor its suppliers shall be liable for any damages arising out of errors in the speech recognition process. It is your responsibility to monitor any speech recognition functions included in the system.
- **Limitations on Reverse Engineering, Decompilation and Disassembly:** You may not reverse engineer, decompile, translate, disassemble or attempt to discover any source code or underlying ideas or algorithms of the SOFTWARE nor permit others to reverse engineer, decompile or disassemble the SOFTWARE, except and only to the extent that such activity is expressly permitted by applicable law notwithstanding this limitation or to the extent as may be permitted by the licensing terms governing use of any open source components included with the SOFTWARE.
- **Limitations on Distributing, Copying, Modifying and Creating Derivative Works:** You may not distribute, copy, make modifications to or create derivative works based on the SOFTWARE, except and only to the extent that such activity is expressly permitted by applicable law notwithstanding this limitation or to the extent as may be permitted by the licensing terms governing use of any open source components included with the SOFTWARE.
- **Single EULA:** The end user documentation for the DEVICES and related systems and services may contain multiple EULAs, such as multiple translations and/or multiple media versions (e.g., in the user documentation and in the software). Even if you receive multiple EULAs, you are licensed to use only one (1) copy of the SOFTWARE.
- **SOFTWARE Transfer:** You may permanently transfer your rights under this EULA only as part of a sale or transfer of the DEVICES, provided you retain no copies, you transfer all of the SOFTWARE (including all component parts, the media and printed materials, any upgrades, and, if applicable, the Certificate(s) of Authenticity), and the recipient agrees to the terms of this EULA. If the SOFTWARE is an upgrade, any transfer must include all prior versions of the SOFTWARE.
- **Termination:** Without prejudice to any other rights, FORD MOTOR COMPANY may terminate this EULA if you fail to comply with the terms and conditions of this EULA.
- **Internet-Based Services Components:** The SOFTWARE may contain components that enable and facilitate the use of certain Internet-based services. You acknowledge and agree that FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and service suppliers, its affiliates and/or its designated agent may automatically check the version of the SOFTWARE and/or its components that you are utilizing and may provide upgrades or supplements to the SOFTWARE that may be automatically downloaded to your DEVICES.

## Customer Information

---

- **Additional Software/Services:** The SOFTWARE may permit FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and service suppliers, its affiliates and/or its designated agent to provide or make available to you SOFTWARE updates, supplements, add-on components, or Internet-based services components of the SOFTWARE after the date you obtain your initial copy of the SOFTWARE ("Supplemental Components".) SOFTWARE updates may cause you to incur additional charges from your wireless service provider. If FORD MOTOR COMPANY or third party software and services suppliers provide or make available to you Supplemental Components and no other EULA terms are provided along with the Supplemental Components, then the terms of this EULA shall apply. FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates and/or its designated agent reserve the right to discontinue without liability any Internet-based services provided to you or made available to you through the use of the SOFTWARE.
- **Links to Third Party Sites:** The SOFTWARE may provide you with the ability to link to third party sites. The third party sites are not under the control of FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates and/or its designated agent. Neither FORD MOTOR COMPANY nor its affiliates nor its designated agent are responsible for (i) the contents of any third party sites, any links contained in third party sites, or any changes or updates to third party sites, or (ii) webcasting or any other form of transmission received from any third party sites. If the SOFTWARE provides links to third party sites, those links are provided to you only as a convenience, and the inclusion of any link does not imply an endorsement of the third party site by FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates and/or its designated agent.
- **Obligation to Drive Responsibly:** You recognize your obligation to drive responsibly and keep attention on the road. You will read and abide with the DEVICES operating instructions particularly as they pertain to safety and you agree to assume any risk associated with the use of the DEVICES.

### **UPGRADES AND RECOVERY MEDIA:**

If the SOFTWARE is provided by FORD MOTOR COMPANY separate from the DEVICES on media such as a ROM chip, CD ROM disk(s) or via web download or other means, and is labeled "For Upgrade Purposes Only" or "For Recovery Purposes Only" you may install one (1) copy of such SOFTWARE onto the DEVICES as a replacement copy for the existing SOFTWARE, and use it in accordance with this EULA, including any additional EULA terms accompanying the upgrade SOFTWARE.

# Customer Information

---

## **INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY RIGHTS:**

All title and intellectual property rights in and to the SOFTWARE (including but not limited to any images, photographs, animations, video, audio, music, text and "applets" incorporated into the SOFTWARE), the accompanying printed materials, and any copies of the SOFTWARE, are owned by FORD MOTOR COMPANY, or its affiliates or suppliers. The SOFTWARE is licensed, not sold. You may not copy the printed materials accompanying the SOFTWARE. All title and intellectual property rights in and to the content which may be accessed through use of the SOFTWARE is the property of the respective content owner and may be protected by applicable copyright or other intellectual property laws and treaties. This EULA grants you no rights to use such content outside its intended use. All rights not specifically granted under this EULA are reserved by FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates, and third party software and service providers and suppliers. Use of any on-line services which may be accessed through the SOFTWARE may be governed by the respective terms of use relating to such services. If this SOFTWARE contains documentation that is provided only in electronic form, you may print one copy of such electronic documentation.

**EXPORT RESTRICTIONS:** You acknowledge that the SOFTWARE is subject to U.S. and European Union export jurisdiction. You agree to comply with all applicable international and national laws that apply to the SOFTWARE, including the U.S. Export Administration Regulations, as well as end-user, end-use and destination restrictions issued by U.S. and other governments.

**TRADEMARKS:** This EULA does not grant you any rights in connection with any trademarks or service marks of FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates, and third party software and service providers.

**PRODUCT SUPPORT:** Please refer to FORD MOTOR COMPANY instructions provided in the documentation for the DEVICES product support, such as the vehicle owner guide.

Should you have any questions concerning this EULA, or if you desire to contact FORD MOTOR COMPANY for any other reason, please refer to the address provided in the documentation for the DEVICES.

## **No Liability for Certain Damages:**

EXCEPT AS PROHIBITED BY LAW, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, ANY THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE OR SERVICES SUPPLIERS, AND THEIR AFFILIATES SHALL HAVE NO LIABILITY FOR ANY INDIRECT, SPECIAL, CONSEQUENTIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES ARISING FROM OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE USE OR PERFORMANCE OF THE SOFTWARE. THIS LIMITATION SHALL APPLY EVEN IF ANY REMEDY FAILS OF ITS ESSENTIAL PURPOSE. THERE ARE NO WARRANTIES OTHER THAN THOSE THAT MAY BE EXPRESSLY PROVIDED FOR YOUR NEW VEHICLE.

## **SYNC® Automotive Important Safety Information Read and follow instructions:**

- Before using your SYNC® system, read and follow all instructions and safety information provided in this end user manual ("Owner Guide".) Not following precautions found in the Owner Guide can lead to an accident or other serious injuries.



# Customer Information

---

## General Operation

- **Voice Command Control:** Certain functions within the SYNC® system may be accomplished using voice commands. Using voice commands while driving helps you to operate the system without removing your hands from the wheel or eyes from the road.
- **Prolonged Views of Screen:** Do not access any function requiring a prolonged view of the screen while you are driving. Pull over in a safe and legal manner before attempting to access a function of the system requiring prolonged attention.
- **Volume Setting:** Do not raise the volume excessively. Keep the volume at a level where you can still hear outside traffic and emergency signals while driving. Driving while unable to hear these sounds could cause an accident.
- **Navigation Features:** Any navigation features included in the system are intended to provide turn by turn instructions to get you to a desired destination. Please make certain all persons using this system carefully read and follow instructions and safety information fully.
- **Distraction Hazard:** Any navigation features may require manual (non-verbal) setup. Attempting to perform such set-up or insert data while driving can distract your attention and could cause an accident or other serious injury. Stop the vehicle in a safe and legal manner before attempting these operations.
- **Let Your Judgment Prevail:** Any navigation features are provided only as an aid. Make your driving decisions based on your observations of local conditions and existing traffic regulations. Any such feature is not a

substitute for your personal judgment. Any route suggestions made by this system should never replace any local traffic regulations or your personal judgment or knowledge of safe driving practices.

- **Route Safety:** Do not follow the route suggestions if doing so would result in an unsafe or illegal maneuver, if you would be placed in an unsafe situation, or if you would be directed into an area that you consider unsafe. The driver is ultimately responsible for the safe operation of the vehicle and therefore, must evaluate whether it is safe to follow the suggested directions.
- **Potential Map Inaccuracy:** Maps used by this system may be inaccurate because of changes in roads, traffic controls or driving conditions. Always use good judgment and common sense when following the suggested routes.
- **Emergency Services:** Do not rely on any navigation features included in the system to route you to emergency services. Ask local authorities or an emergency services operator for these locations. Not all emergency services such as police, fire stations, hospitals and clinics are likely to be contained in the map database for such navigation features.

# Customer Information

---

## Your Responsibilities and Assumptions of Risk

- You agree to each of the following: (a) Any use of the SOFTWARE while driving an automobile or other vehicle in violation of applicable law or otherwise driving in an unsafe manner presents a significant risk of distracted driving and should not be attempted under any circumstances; (b) Use of the SOFTWARE at excessive volume poses a significant risk of hearing damage and should not be attempted under any circumstances; (c) The SOFTWARE may not be compatible with new or different versions of an operating system, third party software, or third party services, and the SOFTWARE may potentially cause a critical failure of an operating system, third party software, or third party service. (d) Any third party service accessed by or third party software used with the SOFTWARE (i) may charge an additional fee for access, (ii) may not work correctly, on an uninterrupted basis, or error free, (iii) may change streaming formats or discontinue operation, (iv) may contain adult, profane or offensive content; and (v) may contain inaccurate, false or misleading traffic, weather, financial or safety information or other content; and (e) Use of the SOFTWARE may cause you to incur additional charges from your wireless service provider (WSP) and any data or minute calculators that may be included in the software program are for reference only, are not warranted in any way and should not be relied upon in anyway.
- When using the SOFTWARE, you agree to be responsible for and assume the entire risk to the items set forth in Section (a) – (e) above.

## Disclaimer of Warranty

YOU EXPRESSLY ACKNOWLEDGE AND AGREE THAT USE OF THE DEVICES AND SOFTWARE IS AT YOUR SOLE RISK AND THAT THE ENTIRE RISK AS TO SATISFACTORY QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, COMPATIBILITY, ACCURACY AND EFFORT IS WITH YOU. TO THE MAXIMUM EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, THE SOFTWARE AND ANY THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES ARE PROVIDED "AS IS" AND "AS AVAILABLE", WITH ALL FAULTS AND WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, AND FORD MOTOR COMPANY HEREBY DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES AND CONDITIONS WITH RESPECT TO THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, AND THIRD-PARTY SERVICES, EITHER EXPRESS, IMPLIED OR STATUTORY, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES AND/OR CONDITIONS OF MERCHANTABILITY, OF SATISFACTORY QUALITY, OF FITNESS FOR AN PARTICULAR PURPOSE, OF ACCURACY, OF QUIET ENJOYMENT, AND NON-INFRINGEMENT OF THIRD-PARTY RIGHTS. FORD MOTOR COMPANY DOES NOT WARRANT (a) AGAINST INTERFERENCE WITH YOUR ENJOYMENT OF THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES, (b) THAT THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES WILL MEET YOUR REQUIREMENTS, (c) THAT THE OPERATION OF THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES WILL BE UNINTERRUPTED OR ERROR-FREE, (d) OR THAT DEFECTS IN THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES WILL BE CORRECTED. NO ORAL OR WRITTEN INFORMATION OR ADVICE GIVEN BY FORD MOTOR COMPANY OR ITS AUTHORIZED REPRESENTATIVE SHALL

# Customer Information

---

CREATE A WARRANTY. SHOULD THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES PROVE DEFECTIVE, YOU ASSUME THE ENTIRE COST OF ALL NECESSARY SERVICING, REPAIR OR CORRECTION. SOME JURISDICTIONS DO NOT ALLOW THE DISCLAIMER OF IMPLIED WARRANTIES OR LIMITATIONS ON APPLICABLE STATUTORY RIGHTS OF A CONSUMER, SO THE ABOVE DISCLAIMER MAY NOT FULLY APPLY TO YOU. THE SOLE WARRANTY PROVIDED BY FORD MOTOR COMPANY SHALL BE FOUND IN THE WARRANTY INFORMATION INCLUDING WITH YOUR OWNER GUIDE. TO THE EXTENT THAT THERE IS ANY CONFLICT BETWEEN THE TERMS OF THIS SECTION AND THE WARRANTY BOOKLET, THE WARRANTY BOOKLET SHALL CONTROL.

## Applicable Law, Venue, Jurisdiction

- The laws of the State of Michigan govern this EULA and Your use of the SOFTWARE. Your use of the SOFTWARE may also be subject to other local, state, national, or international laws. Any litigation arising out of or related to this EULA shall be brought and maintained exclusively in a court of the State of Michigan located in Wayne County or in the United States District Court for the Eastern District of Michigan. You hereby consent to submit to the personal jurisdiction of a court in the State of Michigan located in Wayne County and the United States District Court for the Eastern District of Michigan for any dispute arising out of or relating to this EULA.

## Binding Arbitration and Class Action Waiver

**(a) Application.** This Section applies to any dispute EXCEPT IT DOES NOT INCLUDE A DISPUTE RELATING TO COPYRIGHT INFRINGEMENT, OR TO THE ENFORCEMENT OR VALIDITY OF YOUR, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, OR ANY OF FORD MOTOR COMPANY'S LICENSORS' INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY RIGHTS.

Dispute means any dispute, action, or other controversy between You and FORD MOTOR COMPANY, other than the exceptions listed above, concerning the SOFTWARE (including its price) or this EULA, whether in contract, warranty, tort, statute, regulation, ordinance, or any other legal or equitable basis.

**(b) Notice of Dispute.** In the event of a Dispute, You or FORD MOTOR COMPANY must give the other a "Notice of Dispute", which is a written statement of the name, address, and contact information of the party giving it, the facts giving rise to the dispute, and the relief requested. You and FORD MOTOR COMPANY will attempt to resolve any dispute through informal negotiation within 60 days from the date the Notice of Dispute is sent. After 60 days, You or FORD MOTOR COMPANY may commence arbitration.

**(c) Small claims court.** You may also litigate any dispute in small claims court in your county of residence or FORD MOTOR COMPANY'S principal place of business, if the dispute meets all requirements to be heard in the small claims court. You may litigate in small claims court whether or not You negotiated informally first.

**(d) Binding arbitration.** If You and FORD MOTOR COMPANY, do not resolve any dispute by informal negotiation or in small claims court, any other effort to resolve the dispute will be conducted exclusively by binding arbitration. You are giving up

## Customer Information

---

the right to litigate (or participate in as a party or class member) all disputes in court before a judge or jury. Instead, all disputes will be resolved before a neutral arbitrator, whose decision will be final except for a limited right of appeal under the Federal Arbitration Act. Any court with jurisdiction over the parties may enforce the arbitrator's award.

**(e) Class action waiver.** Any proceedings to resolve or litigate any dispute in any forum will be conducted solely on an individual basis. Neither you nor FORD MOTOR COMPANY, will seek to have any dispute heard as a class action, as a private attorney general action, or in any other proceeding in which any party acts or proposes to act in a representative capacity. No arbitration or proceeding will be combined with another without the prior written consent of all parties to all affected arbitrations or proceedings.

**(f) Arbitration procedure.** Any arbitration will be conducted by the American Arbitration Association (the "AAA"), under its Commercial Arbitration Rules. If You are an individual and use the SOFTWARE for personal or vehicle use, or if the value of the dispute is \$75,000 or less whether or not You are an individual or how You use the SOFTWARE, the AAA Supplementary Procedures for Consumer-Related Disputes will also apply. To commence arbitration, submit a Commercial Arbitration Rules Demand for Arbitration form to the AAA. You may request a telephonic or in-person hearing by following the AAA rules. In a dispute involving \$10,000 or less, any hearing will be telephonic unless the arbitrator finds good cause to hold an in-person hearing instead. For more information, see [adr.org](http://adr.org) or call 1-800-778-7879. You agree to commence arbitration only in your county of residence or FORD MOTOR COMPANY'S principal place of business. The arbitrator

may award the same damages to you individually as a court could. The arbitrator may award declaratory or injunctive relief only to you individually, and only to the extent required to satisfy your individual claim.

### **(g) Arbitration fees and incentives.**

- I. Disputes involving \$75,000 or less. FORD MOTOR COMPANY will promptly reimburse your filing fees and pay the AAA's and arbitrator's fees and expenses. If you reject FORD MOTOR COMPANY'S last written settlement offer made before the arbitrator was appointed ("last written offer"), your dispute goes all the way to an arbitrator's decision (called an "award"), and the arbitrator awards you more than the last written offer, FORD MOTOR COMPANY will give you three incentives: (1) pay the greater of the award or \$1,000; (2) pay twice your reasonable attorney's fees, if any; and (3) reimburse any expenses (including expert witness fees and costs) that your attorney reasonably accrues for investigating, preparing, and pursuing your claim in arbitration. The arbitrator will determine the amounts.
- ii. Disputes involving more than \$75,000. The AAA rules will govern payment of filing fees and the AAA's and arbitrator's fees and expenses.
- iii. Disputes involving any amount. In any arbitration you commence, FORD MOTOR COMPANY will seek its AAA or arbitrator's fees and expenses, or Your filing fees it reimbursed, only if the arbitrator finds the arbitration frivolous or brought for an improper purpose. In any arbitration FORD MOTOR COMPANY commences, it will pay all

# Customer Information

---

filing, AAA, and arbitrator's fees and expenses. It will not seek its attorney's fees or expenses from you in any arbitration. Fees and expenses are not counted in determining how much a dispute involves.

**(h) Claims or disputes must be filed within one year.** To the extent permitted by law, any claim or dispute under this EULA to which this Section applies must be filed within one year in small claims court (Section c) or in arbitration (Section d). The one-year period begins when the claim or dispute first could be filed. If such a claim or dispute is not filed within one year, it is permanently barred.

**(I) Severability.** If the class action waiver (Section e) is found to be illegal or unenforceable as to all or some parts of a dispute, then that portion of Section e will not apply to those parts. Instead, those parts will be severed and proceed in a court of law, with the remaining parts proceeding in arbitration. If any other provision of that portion Section e is found to be illegal or unenforceable, that provision will be severed with the remainder of Section e remaining in full force and effect.

## **Telenav Software End User License Agreement**

Please read these terms and conditions carefully before you use the TeleNav Software. Your use of the TeleNav Software indicates that you accept these terms and conditions. If you do not accept these terms and conditions, do not break the seal of the package, launch, or otherwise use the TeleNav Software. TeleNav may revise this Agreement and the privacy policy at any time, with or without notice to you. You agree to visit <http://www.telenav.com> from time to time to review the then current version of this Agreement and of the privacy policy.

## **1. Safe and Lawful Use**

You acknowledge that devoting attention to the TeleNav Software may pose a risk of injury or death to you and others in situations that otherwise require your undivided attention, and you therefore agree to comply with the following when using the TeleNav Software:

- (a) observe all traffic laws and otherwise drive safely;
- (b) use your own personal judgment while driving. If you feel that a route suggested by the TeleNav Software instructs you to perform an unsafe or illegal maneuver, places you in an unsafe situation, or directs you into an area that you consider to be unsafe, do not follow such instructions;
- (c) do not input destinations, or otherwise manipulate the TeleNav Software, unless your vehicle is stationary and parked;
- (d) do not use the TeleNav Software for any illegal, unauthorized, unintended, unsafe, hazardous, or unlawful purposes, or in any manner inconsistent with this Agreement;
- (e) arrange all GPS and wireless devices and cables necessary for use of the TeleNav Software in a secure manner in your vehicle so that they will not interfere with your driving and will not prevent the operation of any safety device (such as an airbag).

You agree to indemnify and hold TeleNav harmless against all claims resulting from any dangerous or otherwise inappropriate use of the TeleNav Software in any moving vehicle, including as a result of your failure to comply with the directions above.

# Customer Information

---

## 2. Account Information

You agree: (a) when registering the TeleNav Software, to provide TeleNav with true, accurate, current, and complete information about yourself, and (b) to inform TeleNav promptly of any changes to such information, and to keep it true, accurate, current and complete.

## 3. Software License

- Subject to your compliance with the terms of this Agreement, TeleNav hereby grants to you a personal, non-exclusive, non-transferable license (except as expressly permitted below in connection with your permanent transfer of the TeleNav Software license), without the right to sublicense, to use the TeleNav Software (in object code form only) in order to access and use the TeleNav Software. This license shall terminate upon any termination or expiration of this Agreement. You agree that you will use the TeleNav Software only for your personal business or leisure purposes, and not to provide commercial navigation services to other parties.

### 3.1 License Limitations

- **(a)** reverse engineer, decompile, disassemble, translate, modify, alter or otherwise change the TeleNav Software or any part thereof; **(b)** attempt to derive the source code, audio library or structure of the TeleNav Software without the prior express written consent of TeleNav; **(c)** remove from the TeleNav Software, or alter, any of TeleNav's or its suppliers' trademarks, trade names, logos, patent or copyright notices, or other notices or markings; **(d)**

distribute, sublicense or otherwise transfer the TeleNav Software to others, except as part of your permanent transfer of the TeleNav Software; or **(e)** use the TeleNav Software in any manner that

- i. infringes the intellectual property or proprietary rights, rights of publicity or privacy or other rights of any party,
- ii. violates any law, statute, ordinance or regulation, including but not limited to laws and regulations related to spamming, privacy, consumer and child protection, obscenity or defamation, or
- iii. is harmful, threatening, abusive, harassing, tortuous, defamatory, vulgar, obscene, libelous, or otherwise objectionable; and (f) lease, rent out, or otherwise permit unauthorized access by third parties to the TeleNav Software without advanced written permission of TeleNav.

## 4. Disclaimers

- To the fullest extent permissible pursuant to applicable law, in no event will TeleNav, its licensors and suppliers, or agents or employees of any of the foregoing, be liable for any decision made or action taken by you or anyone else in reliance on the information provided by the TeleNav Software. TeleNav also does not warrant the accuracy of the map or other data used for the TeleNav Software. Such data may not always reflect reality due to, among other things, road closures, construction, weather, new roads and other changing conditions. You are responsible for the entire risk arising out of your use of the TeleNav Software. For example but without limitation, you agree not to rely on the TeleNav Software for critical navigation in areas where the well-being or survival of you or others

# Customer Information

---

is dependent on the accuracy of navigation, as the maps or functionality of the TeleNav Software are not intended to support such high risk applications, especially in more remote geographical areas.

- TELENAV EXPRESSLY DISCLAIMS AND EXCLUDES ALL WARRANTIES IN CONNECTION WITH THE TELENAV SOFTWARE, WHETHER STATUTORY, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING ALL WARRANTIES WHICH MAY ARISE FROM COURSE OF DEALING, CUSTOM OR TRADE AND INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NON-INFRINGEMENT OF THIRD PARTY RIGHTS WITH RESPECT TO THE TELENAV SOFTWARE.
- Certain jurisdictions do not permit the disclaimer of certain warranties, so this limitation may not apply to you.

## **5. Limitation of Liability**

- TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED UNDER APPLICABLE LAW, UNDER NO CIRCUMSTANCES SHALL TELENAV OR ITS LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS BE LIABLE TO YOU OR TO ANY THIRD PARTY FOR ANY INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, CONSEQUENTIAL, SPECIAL OR EXEMPLARY DAMAGES (INCLUDING IN EACH CASE, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, DAMAGES FOR THE INABILITY TO USE THE EQUIPMENT OR ACCESS DATA, LOSS OF DATA, LOSS OF BUSINESS, LOSS OF PROFITS, BUSINESS INTERRUPTION OR THE LIKE) ARISING OUT OF THE USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THE TELENAV SOFTWARE, EVEN IF TELENAV HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. NOTWITHSTANDING ANY DAMAGES THAT YOU MIGHT INCUR FOR ANY

REASON WHATSOEVER (INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, ALL DAMAGES REFERENCED HEREIN AND ALL DIRECT OR GENERAL DAMAGES IN CONTRACT, TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE) OR OTHERWISE), THE ENTIRE LIABILITY OF TELENAV AND OF ALL OF TELENAV'S SUPPLIERS SHALL BE LIMITED TO THE AMOUNT ACTUALLY PAID BY YOU FOR THE TELENAV SOFTWARE. SOME STATES AND/OR JURISDICTIONS DO NOT ALLOW THE EXCLUSION OR LIMITATION OF INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES, SO THE ABOVE LIMITATIONS OR EXCLUSIONS MAY NOT APPLY TO YOU.

## **6. Arbitration and Governing Law**

- You agree that any dispute, claim or controversy arising out of or relating to this Agreement or the TeleNav Software shall be settled by independent arbitration involving a neutral arbitrator and administered by the American Arbitration Association in the County of Santa Clara, California. The arbitrator shall apply the Commercial Arbitration Rules of the American Arbitration Association, and the judgment upon the award rendered by the arbitrator may be entered by any court having jurisdiction. Note that there is no judge or jury in an arbitration proceeding and the decision of the arbitrator shall be binding upon both parties. You expressly agree to waive your right to a jury trial. This Agreement and performance hereunder will be governed by and construed in accordance with the laws of the State of California, without giving effect to its conflict of law provisions. To the extent judicial action is necessary in connection with the binding arbitration, both TeleNav and you agree to submit



# Customer Information

---

to the exclusive jurisdiction of the courts of the County of Santa Clara, California. The United Nations Convention on Contracts for the International Sale of Goods shall not apply.

## **7. Assignment**

- You may not resell, assign, or transfer this Agreement or any of your rights or obligations, except in totality, in connection with your permanent transfer of the TeleNav Software, and expressly conditioned upon the new user of the TeleNav Software agreeing to be bound by the terms and conditions of this Agreement. Any such sale, assignment or transfer that is not expressly permitted under this paragraph will result in immediate termination of this Agreement, without liability to TeleNav, in which case you and all other parties shall immediately cease all use of the TeleNav Software. Notwithstanding the foregoing, TeleNav may assign this Agreement to any other party at any time without notice, provided the assignee remains bound by this Agreement.

## **8. Miscellaneous**

### **8.1**

This Agreement constitutes the entire agreement between TeleNav and you with respect to the subject matter hereof.

### **8.2**

Except for the limited licenses expressly granted in this Agreement, TeleNav retains all right, title and interest in and to the TeleNav Software, including without limitation all related intellectual property rights. No licenses or other rights which are not expressly granted in this Agreement are intended to, or shall be, granted or

conferred by implication, statute, inducement, estoppel or otherwise, and TeleNav and its suppliers and licensors hereby reserve all of their respective rights other than the licenses explicitly granted in this Agreement.

### **8.3**

By using the TeleNav Software, you consent to receive from TeleNav all communications, including notices, agreements, legally required disclosures or other information in connection with the TeleNav Software (collectively, "Notices") electronically. TeleNav may provide such Notices by posting them on TeleNav's Website or by downloading such Notices to your wireless device. If you desire to withdraw your consent to receive Notices electronically, you must discontinue your use of the TeleNav Software.

### **8.4**

TeleNav's or your failure to require performance of any provision shall not affect that party's right to require performance at any time thereafter, nor shall a waiver of any breach or default of this Agreement constitute a waiver of any subsequent breach or default or a waiver of the provision itself.

### **8.5**

If any provision herein is held unenforceable, then such provision will be modified to reflect the intention of the parties, and the remaining provisions of this Agreement will remain in full force and effect.



# Customer Information

## 8.6

The headings in this Agreement are for convenience of reference only, will not be deemed to be a part of this Agreement, and will not be referred to in connection with the construction or interpretation of this Agreement. As used in this Agreement, the words "include" and "including" and variations thereof, will not be deemed to be terms of limitation, but rather will be deemed to be followed by the words "without limitation".

## 9. Other Vendors Terms and Conditions

- The Telenav Software utilizes map and other data licensed to Telenav by third party vendors for the benefit of you and other end users. This Agreement includes end-user terms applicable to these companies (included at the end of this Agreement), and thus your use of the Telenav Software is also subject to such terms. You agree to comply with the following additional terms and conditions, which are applicable to Telenav's third party vendor licensors.

### 9.1 End User Terms Required by HERE North America, LLC

The data ("Data") is provided for your personal, internal use only and not for resale. It is protected by copyright, and is subject to the following terms and conditions which are agreed to by you, on the one hand, and Telenav ("Telenav") and its licensors (including their licensors and suppliers) on the other hand.

© 2013 HERE. All rights reserved.

The Data for areas of Canada includes information taken with permission from Canadian authorities, including: © Her Majesty the Queen in Right of Canada, © Queen's Printer for Ontario, © Canada Post Corporation, GeoBase®, © Department of Natural Resources Canada.

HERE holds a non-exclusive license from the United States Postal Service® to publish and sell ZIP+4® information.

©United States Postal Service® 2014. Prices are not established, controlled or approved by the United States Postal Service®. The following trademarks and registrations are owned by the USPS: United States Postal Service, USPS, and ZIP+4

The Data for Mexico includes certain data from Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía.

### 9.2 End User Terms Required by NAV2 (Shanghai) Co., Ltd

The data ("Data") is provided for your personal, internal use only and not for resale. It is protected by copyright, and is subject to the following terms and conditions which are agreed to by you, on the one hand, and NAV2 (Shanghai) Co., Ltd ("NAV2") and its licensors (including their licensors and suppliers) on the other hand. 20xx. All rights reserved

### Terms and Conditions

**Permitted Use.** You agree to use this Data together with the Telenav Software solely for the internal business and personal purposes for which you were licensed, and not for service bureau, time-sharing or other similar purposes. Accordingly, but subject to the restrictions set forth in the following paragraphs, you agree not to otherwise reproduce, copy, modify, decompile, disassemble, create any derivative works of, or reverse engineer any portion of this Data, and may not transfer or distribute it in any form, for any purpose, except to the extent permitted by mandatory laws.

## Customer Information

---

**Restrictions.** Except where you have been specifically licensed to do so by Telenav, and without limiting the preceding paragraph, you may not use this Data (a) with any products, systems, or applications installed or otherwise connected to or in communication with vehicles, capable of vehicle navigation, positioning, dispatch, real time route guidance, fleet management or similar applications; or (b) with or in communication with any positioning devices or any mobile or wireless-connected electronic or computer devices, including without limitation cellular phones, palmtop and handheld computers, pagers, and personal digital assistants or PDAs.

**Warning.** The Data may contain inaccurate or incomplete information due to the passage of time, changing circumstances, sources used and the nature of collecting comprehensive geographic data, any of which may lead to incorrect results.

**No Warranty.** This Data is provided to you “as is,” and you agree to use it at your own risk. Telenav and its licensors (and their licensors and suppliers) make no guarantees, representations or warranties of any kind, express or implied, arising by law or otherwise, including but not limited to, content, quality, accuracy, completeness, effectiveness, reliability, fitness for a particular purpose, usefulness, use or results to be obtained from this Data, or that the Data or server will be uninterrupted or error-free.

**Disclaimer of Warranty:** TELENAV AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) DISCLAIM ANY WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, OF QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A

PARTICULAR PURPOSE OR NON-INFRINGEMENT. Some States, Territories and Countries do not allow certain warranty exclusions, so to that extent the above exclusion may not apply to you.

**Disclaimer of Liability:** TELENAV AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) SHALL NOT BE LIABLE TO YOU: IN RESPECT OF ANY CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION, IRRESPECTIVE OF THE NATURE OF THE CAUSE OF THE CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION ALLEGING ANY LOSS, INJURY OR DAMAGES, DIRECT OR INDIRECT, WHICH MAY RESULT FROM THE USE OR POSSESSION OF THE INFORMATION; OR FOR ANY LOSS OF PROFIT, REVENUE, CONTRACTS OR SAVINGS, OR ANY OTHER DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF YOUR USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THIS INFORMATION, ANY DEFECT IN THE INFORMATION, OR THE BREACH OF THESE TERMS OR CONDITIONS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION IN CONTRACT OR TORT OR BASED ON A WARRANTY, EVEN IF TELENAV OR ITS LICENSORS HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. Some States, Territories and Countries do not allow certain liability exclusions or damages limitations, so to that extent the above may not apply to you.

**Export Control.** You shall not export from anywhere any part of the Data or any direct product thereof except in compliance with, and with all licenses and approvals required under, applicable export laws, rules and regulations, including but not limited to the laws, rules and regulations administered by the Office of Foreign Assets Control of the U.S. Department of Commerce and the Bureau of Industry and Security of the U.S. Department of Commerce. To the extent that any such

# Customer Information

export laws, rules or regulations prohibit HERE from complying with any of its obligations hereunder to deliver or distribute Data, such failure shall be excused and shall not constitute a breach of this Agreement.

**Entire Agreement.** These terms and conditions constitute the entire agreement between Telenav (and its licensors, including their licensors and suppliers) and you pertaining to the subject matter hereof, and supersedes in their entirety any and all written or oral agreements previously existing between us with respect to such subject matter.

**Governing Law.** The above terms and conditions shall be governed by the laws of the State of Illinois [insert "Netherlands" where European HERE Data is used], without giving effect to (i) its conflict of laws provisions, or (ii) the United Nations Convention for Contracts for the International Sale of Goods, which is explicitly excluded. You agree to submit to the jurisdiction of the State of Illinois [insert "The Netherlands" where European HERE Data is used] for any and all disputes, claims and actions arising from or in connection with the Data provided to you hereunder.

**Government End Users.** If the Data is being acquired by or on behalf of the United States government or any other entity seeking or applying rights similar to those customarily claimed by the United States government, this Data is a "commercial item" as that term is defined at 48 C.F.R. ("FAR") 2.101, is licensed in accordance with these End-User Terms, and each copy of Data delivered or otherwise furnished shall be marked and embedded as appropriate with the following "Notice of Use," and shall be treated in accordance with such Notice:

NOTICE OF USE
CONTRACTOR (MANUFACTURER/SUPPLIER) NAME: HERE
CONTRACTOR (MANUFACTURER/SUPPLIER) ADDRESS: c/o Nokia, 425 West Randolph Street, Chicago, Illinois 60606
This Data is a commercial item as defined in FAR 2.101 and is subject to these End-User Terms under which this Data was provided.
© 1987 – 2014 HERE – All rights reserved.

If the Contracting Officer, federal government agency, or any federal official refuses to use the legend provided herein, the Contracting Officer, federal government agency, or any federal official must notify HERE prior to seeking additional or alternative rights in the Data.

### I. US/Canada Territory

A. United States Data. The End-User Terms for any Application containing Data for the United States shall contain the following notices:

"HERE holds a non-exclusive license from the United States Postal Service® to publish and sell ZIP+4® information."

"©United States Postal Service® 20XX. Prices are not established, controlled or approved by the United States Postal Service®. The following trademarks and registrations are owned by the USPS: United States Postal Service, USPS, and ZIP+4."

## Customer Information

---

B. Canada Data. The following provisions apply to the Data for Canada, which may include or reflect data from third party licensors (“Third Party Data”), including Her Majesty the Queen in Right of Canada (“Her Majesty”), Canada Post Corporation (“Canada Post”) and the Department of Natural Resources of Canada (“NRCan”):

1. Disclaimer and Limitation: Client agrees that its use of the Third Party Data is subject to the following provisions:

a. Disclaimer: The Third Party Data is licensed on an “as is” basis. The licensors of such data, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, make no guarantees, representations or warranties respecting such data, either express or implied, arising by law or otherwise, including but not limited to, effectiveness, completeness, accuracy or fitness for a particular purpose.

b. Limitation on Liability: The Third Party Data licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, shall not be liable: (i) in respect of any claim, demand or action, irrespective of the nature of the cause of the claim, demand or action alleging any loss, injury or damages, direct or indirect, which may result from the use or possession of such Data; or (ii) in any way for loss of revenues or contracts, or any other consequential loss of any kind resulting from any defect in the Data.

2. Copyright Notice: In connection with each copy of all or any portion of the Data for the Territory of Canada, Client shall affix in a conspicuous manner the following copyright notice on at least one of: (i) the label for the storage media of the copy; (ii) the packaging for the copy; or (iii) other materials packaged with the copy, such as user manuals or end user license agreements: “This data includes information taken with permission from Canadian authorities, including © Her Majesty the Queen in Right of Canada, © Queen’s Printer for Ontario, © Canada Post Corporation, GeoBase®, © The Department of Natural Resources Canada. All rights reserved.”

3. End-User Terms: Except as otherwise agreed by the parties, in connection with the provision of any portion of the Data for the Territory of Canada to End-Users as may be authorized under the Agreement, Client shall provide such End-Users, in a reasonably conspicuous manner, with terms (set forth with other end user terms required to be provided under the Agreement, or as otherwise may be provided, by Client) which shall include the following provisions on behalf of the Third Party Data licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan:

The Data may include or reflect data of licensors, including Her Majesty the Queen in the Right of Canada (“Her Majesty”), Canada Post Corporation (“Canada Post”) and the Department of Natural Resources Canada (“NRCan”). Such data is licensed on an “as is” basis. The licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, make no guarantees, representations or warranties respecting such data,

# Customer Information

---

either express or implied, arising by law or otherwise, including but not limited to, effectiveness, completeness, accuracy or fitness for a particular purpose. The licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, shall not be liable in respect of any claim, demand or action, irrespective of the nature of the cause of the claim, demand or action alleging any loss, injury or damages, direct or indirect, which may result from the use or possession of the data or the Data. The licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, shall not be liable in any way for loss of revenues or contracts, or any other consequential loss of any kind resulting from any defect in the data or the Data. End User shall indemnify and save harmless the licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, and their officers, employees and agents from and against any claim, demand or action, irrespective of the nature of the cause of the claim, demand or action, alleging loss, costs, expenses, damages or injuries (including injuries resulting in death) arising out of the use or possession of the data or the Data.

4. Additional Provisions: The terms contained in this Section are in addition to all of the rights and obligations of the parties under the Agreement. To the extent that any of the provisions of this Section are inconsistent with, or conflict with, any other provisions of the Agreement, the provisions of this Section shall prevail.

II. Mexico. The following provision applies to the Data for Mexico, which includes certain data from the Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía (“INEGI”):

A. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging containing Data for Mexico shall contain the following notice: “Fuente: INEGI (Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía)”

III. Latin America Territory

A. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy:

Territory	Notice
Argentina	IGN “INSTITUTO GEOGRAFICO NACIONAL ARGENTINO”
Ecuador	“INSTITUTO GEOGRAFICO MILITAR DEL ECUADOR AUTORIZACION N° IGM-2011-01- PCO-01 DEL 25 DE ENERO DE 2011” “source: © IGN 2009 - BD TOPO ®”
Guadeloupe, French Guiana and Martinique Mexico	“Fuente: INEGI (Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía)”

IV. Middle East Territory

# Customer Information

---

A. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy:

Country Notice

Jordan “© Royal Jordanian Geographic Centre”. The foregoing notice requirement for Jordan Data is a material term of the Agreement. If Client or any of its permitted sublicensees (if any) fail to meet such requirement, HERE shall have the right to terminate Client’s license with respect to the Jordan Data.

B. Jordan Data. Client and its permitted sublicensees (if any) are restricted from licensing and/or otherwise distributing HERE’s database for the country of Jordan (“Jordan Data”) for use in Enterprise Applications to (i) non-Jordanian entities for use of the Jordan Data solely in Jordan or (ii) Jordan-based customers. In addition, Client, its permitted sublicensees (if any) and End-Users are restricted from using the Jordan Data in Enterprise Applications if such party is (i) a non-Jordanian entity using the Jordan Data solely in Jordan or (ii) a Jordan-based customer. For purposes of the foregoing, “Enterprise Applications” shall mean Geomarketing applications, GIS applications, mobile business asset management applications, call center applications, telematics applications, public organization Internet applications or for providing geocoding services.

## V. Europe Territory

### A. Use of Certain Traffic Codes in Europe

1. General Restrictions Applicable to Traffic Codes. Client acknowledges and agrees that in certain countries of the Europe Territory, Client will need to obtain rights directly from third party RDS-TMC code providers to receive and use the Traffic Codes in the Data and to deliver to End-Users Transactions in any way derived from or based on such Traffic Codes. For such countries, HERE shall deliver the Data incorporating Traffic Codes to Client only after receiving certification from Client of its having obtained such rights.

2. Display of Third Party Rights Legends for Belgium. Client shall, for each Transaction that uses Traffic Codes for Belgium, provide the following notice to the End-User: “Traffic Codes for Belgium are provided by the Ministerie van de Vlaamse Gemeenschap and the Ministère de l’Équipement et des Transports.”

B. Paper Maps. With respect to any license granted to Client relating to making, selling or distributing paper maps (i.e., a map fixed on a paper or paper-like medium): (a) such license with respect to Data for the Territory of Great Britain is conditioned on Client’s entering into and complying with a separate written agreement with the Ordnance Survey (“OS”) to create and sell paper maps, Client’s paying to the OS any and all applicable paper map royalties, and Client’s complying with the OS copyright notice requirements; (b) such license for selling or otherwise distributing for charge with respect to Data for the Territory of Czech Republic

# Customer Information

is conditioned on Client's obtaining prior written consent from Kartografie a.s.; (c) such license for selling or distributing with respect to Data for the Territory of Switzerland is conditioned on Client's obtaining a permit from Bundesamt für Landestopografie of Switzerland; (d) Client is restricted from using Data for the Territory of France to create paper maps with a scale between 1:5,000 and 1:250,000; and (e) Client is restricted from using any Data to create, sell or distribute paper maps that are the same or substantially similar, in terms of data content and specific use of color, symbols and scale, to paper maps published by the European national mapping agencies, including without limitation, Landervermessungämter of Germany, Topografische Dienst of the Netherlands, Nationaal Geografisch Instituut of Belgium, Bundesamt für Landestopografie of Switzerland, Bundesamt für Eich- und Vermessungswesen of Austria, and the National Land Survey of Sweden.

C. OS Enforcement. Without limiting Section IV(B) above, with respect to Data for the Territory of Great Britain, Client acknowledges and agrees that the Ordnance Survey ("OS") may bring a direct action against Client to enforce compliance with the OS copyright notice (see Section IV(D) below) and paper map requirements (see Section IV(B) above) contained in this Agreement.

D. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy:

Country(ies) Notice

Austria	"© Bundesamt für Eich- und Vermessungswesen"
Croatia Cyprus, Estonia, Latvia, Lithuania, Moldova, Poland, Slovenia and/or Ukraine	"© EuroGeographics"
France	"source: © IGN 2009 – BD TOPO ®"
Germany	"Die Grundlagendaten wurden mit Genehmigung der zuständigen Behörden entnommen"
Great Britain	"Contains Ordnance Survey data © Crown copyright and database right 2010 Contains Royal Mail data © Royal Mail copyright and database right 2010"
Greece	"Copyright Geomatics Ltd."
Hungary	"Copyright © 2003; Top-Map Ltd."
Italy	"La Banca Dati Italiana è stata prodotta usando quale riferimento anche cartografia numerica ed al tratto prodotta e fornita dalla Regione Toscana."
Norway	"Copyright © 2000; Norwegian Mapping Authority"
Portugal	"Source: IgeoE – Portugal"

# Customer Information

---

Spain “Información geográfica propiedad del CNIG”

Sweden “Based upon electronic data © National Land Survey Sweden.”

Switzerland “Topografische Grundlage: © Bundesamt für Landestopographie.

E. Respective Country Distribution. Client acknowledges that HERE has not received approvals to distribute map data for the following countries in such respective countries: Albania, Belarus, Kyrgyzstan, Moldova and Uzbekistan. HERE may update such list from time to time. The license rights granted to Client under this TL with respect to the Data for such countries are contingent upon Client’s compliance with all applicable laws and regulations, including, without limitation, any required licenses or approvals to distribute the Application incorporating such Data in such respective countries.

## VI. Australia Territory

A. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy:

Copyright. Based on data provided under license from PSMA Australia Limited ([www.pasma.com.au](http://www.pasma.com.au)).

Product incorporates data which is © 20XX Telstra Corporation Limited, GM Holden Limited, Intelomatics Australia Pty Ltd and Continental Pty Ltd.

B. Third Party Notices for Australia. In addition to the foregoing, the End-User Terms for any Application containing RDS-TMC Traffic Codes for Australia shall contain the following notice: “Product incorporates traffic location codes which is © 20XX Telstra Corporation Limited and its licensors.”

## **AT&T Vehicle Network Carrier Telematics Disclosure**

END USER FOR PURPOSES OF THIS SECTION MEANS YOU AND YOUR HEIRS, EXECUTORS, LEGAL PERSONAL REPRESENTATIVES AND PERMITTED ASSIGNS. FOR PURPOSES OF THIS SECTION “UNDERLYING WIRELESS SERVICE CARRIER” INCLUDES ITS AFFILIATES AND CONTRACTORS AND THEIR RESPECTIVE OFFICERS, DIRECTORS, EMPLOYEES, SUCCESSORS AND ASSIGNS. END USER HAS NO CONTRACTUAL RELATIONSHIP WITH THE UNDERLYING WIRELESS SERVICE CARRIER AND END USER IS NOT A THIRD PARTY BENEFICIARY OF ANY AGREEMENT BETWEEN FORD AND UNDERLYING CARRIER. END USER UNDERSTANDS AND AGREES THAT THE UNDERLYING CARRIER HAS NO LEGAL, EQUITABLE, OR OTHER LIABILITY OF ANY KIND TO END USER. IN ANY EVENT, REGARDLESS OF THE FORM OF THE ACTION, WHETHER FOR BREACH OF CONTRACT, WARRANTY, NEGLIGENCE, STRICT LIABILITY IN TORT OR OTHERWISE, END USER’S EXCLUSIVE REMEDY FOR CLAIMS ARISING IN ANY WAY IN CONNECTION WITH THIS AGREEMENT, FOR ANY CAUSE WHATSOEVER, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO ANY FAILURE OR



## Customer Information

---

DISRUPTION OF SERVICE PROVIDED HEREUNDER, IS LIMITED TO PAYMENT OF DAMAGES IN AN AMOUNT NOT TO EXCEED THE AMOUNT PAID BY END USER FOR THE SERVICES DURING THE TWO-MONTH PERIOD PRECEDING THE DATE THE CLAIM AROSE.

(ii) END USER AGREES TO INDEMNIFY AND HOLD HARMLESS THE UNDERLYING WIRELESS SERVICE CARRIER AND ITS OFFICERS, EMPLOYEES, AND AGENTS AGAINST ANY AND ALL CLAIMS, INCLUDING WITHOUT LIMITATION CLAIMS FOR LIBEL, SLANDER, OR ANY PROPERTY DAMAGE, PERSONAL INJURY OR DEATH, ARISING IN ANY WAY, DIRECTLY OR INDIRECTLY, IN CONNECTION WITH THIS AGREEMENT OR THE USE, FAILURE TO USE, OR INABILITY TO USE THE DEVICE EXCEPT WHERE THE CLAIMS RESULT FROM THE UNDERLYING CARRIER'S GROSS NEGLIGENCE OR WILLFUL MISCONDUCT. THIS INDEMNITY WILL SURVIVE THE TERMINATION OF THE AGREEMENT.

(iii) END USER HAS NO PROPERTY RIGHT IN ANY NUMBER ASSIGNED TO THE DEVICE.

(iv) END USER UNDERSTANDS THAT FORD AND THE UNDERLYING CARRIER CANNOT GUARANTY THE SECURITY OF WIRELESS TRANSMISSIONS, AND WILL NOT BE LIABLE FOR ANY LACK OF SECURITY RELATING TO THE USE OF THE SERVICES

THE SERVICE IS FOR [END USER'S] USE ONLY AND END USER MAY NOT RESELL THE SERVICE TO ANY OTHER PARTY END USER UNDERSTANDS THAT THE UNDERLYING CARRIER DOES NOT GUARANTEE ANY END USER UNINTERRUPTED SERVICE OR COVERAGE. THE UNDERLYING CARRIER DOES NOT WARRANT THAT END USERS CAN OR WILL BE LOCATED USING THE SERVICE. THE UNDERLYING CARRIER

MAKES NO WARRANTY, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, SUITABILITY, OR PERFORMANCE REGARDING ANY SERVICES OR GOODS, AND IN NO EVENT SHALL AT&T BE LIABLE, WHETHER OR NOT DUE TO ITS OWN NEGLIGENCE, FOR ANY: (A) ACT OR OMISSION OF A THIRD PARTY; (B) MISTAKES, OMISSIONS, INTERRUPTIONS, ERRORS, FAILURES TO TRANSMIT, DELAYS, OR DEFECTS IN THE SERVICE PROVIDED BY OR THROUGH THE UNDERLYING CARRIER; (C) DAMAGE OR INJURY CAUSED BY SUSPENSION OR TERMINATION BY THE UNDERLYING CARRIER; OR (D) DAMAGE OR INJURY CAUSED BY A FAILURE OR DELAY IN CONNECTING A CALL TO ANY ENTITY, INCLUDING 911 OR ANY OTHER EMERGENCY SERVICE. TO THE FULL EXTENT ALLOWED BY LAW, THE END USER RELEASES, INDEMNIFIES AND HOLDS THE UNDERLYING CARRIER HARMLESS FROM AND AGAINST ANY AND ALL CLAIMS OF ANY PERSON OR ENTITY FOR DAMAGES OF ANY NATURE ARISING IN ANY WAY FROM OR RELATING TO, DIRECTLY OR INDIRECTLY, SERVICES PROVIDED BY THE UNDERLYING CARRIER OR ANY PERSON'S USE THEREOF, INCLUDING CLAIMS ARISING IN WHOLE OR IN PART FROM THE ALLEGED NEGLIGENCE OF THE UNDERLYING CARRIER.

### **VII. China Territory**

#### ***Personal Use Only***

You agree to use this Data together with [insert name of Client Application] for the solely personal, non-commercial purposes for which you were licensed, and not for service bureau, time-sharing or other similar purposes. Accordingly, but subject to the restrictions set forth in the following paragraphs, you may copy this Data only as necessary for your personal use to (i)

## Customer Information

---

view it, and (ii) save it, provided that you do not remove any copyright notices that appear and do not modify the Data in any way. You agree not to otherwise reproduce, copy, modify, decompile, disassemble or reverse engineer any portion of this Data, and may not transfer or distribute it in any form, for any purpose, except to the extent permitted by mandatory laws.

### **Restrictions**

Except where you have been specifically licensed to do so by NAV2, and without limiting the preceding paragraph, you may not (a) use this Data with any products, systems, or applications installed or otherwise connected to or in communication with vehicles, capable of vehicle navigation, positioning, dispatch, real time route guidance, fleet management or similar applications; or (b) with or in communication with any positioning devices or any mobile or wireless-connected electronic or computer devices, including without limitation cellular phones, palmtop and handheld computers, pagers, and personal digital assistants or PDAs. You agree to cease using this Data if you fail to comply with these terms and conditions.

### **Limited Warranty**

NAV2 warrants that (a) the Data will perform substantially in accordance with the accompanying written materials for a period of ninety (90) days from the date of receipt, and (b) any support services provided by NAV2 shall be substantially as described in applicable written materials provided to you by NAV2, and NAV2's support engineers will make commercially reasonable efforts to solve any problem issues.

### **Customer Remedies**

NAV2 and its suppliers' entire liability and your exclusive remedy shall be, at NAV2's sole discretion, either (a) return of the price paid, if any, or (b) repair or replacement of the Data that do not meet NAV2's Limited Warranty and that are returned to NAV2 with a copy of your receipt. This Limited Warranty is void if failure of the Data has resulted from accident, abuse, or misapplication. Any replacement Data will be warranted for the remainder of the original warranty period or thirty (30) days, whichever is longer. Neither these remedies nor any product support services offered by NAV2 are available without proof of purchase from an authorized international source.

### **No Other Warranty:**

EXCEPT FOR THE LIMITED WARRANTY SET FORTH ABOVE AND TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, NAV2 AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) DISCLAIM ANY WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, OF QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, OWNERSHIP OR NON-INFRINGEMENT. Certain warranty exclusions may not be permitted under applicable law, so to that extent the above exclusion may not apply to you.

### **Limited Liability:**

TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, NAV2 AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) SHALL NOT BE LIABLE TO YOU: IN RESPECT OF ANY CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION, IRRESPECTIVE OF THE NATURE OF THE CAUSE OF THE CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION ALLEGING ANY LOSS, INJURY OR DAMAGES, DIRECT OR INDIRECT, WHICH MAY RESULT FROM THE USE OR POSSESSION OF THE INFORMATION; OR

# Customer Information

---

FOR ANY LOSS OF PROFIT, REVENUE, CONTRACTS OR SAVINGS, OR ANY OTHER DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF YOUR USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THIS INFORMATION, ANY DEFECT IN THE INFORMATION, OR THE BREACH OF THESE TERMS OR CONDITIONS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION IN CONTRACT OR TORT OR BASED ON A WARRANTY, EVEN IF NAV2 OR ITS LICENSORS HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. UNDER NO CIRCUMSTANCES SHALL NAV2'S OR ITS SUPPLIERS' LIABILITY HEREUNDER EXCEED THE PRICE PAID. Certain liability exclusions may not be permitted under applicable law, so to that extent the above exclusion may not apply to you.

## **Export Control**

You agree not to export to anywhere any part of the Data provided to you or any direct product thereof except in compliance with, and with all licenses and approvals required under, applicable export laws, rules and regulations.

## **IP Protection**

The Data are owned by NAV2 or its suppliers and are protected by applicable copyright and other intellectual property law and treaties. The Data are provided solely on the basis of a license to use, not sale.

## **Entire Agreement**

These terms and conditions constitute the entire agreement between NAV2 (and its licensors, including their licensors and suppliers) and you pertaining to the subject matter hereof, and supersedes in their entirety any and all written or oral agreements previously existing between us with respect to such subject matter.

## **Governing Law.**

The above terms and conditions shall be governed by the laws of the People's Republic of China, without giving effect to (i) its conflict of laws provisions, or (ii) the United Nations Convention for Contracts for the International Sale of Goods, which is explicitly excluded. Any dispute arising from or in connection with the Data provided to you hereunder shall be submitted to the Shanghai International Economic and Trade Arbitration Commission for arbitration.

## **Gracenote® Copyright**

CD and music-related data from Gracenote, Inc., copyright©

2000-2007 Gracenote. Gracenote Software, copyright © 2000-2007 Gracenote. This product and service may practice one or more of the following U.S. Patents 5,987,525; 6,061,680; 6,154,773; 6,161,132; 6,230,192; 6,230,207; 6,240,459; 6,330,593 and other patents issued or pending. Some services supplied under license from Open Globe, Inc. for U.S. Patent 6,304,523.

Gracenote and CDDB are registered trademarks of Gracenote. The Gracenote logo and logotype, and the "Powered by Gracenote™" logo are trademarks of Gracenote.

## **Gracenote® End User License Agreement (EULA)**

This device contains software from Gracenote, Inc. of 2000 Powell Street Emeryville, California 94608 ("Gracenote").

The software from Gracenote (the "Gracenote Software") enables this device to do disc and music file identification and obtain music-related information, including name, artist, track, and title information ("Gracenote Data") from online servers

## Customer Information

---

("Gracenote Servers"), and to perform other functions. You may use Gracenote Data only by means of the intended End User functions of this device. This device may contain content belonging to Gracenote's providers. If so, all of the restrictions set forth herein with respect to Gracenote Data shall also apply to such content and such content providers shall be entitled to all of the benefits and protections set forth herein that are available to Gracenote. You agree that you will use the content from Gracenote ("Gracenote Content"), Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers for your own personal, non-commercial use only. You agree not to assign, copy, transfer or transmit the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Software or any Gracenote Data (except in a Tag associated with a music file) to any third party. YOU AGREE NOT TO USE OR EXPLOIT GRACENOTE CONTENT, GRACENOTE DATA, THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE, OR GRACENOTE SERVERS, EXCEPT AS EXPRESSLY PERMITTED HEREIN.

You agree that your non-exclusive licenses to use the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers will terminate if you violate these restrictions. If your licenses terminate, you agree to cease any and all use of the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers.

Gracenote, respectively, reserve all rights in Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and the Gracenote Servers and Gracenote Content, including all ownership rights. Under no circumstances will either Gracenote become liable for any payment to you for any information that you provide,

including any copyrighted material or music file information. You agree that Gracenote may enforce its respective rights, collectively or separately, under this agreement against you, directly in each company's own name.

Gracenote uses a unique identifier to track queries for statistical purposes. The purpose of a randomly assigned numeric identifier is to allow Gracenote to count queries without knowing anything about who you are. For more information, see the web page at [www.gracenote.com](http://www.gracenote.com) for the Gracenote Privacy Policy.

THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE, EACH ITEM OF GRACENOTE DATA AND THE GRACENOTE CONTENT ARE LICENSED TO YOU "AS IS". NEITHER GRACENOTE MAKES ANY REPRESENTATIONS OR WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, REGARDING THE ACCURACY OF ANY GRACENOTE DATA FROM THE GRACENOTE SERVERS OR GRACENOTE CONTENT. GRACENOTE COLLECTIVELY AND SEPARATELY RESERVE THE RIGHT TO DELETE DATA AND/OR CONTENT FROM THE COMPANIES' RESPECTIVE SERVERS OR, IN THE CASE OF GRACENOTE, CHANGE DATA CATEGORIES FOR ANY CAUSE THAT GRACENOTE DEEMS SUFFICIENT. NO WARRANTY IS MADE THAT EITHER GRACENOTE CONTENT OR THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR GRACENOTE SERVERS ARE ERROR-FREE OR THAT THE FUNCTIONING OF THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR GRACENOTE SERVERS WILL BE UNINTERRUPTED. GRACENOTE IS NOT OBLIGATED TO PROVIDE YOU WITH ANY ENHANCED OR ADDITIONAL DATA TYPES THAT GRACENOTE MAY CHOOSE TO PROVIDE IN THE FUTURE AND IS FREE TO DISCONTINUE ITS ONLINE SERVICES AT ANY TIME. GRACENOTE DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO,

# Customer Information

IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, TITLE, AND NON-INFRINGEMENT. NEITHER GRACENOTE WARRANTS THE RESULTS THAT WILL BE OBTAINED BY YOUR USE OF THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR ANY GRACENOTE SERVER. IN NO CASE WILL GRACENOTE BE LIABLE FOR ANY CONSEQUENTIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES OR FOR ANY LOST PROFITS OR LOST REVENUES FOR ANY REASON WHATSOEVER. © Gracenote 2007.

## Taiwan Territory

Note: In accordance with the management approach of low-power radio wave radiation motors:

Article 12: For approved and certified low-power radiation motor models, companies, firms or users must not alter the frequency, increase the power or change the characteristics and functions of the original design without authorization.

Article 14: The usage of low-power radio-frequency motors must not affect aviation safety and interfere with legal telecommunications. Should interference be detected, immediately stop using the device and only resume usage after ensuring that there is no longer any interference. For the legal telecommunication and wireless telecommunication of the telco, the low-power radio frequency motor must be able to tolerate legal limits of interference from telecommunication, industrial, scientific and radio wave equipment.

## SUNA TRAFFIC CHANNEL – TERMS AND CONDITIONS

By activating, using and/or accessing the SUNA Traffic Channel, SUNA Predictive or other content or material provided by Intellematics (together, **SUNA Products and/or Services**), you must accept certain terms and conditions. The following is a brief summary of the terms and conditions that apply to you. To view the full terms and conditions relevant to your use of the SUNA Products and/or Services, please consult:

Website
<a href="http://www.sunatrafic.com.au/termsandconditions/">www.sunatrafic.com.au/termsandconditions/</a>

### 1. Acceptance

By using SUNA Products and/or Services, you will be deemed to have accepted and agreed to be bound by the terms and conditions fully detailed at:

Website
<a href="http://www.sunatrafic.com.au/termsandconditions/">www.sunatrafic.com.au/termsandconditions/</a>

### 2. Intellectual Property

SUNA Products and/or Services are for your personal use. You may not record, or retransmit the content, nor use the content in association with any other traffic information or route guidance service or device not approved by Intellematics. You obtain no right of ownership in any Intellectual Property Rights (including copyright) in the data that is used to provide SUNA Products and/or Services.

### 3. Appropriate Use

# Customer Information

SUNA Products and/or Services are intended as an aid to personal motoring and travel planning, and do not provide comprehensive or accurate information on all occasions. On occasions, you may experience additional delay as a result of using SUNA Products and/or Services. You acknowledge that it is not intended, or suitable, for use in applications where time of arrival or driving directions may impact the safety of the public or yourself.

## 4. Use of SUNA Products and Services while driving

You, and other authorized drivers of the vehicle in which SUNA Products and/or Services are available or installed and active, remain at all times responsible for observing all relevant laws and codes of safe driving. In particular, you agree to only actively operate SUNA Products and/or Services when the Vehicle is at a complete stop and it is safe to do so.

## 5. Service Continuity and Reception of the SUNA Traffic Channel

We will use reasonable endeavors to provide the SUNA Traffic Channel 24 hours a day, 365 days a year. The SUNA Traffic Channel may occasionally be unavailable for technical reasons or for planned maintenance. We will try to perform maintenance at times when congestion is light. We reserve the right to withdraw SUNA Products and/or Services at any time.

Also, we cannot assure the uninterrupted reception of the SUNA Traffic Channel RDS-TMC signal at any particular location.

## 6. Limitation of Liability


Neither Intelematics (nor its suppliers or the manufacturer of your device (the “**Suppliers**”)) shall be liable to you or to any third party for any damages either direct, indirect, incidental, consequential or otherwise arising out of the use of or inability to use SUNA Products and/or

Services even if Intelematics or a Supplier has been advised of the possibility of such damages. You also acknowledge that the neither Intelematics nor any Supplier guarantees nor make any warranties that relate to the availability, accuracy or completeness of SUNA Products and/or Services, and to the extent which it is lawful to do so, both Intelematics and each Supplier excludes any warranties which might otherwise be implied by any State or Federal legislation in relation to SUNA Products and/or Services.

## 7. Please Note

Great care has been taken in preparing this manual. Constant product development may mean that some information is not entirely up-to-date. The information in this document is subject to change without notice.

## EMISSION LAW



**WARNING:** Do not remove or alter the original equipment floor covering or insulation between it and the metal floor of the vehicle. The floor covering and insulation protect occupants of the vehicle from the engine and exhaust system heat and noise. On vehicles with no original equipment floor covering insulation, do not carry passengers in a manner that permits prolonged skin contact with the metal floor. Failure to follow these instructions may result in fire or personal injury.

U.S. federal laws and certain state laws prohibit removing or rendering inoperative emission control system components. Similar federal or provincial laws may apply in Canada. We do not approve of any vehicle modification without first determining applicable laws.

# Customer Information



Tampering with emissions control systems including related sensors or the Diesel Exhaust Fluid system can result in reduced engine power and the illumination of the service engine soon light.

## Tampering With a Noise Control System

Federal laws prohibit the following acts:

- Removal or rendering inoperative by any person other than for purposes of maintenance.
- Repair or replacement of any device or element of the design incorporated into a new vehicle for the purpose of noise control prior to its sale or delivery to the ultimate purchaser or while it is in use.
- The use of the vehicle after any person removes or renders inoperative any device or element of the design.

The U.S. Environmental Protection Agency may presume to constitute tampering as follows:

- Removal of hood blanket, fender apron absorbers, fender apron barriers, underbody noise shields or acoustically absorptive material.
- Tampering or rendering inoperative the engine speed governor, to allow engine speed to exceed manufacturer specifications.

If the engine does not start, runs rough, experiences a decrease in engine performance, experiences excess fuel consumption or produces excessive exhaust smoke, check for the following:

- A plugged or disconnected air inlet system hose.
- A plugged engine air filter element.
- Water in the fuel filter and water separator.

- A clogged fuel filter.
- Contaminated fuel.
- Air in the fuel system, due to loose connections.
- An open or pinched sensor hose.
- Incorrect engine oil level.
- Incorrect fuel for climatic conditions.
- Incorrect engine oil viscosity for climactic conditions.

**Note:** *Some vehicles have a lifetime fuel filter that is integrated with the fuel tank. Regular maintenance or replacement is not needed.*

**Note:** *If these checks do not help you correct the concern, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.*

## Noise Emissions Warranty, Prohibited Tampering Acts and Maintenance

On January 1, 1978, Federal regulation became effective governing the noise emission on trucks over 10,000 lb (4,536 kg) Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR). The preceding statements concerning prohibited tampering acts and maintenance, and the noise warranty found in the Warranty Guide, are applicable to complete chassis cabs over 10,000 lb (4,536 kg) GVWR.

# Appendices

## ELECTROMAGNETIC COMPATIBILITY



**WARNING:** Do not place objects or mount equipment on or near the airbag cover, on the side of the front or rear seatbacks, or in areas that may come into contact with a deploying airbag. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of personal injury in the event of a crash.



**WARNING:** Do not fasten antenna cables to vehicle wiring, fuel pipes and brake pipes.

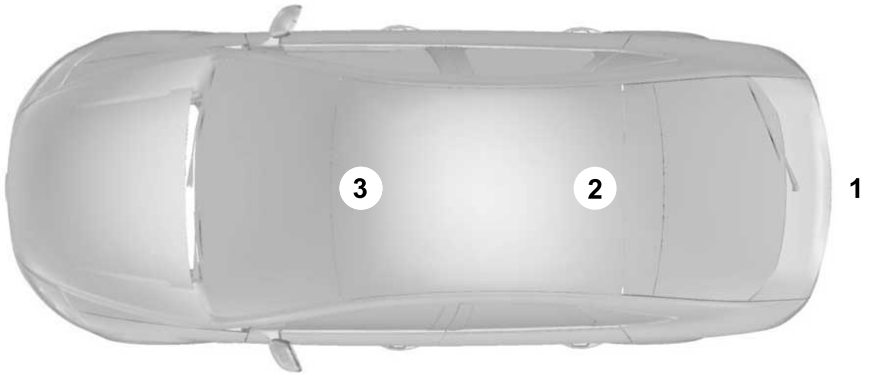


**WARNING:** Keep antenna and power cables at least 4 in (10 cm) from any electronic modules and airbags.

**Note:** We test and certify your vehicle to meet electromagnetic compatibility legislation. It is your responsibility to make sure that any equipment an authorized dealer installs on your vehicle complies with applicable local legislation and other requirements. Installation of some aftermarket electronic devices could degrade the performance of vehicle functions, which use radio frequency signals such as broadcast radio receiver, tire pressure monitoring system, push button start, **Bluetooth®** connectivity or satellite navigation.

**Note:** Any radio frequency transmitter equipment in your vehicle (such as cellular telephones and amateur radio transmitters) must keep to the parameters in the following illustrations and table. We do not provide any other special provisions or conditions for installations or use.

### Car





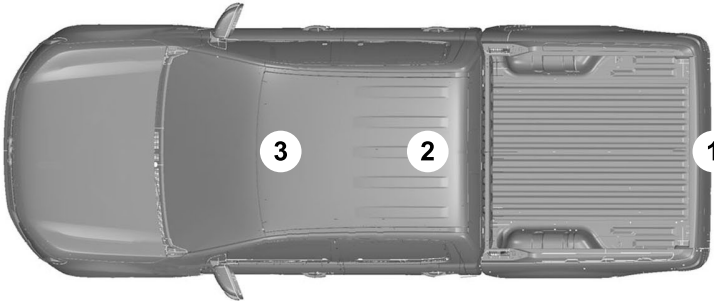
# Appendices

---

## Van



## Truck



# Appendices

Frequency Band MHz	Maximum Output Power Watt (Peak RMS)	Antenna Positions
1-30	50	1
50-54	50	2, 3
68-88	50	2, 3
142-176	50	2, 3
380-512	50	2, 3
806-870	10	2, 3

**Note:** After the installation of radio frequency transmitters, check for disturbances from and to all electrical equipment in your vehicle, both in the standby and transmit modes.

Check all electrical equipment:

- With the ignition ON.
- With the vehicle running.
- During a road test at various speeds.

Check that electromagnetic fields generated inside your vehicle cabin by the transmitter installed do not exceed applicable human exposure requirements.

## DECLARATION OF CONFORMITY - VEHICLES WITH: SYNC 3

### Radio Frequency Statement

SYNC Version	FCC Identification Number	IC Identification Number
3.0	ACJ-SYNCG3-L	216B-SYNCG3-L
3.1	ACJ-FA-170-BCARHS	216B-FA170BCARHS
3.2	ACJ-FG-185-SG32MH	216B-FG185SG32MH



**WARNING:** Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. The term "IC:" before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

These devices comply with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with RSS-210 of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. The device does not cause harmful interference.
2. The device accepts any interference received, including interference that could cause undesired operation.



# Index

## 9

911 Assist.....59

## A

### A/C

See: Climate Control - Vehicles With: Dual Automatic Temperature Control (DATC).....126

See: Climate Control - Vehicles With: Electronic Automatic Temperature Control (EATC).....130

About This Manual.....17

### ABS

See: Brakes.....191

Accessing the Trip Computer - Vehicles With: 4.2 Inch Screen.....121

Accessing the Trip Computer - Vehicles With: 6.5 Inch Screen.....121

Accessories.....433

Adaptive Cruise Control.....215

Adaptive Cruise Control – Troubleshooting.....223

Lane Centering.....221

Adaptive Cruise Control Automatic Cancellation.....218

Adaptive Cruise Control Indicators.....221

Adaptive Cruise Control Limitations.....216

Adaptive Cruise Control Precautions.....215

Adaptive Cruise Control – Troubleshooting.....223

Adaptive Cruise Control – Information Messages.....223

Adjusting the Exterior Mirrors.....104

Adjusting the Headlamps.....312

Adjusting the Instrument Panel Lighting Brightness.....99

Adjusting the Integrated Trailer Brake Controller Mode.....269

Adjusting the Seatbelt Height.....45

Adjusting the Seatbelts During Pregnancy.....45

Adjusting the Sound Settings.....385

Adjusting the Steering Wheel.....89

Adjusting the Volume.....384

Aid Mode.....232

How Does Aid Mode Work.....232

What Is Aid Mode.....232

Airbag Precautions.....52

Airbags.....50

Front Passenger Sensing System.....54

### Air Conditioning

See: Climate Control - Vehicles With: Dual Automatic Temperature Control (DATC).....126

See: Climate Control - Vehicles With: Electronic Automatic Temperature Control (EATC).....130

Air Conditioning System Capacity and Specification - 2.0L EcoBoost™.....365

Air Conditioning System Capacity and Specification - 2.5L, Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV).....366

### Air Filter

See: Changing the Engine Air Filter - 2.0L EcoBoost™.....308

See: Changing the Engine Air Filter - 2.5L, Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV).....309

Alert and Aid Mode.....232

How Does Alert and Aid Mode Work.....233

What Is Alert and Aid Mode.....232

Alert Mode.....231

Adjusting the Steering Wheel Vibration Intensity.....232

How Does Alert Mode Work.....232

What Is Alert Mode.....231

All-Wheel Drive.....189

All-Wheel Drive – Troubleshooting.....190

All-Wheel Drive Limitations.....189

All-Wheel Drive Precautions.....189

All-Wheel Drive – Troubleshooting.....190

All-Wheel Drive – Information Messages.....190

AM/FM Radio.....376

AM/FM Radio Limitations.....386

Selecting a Radio Station.....386

Ambient Lighting.....99

Adjusting Ambient Lighting.....100

Switching Ambient Lighting On and Off.....99

Anti-Lock Braking System.....191

Anti-Lock Braking System Indicators.....191

# Index

Anti-Lock Braking System	
Limitations.....	191
Anti-Theft Alarm System.....	85
Arming the Anti-Theft Alarm System.....	86
Disarming the Anti-Theft Alarm System.....	86
How Does the Anti-Theft Alarm System Work.....	85
What Are the Inclination Sensors.....	85
What Are the Interior Sensors.....	85
What Is the Anti-Theft Alarm System.....	85
What Is the Battery Backup Alarm.....	86
What Is the Perimeter Alarm.....	85
Anti-Theft Alarm System Settings.....	86
Setting the Alarm Security Level.....	86
Switching Ask on Exit On and Off.....	86
What are the Alarm Security Levels.....	86
What Is Ask on Exit.....	86
Appendices.....	509
Applying the Electric Parking Brake.....	194
Applying the Electric Parking Brake in an Emergency.....	194
Apps.....	380
Audio System.....	375
AM/FM Radio.....	386
Digital Radio.....	386
General Information.....	375
Satellite Radio.....	388
Audio System Precautions.....	384
Audio System – Troubleshooting.....	383
Audio Unit.....	375
Auto Hold.....	198
Auto Hold Indicators.....	198
Autolamps.....	94
Autolamp Settings.....	94
What Are Autolamps.....	94
Autolock.....	74
Autolock Requirements.....	74
What Is Autolock.....	74
Automatically Releasing the Electric Parking Brake.....	195
Automatic Crash Shutoff.....	284
Automatic Crash Shutoff Precautions.....	284
Re-Enabling Your Vehicle.....	284
What Is Automatic Crash Shutoff.....	284
Automatic Emergency Braking.....	247
Switching Automatic Emergency Braking On and Off.....	247
What Is Automatic Emergency Braking.....	247
Automatic Engine Stop.....	161
How Does Automatic Engine Stop Work.....	162
Overriding Automatic Engine Stop.....	162
Switching Automatic Engine Stop On and Off.....	162
What Is Automatic Engine Stop.....	161
Automatic High Beam Control.....	96
Automatic High Beam Control Indicators.....	97
Automatic High Beam Control Limitations.....	97
Automatic High Beam Control Precautions.....	96
Automatic High Beam Control Requirements.....	97
How Does Automatic High Beam Control Work.....	96
Overriding Automatic High Beam Control.....	97
Switching Automatic High Beam Control On and Off.....	97
Automatic High Beam Control – Troubleshooting.....	98
Automatic High Beam Control – Information Messages.....	98
Automatic Locking Mode.....	44
Disengaging Automatic Locking Mode.....	44
Engaging Automatic Locking Mode.....	44
What Is Automatic Locking Mode.....	44
Automatic Return to Park (P).....	185
Automatic Return to Park (P) Limitations.....	186
How Does Automatic Return to Park (P) Work.....	186
What Is Automatic Return to Park (P).....	185
Automatic Transmission Audible Warnings.....	188
Automatic Transmission.....	183
Automatic Return to Park (P).....	185
Automatic Transmission Positions.....	183

# Index

Automatic Transmission – Troubleshooting.....	188
Grade Assist - Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV).....	186
Manual Park Release - Gasoline.....	186
Temporary Neutral Mode.....	185
Automatic Transmission Position Indicators.....	184
Automatic Transmission Positions.....	183
Drive (D).....	184
Low (L).....	184
Neutral (N).....	184
Park (P).....	183
Reverse (R).....	183
Automatic Transmission Precautions.....	183
Automatic Transmission – Troubleshooting.....	188
Automatic Transmission – Information Messages.....	188
Auto Mode.....	127
Auto Mode Indicators.....	127
Switching Auto Mode On and Off.....	127
Switching Dual Mode On and Off.....	129
Auto-Start-Stop.....	168
Auto-Start-Stop – Troubleshooting.....	169
Auto-Start-Stop Indicators.....	168
Auto-Start-Stop Precautions.....	168
Auto-Start-Stop – Troubleshooting.....	169
Auto-Start-Stop – Frequently Asked Questions.....	170
Auto-Start-Stop – Information Messages.....	169
Autounlock.....	74
Autounlock Requirements.....	74
Switching Autounlock On and Off.....	74
What Is Autounlock.....	74
AWD See: All-Wheel Drive.....	189
<b>B</b>	
Battery See: Changing the 12V Battery.....	310
Blind Spot Information System.....	237
Blind Spot Information System – Troubleshooting.....	239
Blind Spot Information System Indicators.....	238
Blind Spot Information System Limitations.....	237
Blind Spot Information System Precautions.....	237
Blind Spot Information System Requirements.....	237
Blind Spot Information System – Troubleshooting.....	239
Blind Spot Information System – Information Messages.....	239
Body Control Module Fuse Box.....	296
Accessing the Body Control Module Fuse Box.....	296
Identifying the Fuses in the Body Control Module Fuse Box.....	296
Locating the Body Control Module Fuse Box.....	296
Body Styling Kit Precautions.....	324
Body Styling Kits.....	324
Bonnet Lock See: Opening and Closing the Hood.....	299
Booster Seats.....	39
Brake Fluid Specification.....	192
Brake Over Accelerator.....	191
Brake Precautions.....	191
Brakes.....	191
Anti-Lock Braking System.....	191
Brakes – Troubleshooting.....	193
Brakes – Troubleshooting.....	193
Brakes – Frequently Asked Questions.....	193
Brakes – Warning Lamps.....	193
Breaking-In.....	273
<b>C</b>	
Calculating Payload.....	255
Calculating the Load Limit.....	255
Canceling the Set Speed.....	214
Capacities and Specifications.....	355
Catalytic Converter.....	181
Catalytic Converter – Troubleshooting.....	181
Catalytic Converter Precautions.....	181

# Index

Catalytic Converter – Troubleshooting.....	181
Catalytic Converter – Warning Lamps.....	181
Changing a Flat Tire.....	346
Changing a Road Wheel.....	346
Changing the 12V Battery.....	310
Changing the Engine Air Filter - 2.0L EcoBoost™.....	308
Changing the Engine Air Filter - 2.5L, Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV).....	309
Changing the Fuel Filter.....	309
Changing the Remote Control Battery - Vehicles With: Push Button Start.....	63
Changing the Remote Control Battery - Vehicles Without: Push Button Start.....	62
Changing the Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot Name or Password.....	373
Charging a Device.....	148
Charging a Wireless Device.....	152
Checking MyKey System Status.....	69
Checking the Brake Fluid.....	192
Checking the Coolant.....	304
Checking the Seatbelts.....	48
Checking the Tire Pressures.....	338
Checking the Wiper Blades.....	90
Children and Airbags.....	53
Child Restraint Anchor Points.....	32
Locating the Child Restraint Lower Anchor Points.....	32
Locating the Child Restraint Top Tether Anchor Points.....	33
What Are the Child Restraint Anchor Points.....	32
Child Restraints.....	33
Child Restraint Position Information.....	33
Child Restraints Recommendation.....	34
Child Safety.....	31
Child Restraint Anchor Points.....	32
Child Restraints.....	33
Installing Child Restraints.....	34
Child Safety Locks.....	41
Child Safety Precautions.....	31
Cleaning Products.....	319
Cleaning the Exterior.....	319
Cleaning Camera Lenses and Sensors.....	321
Cleaning Chrome, Aluminium or Stainless Steel.....	320
Cleaning Headlamps and Rear Lamps.....	319
Cleaning Stripes or Graphics.....	321
Cleaning the Engine Compartment.....	320
Cleaning the Exterior Precautions.....	319
Cleaning the Underbody.....	321
Cleaning Wheels.....	320
Cleaning Windows and Wiper Blades.....	320
Cleaning the Interior.....	321
Cleaning Carpets and Floor Mats.....	322
Cleaning Displays and Screens.....	322
Cleaning Fabric Seats and Headliners.....	322
Cleaning Leather and Vinyl.....	322
Cleaning Moonroof Tracks.....	323
Cleaning Plastic.....	321
Cleaning Seatbelts.....	323
Cleaning Storage Compartments.....	323
Cleaning the Instrument Panel.....	321
Clearing All MyKeys.....	69
Climate Control.....	126
Auto Mode.....	127
Climate Control – Troubleshooting.....	129
Climate Control – Troubleshooting.....	129
Climate Control – Frequently Asked Questions.....	129
Cold Weather Precautions.....	273
Configuring the Trip Computer - Vehicles With: 4.2 Inch Screen.....	121
Connected Vehicle.....	369
Connecting the Vehicle to a Mobile Network.....	369
Connected Vehicle Data.....	24
Connected Vehicle Limitations.....	369
Connected Vehicle Requirements.....	369
Connected Vehicle – Troubleshooting - Vehicles With: Modern.....	370
Connected Vehicle – Troubleshooting - Vehicles With: SYNC 3.....	371
Connecting a Bluetooth® Device.....	377
Connecting a Trailer.....	261
Connecting a Trailer Precautions.....	261

# Index

Connecting the Vehicle to a Mobile Network.....	369
Connecting FordPass to the Modem.....	369
Enabling and Disabling the Modem.....	369
What Is the Modem.....	369
Connecting the Vehicle to a Wi-Fi Network.....	369
Contacting Us.....	15
Cooling System Capacity and Specification - 2.0L EcoBoost™.....	361
Cooling System Capacity and Specification - 2.5L, Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV).....	362
Crash and Breakdown Information.....	278
Automatic Crash Shutoff.....	284
Jump Starting the Vehicle.....	280
Post-Crash Alert System.....	283
Recovery Towing.....	284
Crash Sensors and Airbag Indicator.....	57
Creating a MyKey - Vehicles With: Push Button Start.....	68
Creating a MyKey - Vehicles Without: Push Button Start.....	67
Creating a Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot - Vehicles With: SYNC 3.....	373
Cross Traffic Alert.....	240
Cross Traffic Alert - Troubleshooting.....	242
Cross Traffic Alert Indicators.....	241
Cross Traffic Alert Limitations.....	240
Cross Traffic Alert Precautions.....	240
Cross Traffic Alert - Troubleshooting.....	242
Cross Traffic Alert - Information Messages.....	242
Cruise Control.....	213
Cruise Control Indicators.....	214
Cup Holders.....	154
Cup Holder Precautions.....	154
Customer Information.....	445
Radio Frequency Certification Labels.....	448
Customizing the Instrument Cluster Display - Vehicles With: 4.2 Inch Screen.....	117
Customizing the Instrument Cluster Display - Vehicles With: 6.5 Inch Screen.....	117
<b>D</b>	
Data Privacy.....	22
Declaration of Conformity - Vehicles With: SYNC 3.....	511
Department of Transportation Uniform Tire Quality Grades.....	327
Digital Radio.....	386
Digital Radio Indicators.....	387
Digital Radio Limitations.....	387
How Does Digital Radio Work.....	386
Switching Digital Radio Reception On and Off.....	387
What Is Digital Radio.....	386
Directing the Flow of Air.....	127
Disposing of Airbags.....	58
Distance Alert.....	247
Adjusting the Sensitivity of Distance Alert.....	247
What Is Distance Alert.....	247
Distance Indication.....	245
Distance Indication Indicator.....	247
Switching Distance Indication On and Off.....	247
What Is Distance Indication.....	245
Doors and Locks Audible Warnings.....	75
Doors and Locks.....	73
Autolock.....	74
Autounlock.....	74
Doors and Locks - Troubleshooting.....	75
Mislock.....	74
Operating the Doors From Inside Your Vehicle.....	73
Operating the Doors From Outside Your Vehicle.....	73
Doors and Locks - Troubleshooting.....	75
Doors and Locks - Frequently Asked Questions.....	76
Doors and Locks - Information Messages.....	75
Doors and Locks - Warning Lamps.....	75
Drive Belt Routing Overview - 2.0L EcoBoost™.....	310
Drive Mode Control.....	226
Drive Mode Control - Troubleshooting.....	227
Drive Modes.....	226



# Index

Drive Mode Control – Troubleshooting.....	227
Drive Mode Control – Frequently Asked Questions.....	229
Drive Mode Control – Information Messages.....	228
Drive Mode Control – Warning Lamps.....	227
Drive Modes.....	226
Eco.....	226
Mud/Ruts.....	226
Normal.....	227
Sand.....	227
Slippery.....	227
Sport.....	227
Tow/Haul.....	227
Driver Alert.....	250
Driver Alert – Troubleshooting.....	251
Driver Alert Indicators.....	251
Driver Alert Limitations.....	250
Driver Alert Precautions.....	250
Driver Alert – Troubleshooting.....	251
Driver Alert – Information Messages.....	251
Driving Economically.....	273
Driving Hints.....	273
Driving in Special Conditions.....	274
Driving in Special Conditions.....	274
Driving In Sand.....	275
Driving on Hilly or Sloping Terrain.....	274
Driving Through Mud and Water.....	274
Emergency Maneuvers.....	274
Driving on Snow and Ice.....	273
Driving Through Shallow Water.....	275
<b>E</b>	
Electric Parking Brake Audible Warning.....	195
Electric Parking Brake.....	194
Electric Parking Brake – Troubleshooting.....	195
Electric Parking Brake – Troubleshooting.....	195
Electric Parking Brake – Information Messages.....	196
Electric Parking Brake – Warning Lamps.....	195
Electric Power Steering.....	205
Electric Power Steering Precautions.....	205
How Does Electric Power Steering Work.....	205
Electric Vehicle Information.....	415
Electromagnetic Compatibility.....	509
Emergency Call Limitations.....	59
Emergency Call Requirements.....	59
Emergency Call System Data.....	25
Emergency Towing - Gasoline.....	288
Emergency Towing - Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV).....	288
Emission Law.....	507
Enabling Remote Start.....	123
End User License Agreement.....	482
Engine Block Heater.....	159
Engine Block Heater Precautions.....	159
How Does the Engine Block Heater Work.....	160
Using the Engine Block Heater.....	160
Engine Oil Capacity and Specification - 2.0L EcoBoost™.....	359
Engine Oil Capacity and Specification - 2.5L, Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV).....	360
Engine Oil.....	303
Adding Engine Oil.....	303
Checking the Engine Oil Level.....	303
Engine Oil Capacity and Specification.....	304
Engine Oil Dipstick Overview.....	303
Resetting the Engine Oil Change Reminder.....	303
Engine Specifications - 2.0L EcoBoost™.....	355
Engine Specifications - 2.5L, Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV).....	356
Entertainment.....	398
Evasive Steering Assist.....	247
Evasive Steering Assist Limitations.....	248
Switching Evasive Steering Assist On and Off.....	248
What Is Evasive Steering Assist.....	247
EV Coach - Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV).....	119
Event Data.....	23
Extending the Remote Start Duration.....	123

# Index

Exterior Bulbs.....	313	Front Passenger Sensing System Precautions.....	56
Changing a Front Side Marker Lamp Bulb.....	315	How Does the Front Passenger Sensing System Work.....	54
Changing a Front Turn Signal Lamp Bulb.....	315	What Is the Front Passenger Sensing System.....	54
Changing a High Mounted Stoplamp Bulb.....	318	Front Seat Precautions.....	135
Changing a Rear Lamp Bulb.....	316	Front Seats.....	135
Changing a Rear Turn Signal Lamp Bulb.....	317	Heated Seats.....	140
Changing a Reversing Lamp Bulb.....	317	Manual Seats.....	136
Changing a Stoplamp Bulb.....	316	Power Seats.....	138
Exterior Bulb Specification Chart.....	313	Fuel and Refueling.....	171
Removing a Rear Lamp Assembly.....	314	Fuel and Refueling – Troubleshooting.....	179
Exterior Lamps.....	95	Fuel Quality.....	172
Exterior Lamp Audible Warning.....	96	Refueling.....	174
Exterior Lamp Indicators.....	95	Running Out of Fuel.....	173
Switching the Daytime Running Lamps On and Off.....	95	Fuel and Refueling Precautions.....	171
Switching the Turn Signal Lamps On and Off.....	95	Fuel and Refueling – Troubleshooting.....	179
Exterior Lighting Control.....	93	Fuel and Refueling – Information Messages.....	179
Exterior Lighting.....	93	Fuel and Refueling – Warning Lamps.....	179
Autolamps.....	94	Fuel Economy Display - Gasoline.....	119
Automatic High Beam Control.....	96	Fuel Economy Display - Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV).....	119
Automatic High Beam Control – Troubleshooting.....	98	Fuel Gauge.....	112
Exterior Lamps.....	95	Fuel Gauge Limitations.....	112
Headlamps.....	93	Locating the Fuel Filler Door.....	112
Headlamps – Troubleshooting.....	94	What Is Distance to Empty.....	112
Exterior Mirrors.....	104	What Is the Fuel Gauge.....	112
		What Is the Low Fuel Reminder.....	112
<b>F</b>		Fuel Quality.....	172
Fastening and Unfastening the Seatbelts.....	43	Selecting the Correct Fuel.....	172
Federal Highway Administration Regulation.....	482	Fuel Tank Capacity - Excluding: Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV).....	363
Flat Tire		Fuel Tank Capacity.....	178
See: Changing a Flat Tire.....	346	Fuel Tank Capacity - Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV).....	364
Floor Mats.....	276	Fuse Precautions.....	290
Folding the Exterior Mirrors.....	105	Fuses.....	290
Ford Protect.....	434	Body Control Module Fuse Box.....	296
Front Exterior.....	29	Fuses – Troubleshooting.....	298
Front Passenger Sensing System.....	54	Under Hood Fuse Box.....	290
Front Passenger Sensing System Indicators.....	56	Fuses – Troubleshooting.....	298
		Fuses – Frequently Asked Questions.....	298

# Index

<b>G</b>	
General Maintenance Information.....	436
Glasses Holder.....	154
Locating the Glasses Holder.....	154
Glossary of Tire Terminology.....	333
Grade Assist - Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV).....	186
What Is Grade Assist.....	186
<b>H</b>	
Headlamp Adjusting	
See: Adjusting the Headlamps.....	312
Headlamps.....	93
Headlamp Indicators.....	93
Switching Headlamp Exit Delay On and Off.....	93
Using the High Beam Headlamps.....	93
Headlamps – Troubleshooting.....	94
Headlamps – Frequently Asked Questions.....	94
Heated Seats.....	140
Heated Seat Precautions.....	140
Switching the Heated Seats On and Off.....	140
Heating	
See: Climate Control - Vehicles With: Dual Automatic Temperature Control (DATC).....	126
See: Climate Control - Vehicles With: Electronic Automatic Temperature Control (EATC).....	130
High Voltage Battery.....	182
High Voltage Battery Precautions.....	182
High Voltage Battery Vehicle Precautions - Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV).....	279
Hill Descent Control.....	203
Hill Descent Control – Troubleshooting.....	204
Hill Descent Control Indicator.....	203
Hill Descent Control Precautions.....	203
Hill Descent Control – Troubleshooting.....	204
Hill Descent Control – Information Messages.....	204
Hill Start Assist.....	197
Hill Start Assist – Troubleshooting.....	197
Hill Start Assist Precautions.....	197
Hill Start Assist – Troubleshooting.....	197
Hill Start Assist – Information Messages.....	197
Hood Lock	
See: Opening and Closing the Hood.....	299
Horn.....	89
How Does Adaptive Cruise Control With Stop and Go Work.....	215
How Does a Hybrid Electric Vehicle Work.....	166
How Does All-Wheel Drive Work - Excluding: FX4 Off Road.....	189
How Does All-Wheel Drive Work - FX4 Off Road.....	189
How Does Auto Hold Work.....	198
How Does Blind Spot Information System Work.....	237
How Does Cross Traffic Alert Work.....	240
How Does Drive Mode Control Work.....	226
How Does Driver Alert Work.....	250
How Does Hill Descent Control Work.....	203
How Does Hill Start Assist Work.....	197
How Does Pre-Collision Assist Work.....	243
How Does Stability Control Work.....	201
How Does the Lane Keeping System Work.....	230
How Does the Personal Safety System Work.....	49
How Does the Rear Occupant Alert System Work.....	145
How Does the Safety Canopy™ Work.....	51
How Does Traction Control Work.....	199
How Does Trailer Sway Control Work.....	272
How Do the Front Airbags Work.....	50
How Do the Knee Airbags Work.....	51
How Do the Side Airbags Work.....	50
Hybrid Electric Vehicle Driving Characteristics.....	166
Hybrid Electric Vehicle Indicators.....	166

# Index

Hybrid Electric Vehicle Information.....	166
Hybrid Electric Vehicle Information – Troubleshooting.....	167
Hybrid Electric Vehicle Information – Troubleshooting.....	167
Hybrid Electric Vehicle Information – Frequently Asked Questions.....	167
Hybrid Electric Vehicle Information – Information Messages.....	167
Hybrid Electric Vehicle Information – Warning Lamps.....	167
<b>I</b>	
Identifying Fuse Types.....	298
Identifying the Climate Control Unit.....	126
Ignition Switch.....	156
Inflating the Tires.....	338
Information on the Tire Sidewall.....	328
Inspecting the Tire for Damage.....	339
Inspecting the Tire for Wear.....	339
Inspecting the Wheel Valve Stems.....	340
Installing Child Restraints.....	34
Combining the Seatbelt and Lower Anchors for Attaching Child Restraints.....	38
Installing a Child Restraint in a Center Seat.....	37
Using Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children.....	36
Using Seatbelts.....	34
Using Tether Straps.....	38
Instrument Cluster Display.....	116
Personalized Settings.....	118
Instrument Cluster Display Main Menu – Vehicles With: 4.2 Inch Screen.....	116
Instrument Cluster Display Main Menu – Vehicles With: 6.5 Inch Screen.....	117
Instrument Cluster Indicators.....	114
Instrument Cluster.....	108
Fuel Gauge.....	112
Instrument Cluster Overview - Gasoline, Vehicles With: 4.2 Inch Screen.....	108
Instrument Cluster Overview - Gasoline, Vehicles With: 6.5 Inch Screen.....	109
Instrument Cluster Overview - Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV), Vehicles With: 4.2 Inch Screen.....	110
Instrument Cluster Overview - Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV), Vehicles With: 6.5 Inch Screen.....	111
Instrument Cluster Warning Lamps.....	113
Instrument Panel.....	27
Integrated Trailer Brake Controller.....	268
Integrated Trailer Brake Controller – Troubleshooting.....	270
Integrated Trailer Brake Controller Precautions.....	268
Integrated Trailer Brake Controller – Troubleshooting.....	270
Integrated Trailer Brake Controller – Frequently Asked Questions.....	271
Integrated Trailer Brake Controller – Information Messages.....	270
Interior Air Quality.....	134
Interior Bulbs.....	318
Interior Bulb Specification Chart.....	318
Interior Lamp Function.....	99
Switching the Interior Lamp Function On and Off.....	99
What Is the Interior Lamp Function.....	99
Interior Lighting.....	99
Ambient Lighting.....	99
Interior Lamp Function.....	99
Interior Lighting – Troubleshooting.....	100
Interior Lighting – Troubleshooting.....	100
Interior Lighting – Frequently Asked Questions.....	100
Interior Mirror.....	103
Interior Mirror Precautions.....	103
Introduction.....	17
<b>J</b>	
Jump Starting the Vehicle.....	280
Jump Starting Precautions.....	280
Jump Starting the Vehicle.....	281
Preparing the Vehicle.....	281

# Index

## K

Keyless Entry.....	77
Keyless Entry – Troubleshooting.....	78
Keyless Entry Keypad.....	79
Keyless Entry Keypad – Troubleshooting.....	81
Keyless Entry Keypad Limitations.....	79
Keyless Entry Keypad Master Access Code.....	79
Keyless Entry Keypad Personal Access Codes.....	79
Keyless Entry Keypad – Troubleshooting.....	81
Keyless Entry Keypad – Frequently Asked Questions.....	81
Keyless Entry Limitations.....	77
Keyless Entry Settings.....	77
Keyless Entry – Troubleshooting.....	78
Keyless Entry – Frequently Asked Questions.....	78
Keys and Remote Controls.....	60
Keys and Remote Controls – Troubleshooting.....	65
Keys and Remote Controls – Troubleshooting.....	65
Keys and Remote Controls – Information Messages.....	65

## L

Lane Centering.....	221
How Does Lane Centering Work.....	221
Lane Centering Alerts.....	223
Lane Centering Automatic Cancellation.....	223
Lane Centering Indicators.....	223
Lane Centering Limitations.....	222
Lane Centering Precautions.....	222
Lane Centering Requirements.....	222
Switching Lane Centering On and Off.....	222
Lane Keeping System Indicators.....	233
Lane Keeping System.....	230
Aid Mode.....	232
Alert and Aid Mode.....	232
Alert Mode.....	231

Lane Keeping System – Troubleshooting.....	234
Lane Keeping System Limitations.....	230
Lane Keeping System Precautions.....	230
Lane Keeping System – Troubleshooting.....	234
Lane Keeping System – Frequently Asked Questions.....	235
Lane Keeping System – Information Messages.....	234
Launching or Retrieving a Boat or Personal Watercraft.....	265
Load Carrying.....	252
Load Carrying Precautions.....	252
Loading Your Trailer.....	264
Locating the Blind Spot Information System Sensors.....	238
Locating the Brake Fluid Reservoir.....	192
Locating the Cross Traffic Alert Sensors.....	241
Locating the Fuel Filler Funnel.....	172
Locating the Keyless Entry Keypad.....	79
Locating the Power Outlet.....	149
Locating the Pre-Collision Assist Sensors.....	245
Locating the Rear View Camera.....	210
Locating the Safety Compliance Certification Labels.....	253
Locating the Tire label.....	327
Locating the USB Ports.....	147
Locating the Wireless Accessory Charger.....	152
Locating Your Vehicle.....	61
Locking and Unlocking the Tailgate.....	83
Locking the Rear Window Controls.....	102

## M

Maintenance.....	299
Engine Oil.....	303
Exterior Bulbs.....	313
Interior Bulbs.....	318
Maintenance Precautions.....	299
Manually Dimming the Interior Mirror.....	103
Manually Releasing the Electric Parking Brake.....	194

# Index

Manual Park Release - Gasoline.....	186
Manual Park Release Precautions.....	186
Using Manual Park Release.....	186
What Is Manual Park Release.....	186
Manual Seats.....	136
Adjusting the Head Restraint.....	136
Adjusting the Seat Backrest.....	137
Adjusting the Seat Cushion.....	143
Adjusting the Seat Height.....	138
Folding the Seat Backrest.....	143
Head Restraint Components.....	136
Installing the Head Restraint.....	137
Moving the Seat Backward and Forward.....	137
Removing the Head Restraint.....	137
Unfolding the Seat Backrest.....	144
Mislock.....	74
Mislock Limitations.....	75
Switching Mislock On and Off.....	75
What Is Mislock.....	74
Mobile Communications Equipment.....	481
Mobile Device Data.....	25
Moonroof Bounce-Back.....	107
Overriding Moonroof Bounce-Back.....	107
What Is Moonroof Bounce-Back.....	107
Moonroof.....	106
Moonroof Bounce-Back.....	107
Motorcraft Parts - 2.0L EcoBoost™.....	357
Motorcraft Parts - 2.5L, Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV).....	357
Muting the Audio.....	385
MyKey Settings.....	66
Configurable MyKey Settings.....	66
Non-Configurable MyKey Settings.....	66
MyKey - Troubleshooting.....	70
MyKey - Frequently Asked Questions.....	72
MyKey - Information Messages.....	70
MyKey™.....	66
MyKey Settings.....	66
MyKey - Troubleshooting.....	70
<b>N</b>	
Navigation.....	410
Normal Scheduled Maintenance.....	439
<b>O</b>	
Opening and Closing the Flip Key.....	60
Opening and Closing the Hood.....	299
Opening and Closing the Moonroof.....	106
Opening and Closing the Sliding Windows.....	102
Opening and Closing the Sun Shade.....	106
Opening and Closing the Windows.....	101
Opening the Tailgate.....	82
Opening the Tailgate From Outside Your Vehicle.....	82
Opening the Tailgate to the Middle Position.....	82
Operating the Doors From Inside Your Vehicle.....	73
Individually Unlocking and Locking the Doors Using the Locking Button.....	74
Opening the Doors From Inside Your Vehicle.....	74
Unlocking and Locking the Doors Using the Central Locking.....	73
Operating the Doors From Outside Your Vehicle.....	73
Individually Unlocking and Locking the Doors Using the Key Blade.....	73
Unlocking and Locking the Doors Using the Key Blade.....	73
Unlocking and Locking the Doors Using the Remote Control.....	73
Ordering a Canadian French Owner's Manual.....	446
Overriding the Set Speed.....	221
<b>P</b>	
Parking Aid Precautions.....	207
Parking Aids.....	207
Parking Aids - Troubleshooting.....	208
Rear Parking Aid.....	207
Parking Aids - Troubleshooting.....	208
Parking Aids - Information Messages.....	208
Passive Anti-Theft System.....	85
How Does the Passive Anti-Theft System Work.....	85

# Index

What Is the Passive Anti-Theft System.....	85
Perchlorate.....	480
Personalized Settings.....	118
Changing the Instrument Cluster Display Language.....	118
Changing the Measure Unit.....	118
Changing the Temperature Unit.....	118
Changing the Tire Pressure Unit.....	118
Personal Safety System Components.....	49
Personal Safety System™.....	49
Phone.....	408
Pickup Bed Anchor Points.....	258
Locating the Pickup Bed Anchor Points.....	258
Pickup Bed Anchor Point Load Capacities.....	259
Pickup Bed Anchor Point Precautions.....	258
Pickup Bed.....	258
Pickup Bed Anchor Points.....	258
Pickup Bed Slots.....	260
Tailgate Anchor Points.....	260
Pickup Bed Precautions.....	258
Pickup Bed Slots.....	260
Locating the Pickup Bed Slots.....	260
Pickup Bed Storage.....	154
Locating the Pickup Bed Storage.....	154
Opening the Pickup Bed Storage.....	154
Playing Media From a USB Device.....	379
Playing Media Using the USB Port.....	147
Playing or Pausing the Audio Source.....	384
Post-Crash Alert System.....	283
How Does the Post-Crash Alert System Work.....	284
Post-Crash Alert System Limitations.....	284
Switching the Post-Crash Alert System Off.....	284
What Is the Post-Crash Alert System.....	283
Power Outlet Indicators.....	149
Power Outlet Limitations.....	149
Power Outlet.....	149
Power Outlet Precautions.....	149
Power Seats.....	138
Adjusting the Head Restraint.....	138
Adjusting the Lumbar Support.....	140
Adjusting the Seat Backrest.....	140
Adjusting the Seat Height.....	140
Head Restraint Components.....	138
Installing the Head Restraint.....	139
Moving the Seat Backward and Forward.....	139
Removing the Head Restraint.....	139
Pre-Collision Assist Limitations.....	244
Pre-Collision Assist Precautions.....	243
Pre-Collision Assist.....	243
Automatic Emergency Braking.....	247
Distance Alert.....	247
Distance Indication.....	245
Evasive Steering Assist.....	247
Pre-Collision Assist – Troubleshooting.....	248
Pre-Collision Assist – Troubleshooting.....	248
Pre-Collision Assist – Frequently Asked Questions.....	249
Pre-Collision Assist – Information Messages.....	248
Preparing Your Vehicle for Storage.....	325
Programming a MyKey.....	68
Programming the Remote Control.....	65
Properly Adjusting the Driver and Front Passenger Seats.....	53
Puncture	
See: Changing a Flat Tire.....	346
Push Button Ignition Switch.....	157
<b>R</b>	
Radio Frequency Certification Labels.....	448
Blind Spot Information System Sensors.....	448
Body Control Module.....	454
Cruise Control Module.....	457
Keys and Remote Controls.....	461
Radio Transceiver Module.....	466
SYNC.....	467
Telematics Control Unit.....	471

# Index

Tire Pressure Monitoring System	
Sensors.....	472
Wireless Accessory Charging Module.....	477
Rear Exterior.....	30
Rear Occupant Alert System Audible	
Warnings.....	146
Rear Occupant Alert System	
Indicators.....	146
Rear Occupant Alert System	
Limitations.....	145
Rear Occupant Alert System	
Precautions.....	145
Rear Occupant Alert System.....	145
Rear Parking Aid.....	207
Locating the Rear Parking Aid	
Sensors.....	208
Rear Parking Aid Audible Warnings.....	208
Rear Parking Aid Limitations.....	207
What is the Rear Parking Aid.....	207
Rear Seats.....	142
Manual Seats.....	142
Rear View Camera Guide Lines.....	210
Rear View Camera Object Distance	
Indicators.....	211
Rear View Camera Precautions.....	210
Rear View Camera.....	210
Rear View Camera Settings.....	211
Rear View Camera Settings.....	211
Switching Rear View Camera Delay On and	
Off.....	212
Zooming the Rear View Camera In and	
Out.....	211
Recovery Towing.....	284
Accessing the Front Towing Point.....	284
Recreationally Towing Your Vehicle -	
Gasoline, AWD.....	287
Recreationally Towing Your Vehicle -	
Gasoline, FWD.....	287
Recreationally Towing Your Vehicle -	
Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV).....	287
Refueling.....	174
Manually Opening the Fuel Filler Door.....	177
Refueling System Overview.....	174
Refueling Your Vehicle.....	174
Releasing the Electric Parking Brake if	
the Vehicle Battery Has Run Out of	
Charge.....	195
Remote Control Limitations.....	60
Remotely Starting and Stopping the	
Vehicle.....	123
Remote Start Limitations.....	123
Remote Start Precautions.....	123
Remote Start Remote Control	
Indicators.....	124
Remote Start.....	123
Remote Start Settings - Vehicles With:	
SYNC 3.....	124
Remote Start Settings - Vehicles With:	
SYNC 3.....	124
Setting the Remote Start Duration.....	125
Switching Climate Control Auto Mode On	
and Off.....	124
Switching Climate Control Last Settings	
On and Off.....	124
Switching the Heated Seat Settings On and	
Off.....	125
Switching the Heated Steering Wheel	
Settings On and Off.....	125
Removing and Installing the	
Tailgate.....	83
Removing the Key Blade.....	61
Removing Your Vehicle From	
Storage.....	326
Repairing Minor Paint Damage.....	323
Replacement Parts	
Recommendation.....	481
Replacing a Lost Key or Remote	
Control.....	64
Replacing the Cabin Air Filter.....	134
Replacing the Front Wiper Blades.....	90
Reporting Safety Defects in	
Canada.....	447
Reporting Safety Defects in the United	
States.....	447
Resetting the Individual Trip Values -	
Vehicles With: 4.2 Inch Screen.....	121
Resetting the Trip Computer.....	121
Restarting the Engine.....	168
Resuming the Set Speed.....	214
Roadside Assistance.....	278
Rollover Warning.....	445
Running-In	
See: Breaking-In.....	273
Running Out of Fuel.....	173
Adding Fuel From a Portable Fuel	
Container.....	173



# Index

Filling a Portable Fuel Container.....	173	Setting the Cruise Control Speed.....	213
<b>S</b>		Setting the Hill Descent Speed.....	203
Satellite Radio.....	388	Setting the Temperature.....	127
Locating the Satellite Radio Identification		Shifting Your Vehicle Into Gear.....	184
Number.....	388	Sitting in the Correct Position.....	135
Satellite Radio Limitations.....	388	Sounding the Panic Alarm.....	61
What Is Satellite Radio.....	388	Special Notices.....	17
Scheduled Maintenance.....	436	Special Operating Conditions Scheduled	
Seatbelt Extensions.....	48	Maintenance.....	442
Seatbelt Precautions.....	42	Speed Control	
Seatbelt Reminder.....	46	See: Cruise Control.....	213
How Does the Seatbelt Reminder		Stability Control Indicator.....	202
Work.....	46	Stability Control.....	201
Seatbelt Reminder Audible Warnings.....	47	Stability Control – Troubleshooting.....	202
Seatbelt Reminder Indicators.....	46	Stability Control –	
Switching the Seatbelt Reminder On and		Troubleshooting.....	202
Off.....	47	Stability Control – Warning Lamps.....	202
Seatbelts.....	42	Starter Switch	
Automatic Locking Mode.....	44	See: Ignition Switch.....	156
Seatbelt Reminder.....	46	Starting and Stopping the Engine –	
Sensitive Locking Mode.....	44	Precautions.....	156
Security.....	85	Starting and Stopping the Engine.....	156
Anti-Theft Alarm System.....	85	Automatic Engine Stop.....	161
Anti-Theft Alarm System Settings.....	86	Engine Block Heater.....	159
Passive Anti-Theft System.....	85	Starting and Stopping the Engine –	
Security – Troubleshooting.....	87	Troubleshooting.....	162
Security – Troubleshooting.....	87	Starting the Engine.....	157
Security – Frequently Asked		Stopping the Engine.....	160
Questions.....	88	Starting and Stopping the Engine –	
Security – Information Messages.....	87	Troubleshooting.....	162
Selecting a Drive Mode.....	226	Starting and Stopping the Engine –	
Selecting the Audio Source.....	384	Frequently Asked Questions.....	164
Sensitive Locking Mode.....	44	Starting and Stopping the Engine –	
How Does Sensitive Locking Mode		Information Messages.....	163
Work.....	44	Starting and Stopping the Engine –	
What is Sensitive Locking Mode.....	44	Warning Lamps.....	162
Service Data.....	23	Starting the Engine.....	157
Setting a Memory Preset.....	384	Restarting the Engine After Stopping	
Settings Data.....	24	it.....	159
Settings.....	418	Starting a Gasoline Engine.....	157
Setting the Adaptive Cruise Control		Starting a Hybrid Electric Vehicle	
Gap.....	219	System.....	158
Setting the Adaptive Cruise Control		Steering.....	205
Speed.....	218	Electric Power Steering.....	205
Setting the Blower Motor Speed.....	127	Steering – Troubleshooting.....	206
Setting the Clock and Date.....	385	Steering – Troubleshooting.....	206
		Steering – Information Messages.....	206
		Steering Wheel.....	26

# Index

Stopping the Engine.....	168	Switching Shuffle Mode On and Off.....	384
Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Moving.....	161	Switching Stability Control On and Off.....	202
Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Stationary.....	160	Switching the Audio Unit On and Off.....	384
Storage.....	154	Switching the Front Interior Lamps On and Off.....	99
Cup Holders.....	154	Switching the Hazard Flashers On and Off.....	280
Glasses Holder.....	154	Switching the Heated Mirrors On and Off.....	126
Pickup Bed Storage.....	154	Switching the Heated Steering Wheel On and Off.....	89
Under Seat Storage.....	154	Switching the Heated Wiper Park On and Off.....	126
Storing Your Vehicle.....	325	Switching the Lane Keeping System Mode.....	231
Streaming Bluetooth Audio.....	378	Switching the Lane Keeping System On and Off.....	231
Sunroof		Switching the Rear Interior Lamps On and Off.....	99
See: Moonroof.....	106	Switching Traction Control On and Off.....	199
Switching Adaptive Cruise Control On and Off.....	218	Switching Trailer Sway Control On and Off.....	272
Switching Air Conditioning On and Off.....	126	Symbols Glossary.....	19
Switching All of the Interior Lamps On and Off.....	99	Symbols Used on Your Vehicle.....	19
Switching Auto Hold On and Off.....	198	SYNC™ 3.....	389
Switching Auto-Start-Stop On and Off.....	168	General Information.....	389
Switching Blind Spot Information System On and Off.....	237	SYNC™ 3 Troubleshooting.....	420
Switching Climate Control On and Off.....	126		
Switching Cross Traffic Alert On and Off.....	240	<b>T</b>	
Switching Cruise Control On and Off.....	213	Tailgate Anchor Points.....	260
Switching Driver Alert On and Off.....	251	Locating the Tailgate Anchor Points.....	260
Switching From Adaptive Cruise Control to Cruise Control.....	221	Tailgate Anchor Point Load Capacities.....	260
Switching Hill Descent Control On and Off.....	203	Tailgate Precautions.....	82
Switching Maximum Cooling On and Off.....	126	Tailgate.....	82
Switching Maximum Defrost On and Off.....	126	Opening the Tailgate.....	82
Switching Pre-Collision Assist On and Off.....	244	Technical Specifications	
Switching Rear Occupant Alert System On and Off.....	145	See: Capacities and Specifications.....	355
Switching Recirculated Air On and Off.....	126	Temporary Neutral Mode.....	185
Switching Repeat Mode On and Off.....	384	Entering Temporary Neutral Mode.....	185
		Exiting Temporary Neutral Mode.....	185
		Temporary Neutral Mode Limitations.....	185
		What Is Temporary Neutral Mode.....	185

# Index

The Better Business Bureau Auto Line Program.....	445
The Mediation and Arbitration Program.....	446
Tire Care.....	338
Tire Pressure Monitoring System Limitations.....	343
Tire Pressure Monitoring System Overview.....	342
Tire Pressure Monitoring System Precautions.....	343
Tire Pressure Monitoring System - Tire Pressure Monitoring System – Troubleshooting.....	344
Tire Pressure Monitoring System – Troubleshooting.....	344
Tire Pressure Monitoring System – Information Messages.....	345
Tire Pressure Monitoring System – Warning Lamps.....	344
Tire Replacement Requirements.....	334
Tire Rotation.....	340
Towing a Trailer Limitations.....	264
Towing a Trailer Precautions.....	263
Towing a Trailer.....	263
Towing Weights and Dimensions.....	266
Towing Weights and Dimensions.....	266
Calculating the Maximum Loaded Trailer Weight for Your Vehicle.....	267
Recommended Towing Weights.....	266
What Is the Maximum Loaded Trailer Weight.....	267
Towing Your Vehicle Precautions.....	287
Towing Your Vehicle.....	287
Towing Your Vehicle – Troubleshooting - Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV).....	289
Towing Your Vehicle – Troubleshooting - Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV).....	289
Towing Your Vehicle – Information Messages.....	289
Traction Control Indicator.....	199
Traction Control.....	199
Traction Control – Troubleshooting.....	199
Traction Control – Troubleshooting.....	199
Traction Control – Information Messages.....	200
Traction Control – Warning Lamps.....	199
Trailer Brake Precautions.....	263
Trailer Sway Control Precautions.....	272
Trailer Sway Control.....	272
Trailer Towing Hints.....	264
Transporting the Vehicle.....	286
Trip Computer.....	121
Trip Data.....	121
<b>U</b>	
Under Hood Fuse Box.....	290
Accessing the Under Hood Fuse Box.....	290
Identifying the Fuses in the Under Hood Fuse Box.....	291
Locating the Under Hood Fuse Box.....	290
Under Hood Overview - 2.0L EcoBoost™.....	301
Under Hood Overview - 2.5L, Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV).....	302
Under Seat Storage.....	154
Locating the Under Seat Storage Compartment.....	154
USB Ports.....	147
USB Port.....	379
Using a Slide-In Camper.....	253
Using Auto Hold.....	198
Using Keyless Entry.....	77
Using MyKey With Remote Start Systems.....	70
Using Snow Chains.....	336
Using the Instrument Cluster Display Controls.....	116
Using the Integrated Trailer Brake Controller.....	268
Using the Keyless Entry Keypad.....	80
Using the Remote Control.....	60
Using Voice Recognition.....	382
<b>V</b>	
Vehicle Care.....	319
Cleaning the Exterior.....	319
Cleaning the Interior.....	321
Vehicle Identification Number.....	368
Locating the Vehicle Identification Number.....	368
Vehicle Identification Number Overview.....	368

# Index

Vehicle Identification.....	368	What Is Pre-Collision Assist.....	243
Vehicle Identification Number.....	368	What Is Remote Start.....	123
Vehicle Interior.....	28	What Is the Cabin Air Filter.....	134
Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot.....	373	What Is the Catalytic Converter.....	181
Ventilation		What Is the Electric Parking Brake.....	194
See: Climate Control - Vehicles With: Dual Automatic Temperature Control (DATC).....	126	What Is the Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge.....	112
See: Climate Control - Vehicles With: Electronic Automatic Temperature Control (EATC).....	130	What Is the Gross Axle Weight Rating.....	253
Venting the Moonroof.....	106	What Is the Gross Combined Weight Rating.....	253
Viewing the Tire Pressures.....	344	What Is the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating.....	253
Visual Search.....	26	What Is the High Voltage Battery.....	182
<b>W</b>		What Is the Information Bar.....	112
Washer Fluid Specification.....	366	What Is the Integrated Trailer Brake Controller.....	268
Washers.....	91	What Is the Keyless Entry Keypad.....	79
Adding Washer Fluid.....	92	What Is the Lane Keeping System.....	230
Switching the Courtesy Wipe On and Off.....	91	What Is the Personal Safety System.....	49
Using the Windshield Washer.....	91	What Is the Power Gauge - Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV).....	112
Washer Fluid Specification.....	92	What Is the Power Outlet.....	149
Washer Precautions.....	91	What Is the Rear Occupant Alert System.....	145
Washers		What Is the Rear View Camera.....	210
See: Wipers and Washers.....	90	What Is the Speedometer.....	112
Waxing Your Vehicle.....	323	What Is the Tachometer - Gasoline.....	111
What Are the Instrument Cluster Indicators.....	114	What Is the Tire Pressure Monitoring System.....	342
What Are the Instrument Cluster Warning Lamps.....	113	What Is the Trip Summary - Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV).....	120
What Is 911 Assist.....	59	What Is the Wireless Accessory Charger.....	152
What Is a Connected Vehicle.....	369	Wheel and Tire Information.....	327
What Is a Hybrid Electric Vehicle.....	166	Wheel Nuts.....	354
What Is Auto-Start-Stop.....	168	Wi-Fi	
What Is Blind Spot Information System.....	237	See: Changing the Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot Name or Password.....	373
What Is Brake Coach - Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV).....	120	See: Connecting the Vehicle to a Wi-Fi Network.....	369
What Is Cross Traffic Alert.....	240	See: Creating a Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot - Vehicles With: SYNC 3.....	373
What Is Cruise Control.....	213	See: Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot.....	373
What Is Drive Mode Control.....	226	Window Bounce-Back.....	101
What Is Driver Alert.....	250	Overriding Window Bounce-Back.....	101
What Is Ford Protect.....	434	What Is Window Bounce-Back.....	101
What Is Hill Descent Control.....	203		
What Is Hill Start Assist.....	197		
What Is MyKey.....	66		

# Index

---

Windows.....	101
Window Bounce-Back.....	101
Wipers and Washers –	
Troubleshooting.....	92
Wipers and Washers – Frequently Asked	
Questions.....	92
Wipers and Washers – Warning	
Lamps.....	92
Wipers and Washers.....	90
Washers.....	91
Wipers.....	90
Wipers and Washers –	
Troubleshooting.....	92
Wipers.....	90
Switching Windshield Wipers On and	
Off.....	90
Wiper Precautions.....	90
Wireless Accessory Charger	
Precautions.....	152
Wireless Accessory Charger –	
Troubleshooting.....	153
Wireless Accessory Charger – Information	
Messages.....	153
Wireless Accessory Charger.....	152
Wireless Accessory Charger –	
Troubleshooting.....	153